SPECIFICATIONS

A NEW CITY OF LINCOLN POLICE DEPARTMENT LINCOLN, ALABAMA

DCM # TBD BWA PROJECT NO. 24001 MARCH 31, 2025

BID DOCUMENTS

OWNER City of Lincoln 150 Magnolia St. Lincoln, AL 35096 205-763-7777 Attn: Lew Watson

ARCHITECT Bill Whittaker, P.C. Architecture 236 Martin Street Anniston, AL 36206 Attn: Bill Whittaker

CIVIL ENGINEER TTL 10 Inverness Center Pkwy Suite 350 Hoover, AL 35242 256-441-2232 Attn: Tim Roberts

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER Barnett, Jones, Wilson 125 18th St N Pell City, AL 35125 205-884-5334 Attn: Jeremy Deal

MECHNICAL/PLUMBING/FIRE PROTECTION ENGINEER Whorton Engineering, Inc. 25 Summerall Gate Road Anniston, AL 36205 256-820-9897 Attn: Randy Whorton

ELECTRICAL ENGINEER Hays Cheatwood Consulting P.O. Box 250 Pinson, AL 35126 205-942-0696 Attn: Tony Dodd

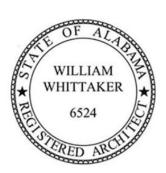










TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

000001	ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS
000010	INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS
000020	PROPOSAL FORM
000030	ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX
000040	AIA A310-2010 BID BOND
000050	AIA 101-2017 CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
000051	AIA 201-2017 GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION
000051	AIA 312 PERFORMANCE BOND
000052	AIA 312 PAYMENT BOND
000054	ALABAMA VENDOR DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
-	ENTIRE E-VERIFY MEMORANDUM OF UNDERSTANDING (MOU)
-	SALES AND USE TAX CERTIFICATE OF EXEMPTION APPLICATION
000055	PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE CHECKLIST
000056	OWNER'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY FOR TORNADO STORM SHELTER (HURRICANE SHELTER WHERE APPLICABLE)
000057	CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY FOR CONSTRUCTION OF
000001	TORNADO STORM SHELTER
000058	AIA A702-1992 - APPLICATION AND CERTIFICATE FOR PAYMENT
000059	AIA 703-1992 SCHEDULE OF VALUES
000060	SAMPLE PROGRESS SCHEDULE & REPORT
000061	CHANGE ORDER CHECKLIST
000062	AIA G701 CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER
000064	C-9 GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE
000065	CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
000070	CERTIFICATION OF STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS
080000	SAMPLE FORM OF ADVERTISEMENT FOR COMPLETION
000090	FINAL PAYMENT CHECKLIST
000100	CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF PAYMENT OF DEBTS AND CLAIMS
000101	CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF RELEASE OF LIENS
000102	CONSENT OF SURETY TO FINAL PAYMENT
002600	PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	SUMMARY
012100	ALLOWANCES
012200	UNIT PRICES
012300	ALTERNATES
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES
013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
013233	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
014100	FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS
014100.1	STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
014100.2	STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS
014200	REFERENCES
014339	MOCKUPS

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

015000 016000 017300 017700 017823 017839 017900	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS EXECUTION CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING
DIVISION	02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS
024060	SITE DEMOLITION
DIVISION	03 - CONCRETE
033000 033543	CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING
DIVISION	04 - MASONRY
042200 042613 047200	
DIVISION	05 - METALS
051200 053100 054000 055000	
DIVISION	06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES
061000 061600 061753 064023 064116 066116 068000	ROUGH CARPENTRY SHEATHING SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS COMPOSITE FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072100	THERMAL INSULATION
072419	WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)
072726	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS
074113.19	BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS
078413	PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING
078443	JOINT FIRESTOPPING
079200	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
081416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

083113 084113 085653 087100 088000 088300 089119	
DIVISION 0	9 - FINISHES
092216	NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING
092900	GYPSUM BOARD
093013	CERAMIC TILING
095113	ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
	WOOD FLOORING
	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
096519 096623	RESILIENT TILE FLOORING RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING
	WALL COVERINGS
098433	
099114	EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)
099124	INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)
099300	STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING
099600	HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS
DIVISION 1	0 - SPECIALTIES
101416	
101419	DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE
	ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE
102113.19	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

104413

104416 105113

113300 RETRACTABLE STAIRS

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

122413 ROLLER WINDOW SHADES 123661.16 SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

102800 TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

METAL LOCKERS

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION NOT USED

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

NOT USED

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

NOT USED

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

220510	BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS
220511	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
220513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
220517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.12	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.15	GATE VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220548	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
221123	FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING
221123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
221319.13	SANITARY DRAINS
223300	ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
223400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
224213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
224213.16	COMMERCIAL URINALS
224216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
224216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS
224223	COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)

230510	BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS
230511	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230548	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	DUCT ACCESSORIES
233713	AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260510	ELECTRICAL GENERAL
260512	TEMPORARY ELECTRICAL FACILITIES
260514	SERVICE CHARACTERISTICS
260519	CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING
260529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

332722 SANITARY SEWER SYSTEM

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

260533 260548 260553 260573 260574 260923 262416 262726 262813 262816 263213 263600 265119 265613 265619	
DIVISION	27 - COMMUNICATIONS
270100	TELEPHONE/DATA RACEWAY SYSTEM
DIVISION	28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
283111	FIRE ALARM
DIVISION	31 - EARTHWORK
311000 311100 312200 312205 312250 313116	SITE PREPARATION, GENERAL CLEARING AND GRUBBING EARTHWORK PREPARATION OF SUBGRADE TRENCHING, BACKFILL AND COMPACTION TERMITE CONTROL
DIVISION	32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS
321373 322290 322500 322528 323113	CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS SLOPE PROTECTION AND EROSION CONTROL ASHPAHLT PAVING CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
DIVISION	33 - UTILITIES
332433 332607 332614 332660	STORM SEWERS PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES AND COVERS HDPE PIPE AND FITTING WATER SYSTEM

ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

Sealed proposals will be received by the City of Lincoln at the Lincoln City Hall, City Council Chambers, 150 Magnolia Street, Lincoln, AL 35096, until **2:00 PM CST, Thursday, May 8th, 2025** for:

A NEW LINCOLN POLICE STATION CITY OF LINCOLN

at which time and place they will be publicly opened and read. A **Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference** for General Contractors that wish to submit a bid will be held at Lincoln City Hall Council Chambers, located at 150 Magnolia Street, Lincoln, AL 35096, at **10:00 AM CST, April 22**nd, **2025**.

A cashier's check or bid bond payable to the City of Lincoln in an amount not less than five (5) percent of the amount of the bid, but in no event more than \$10,000, must accompany the bidder's proposal. Performance and Payment Bonds and evidence of insurance required in the bid documents will be required at the signing of the Contract.

Drawings and specifications may be examined at the office of Bill Whittaker Architecture, 236 Martin Street, Anniston, Alabama 36206. Contact: Bill Whittaker at 256-689-0238 Bid Documents may be obtained from the Architect upon deposit of \$350.00 per set/project, which will be refunded in full on the first two (2) sets issued to each general contract bidder submitting a bonafide bid, upon return of documents in good condition within ten days of bid date. Other sets for general contractors, and sets for subcontractors and dealers, may be obtained upon non-refundable deposit of \$250.00.

Bids must be submitted on proposal forms furnished by the Architect or copies thereof. All bidders bidding in amounts exceeding that established by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors must be licensed under the provisions of Title 34, Chapter 8, Code of Alabama, 1975, and must show evidence of license before bidding or bid will not be received or considered by the Engineer; the bidder shall show such evidence by clearly displaying his or her current license number on the outside of the sealed envelope in which the proposal is delivered. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals and to waive technical errors if, in the Owner's judgment, the best interests of the Owner will thereby be promoted. Bidder certifies by submitting a response to this bid request that neither the company nor any of its employees who will provide or perform services under this contract have been debarred. suspended or otherwise declared ineligible from receiving Federal contracts and subcontracts. Alabama law (section 41-4-116, code of Alabama 1975) provides that every bid submitted and contract executed shall contain a certification that the vendor, contractor, and all of its affiliates that make sales for delivery into Alabama or leases for use in Alabama are registered. collecting, and remitting Alabama state and local sales, use, and/or lease tax on all taxable sales and leases in Alabama. By submitting a response to this solicitation, the bidder is hereby certifying that they are in full compliance with Act No. 2006-557; they are not barred from bidding or entering into a contract pursuant to 41-4-116, and acknowledge that the Owner may declare the contract void if the certification is false.

City of Lincoln (Local Awarding Authority)

Bill Whittaker Architecture (Architect)

Publication Dates: April 5th, 12th, and 19th 2025

Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project: (Name, location, and detailed description)

New Lincoln Police Department Behind Lincoln City Hall, Alabama. Address: TBD

New, single-story Police Department building consisting of approximately 15,730 gross square feet including Court Room and Storm Shelter

THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

City of Lincoln 150 Magnolia St, Lincoln, AL 35096 +12057637777

THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Bill Whittaker P.C., Architecture 236 Martin Street Annisont, Alabama 36206 256-689-0238

TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 DEFINITIONS
- 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS
- 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS
- 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES
- 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS
- 6 POST-BID INFORMATION
- 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND
- 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL LAWS MAY IMPOSE REQUIREMENTS ON PUBLIC PROCUREMENT CONTRACTS. CONSULT LOCAL AUTHORITIES OR AN ATTORNEY TO VERIFY REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROCUREMENT BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM

It is intended that AIA Document G612™–2017, Owner's Instructions to the Architect, Parts A and B will be completed prior to using this document.

ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

- § 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid. Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.
- § 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.
- § 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.
- § 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

- § 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:
 - .1 the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents:
 - .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project. if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction:
 - .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents:
 - 4 the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents;
 - .5 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception; and
 - .6 the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

§ 3.1 Distribution

§ 3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents, as indicated below, from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall obtain Bidding Documents.)

Drawings and specifications may be examined at the office of Bill Whittaker Architecture, 236 Martin Street, Anniston, Alabama 36206.

Bid Documents may be obtained from the Architect upon deposit of \$350.00 per set/project, which will be refunded in full on the first two (2) sets issued to each general contract bidder submitting a bonafide bid, upon return of documents in good condition within ten days of bid date. Other sets for general contractors, and sets for subcontractors and dealers, may be obtained upon non-refundable deposit of \$250.00. Email bill@billwarch.com for electronic copies of bid documents.

- § 3.1.2 Any required deposit shall be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.
- § 3.1.3 Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the advertisement or invitation to bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.
- § 3.1.4 Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.
- § 3.1.5 The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

§ 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents

- § 3.2.1 The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2.
- § 3.2.2 Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing and shall be received by the Architect at least one day prior to the date for receipt of Bids. (Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit requests for clarification and interpretation.)

Email quesiton to both bill@billwarch.com and stephen@billwarch.com

§ 3.2.3 Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3 Substitutions

§ 3.3.1 The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

§ 3.3.2 Substitution Process

- § 3.3.2.1 Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect at least ten days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Requests shall be submitted in the same manner as that established for submitting clarifications and interpretations in Section 3.2.2.
- § 3.3.2.2 Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents or by CSI Substitution Request Form 1.5C
- § 3.3.2.3 If a Substitution Request Form shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution: (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; and (4) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.
- § 3.3.3 The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.
- § 3.3.4 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.
- § 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Addenda will be transmitted.)

Addednum will be transmitted by email via Dropbox link

- § 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.
- § 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued up to the date for receipt of Bids, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.
- § 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

§ 4.1 Preparation of Bids

- § 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.
- § 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.
- § 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and numbers, unless noted otherwise on the bid form. In case of discrepancy, the amount entered in words shall govern.
- § 4.1.4 Edits to entries made on paper bid forms must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.
- § 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change" or as required by the bid form.
- § 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall neither make additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.
- § 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. As part of the documentation submitted with the Bid, the Bidder shall provide evidence of its legal authority to perform the Work in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further name the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached, certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.
- § 4.1.8 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

§ 4.2 Bid Security

§ 4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by the following bid security:

(Insert the form and amount of bid security.)

A cashier's check or bid bond payable to the City of Lincoln in an amount not less than five (5) percent of the amount of the bid, but in no event more than \$10,000, must accompany the bidder's proposal.

- § 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and shall, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty. In the event the Owner fails to comply with Section 6.2, the amount of the bid security shall not be forfeited to the Owner.
- § 4.2.3 If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310TM, Bid Bond, unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall

affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 4.2.4 The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until (a) the Contract has been executed and bonds, if required, have been furnished: (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected. However, if no Contract has been awarded or a Bidder has not been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, a Bidder may, beginningdays after the opening of Bids, withdraw its Bid and request the return of its bid security.

§ 4.3 Submission of Bids

§ 4.3.1 A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

(Indicate how, such as by website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit their Bid.)

Sealed proposals will be received by the City of Lincoln at the Lincoln City Hall, City Council Chambers, 150 Magnolia Street, Lincoln, AL 35096 at which time and place they will be publicly opened and read. Refer to advertisement for bids for date and time.

- § 4.3.2 Paper copies of the Bid. the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address, and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.
- § 4.3.3 Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the invitation to bid. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.
- § 4.3.4 The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.
- § 4.3.5 A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted.

§ 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

- § 4.4.1 Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.
- § 4.4.2 Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.
- § 4.4.3 After the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder who discovers that it made a clerical error in its Bid shall notify the Architect of such error within two days, or pursuant to a timeframe specified by the law of the jurisdiction where the Project is located, requesting withdrawal of its Bid. Upon providing evidence of such error to the reasonable satisfaction of the Architect, the Bid shall be withdrawn and not resubmitted. If a Bid is withdrawn pursuant to this Section 4.4.3, the bid security will be attended to as follows:

(State the terms and conditions, such as Bid rank, for returning or retaining the bid security.)

Per State of Alabama Laws

ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

§ 5.1 Opening of Bids

If stipulated in an advertisement or invitation to bid, or when otherwise required by law, Bids properly identified and received within the specified time limits will be publicly opened and read aloud. A summary of the Bids may be made available to Bidders.

§ 5.2 Rejection of Bids

Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids.

§ 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)

§ 5.3.1 It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents. Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.

ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

§ 6.1 Contractor's Qualification Statement

Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request and within the timeframe specified by the Architect, a properly executed AIA Document A305TM, Contractor's Qualification Statement, unless such a Statement has been previously required and submitted for this Bid.

§ 6.2 Owner's Financial Capability

A Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration may request in writing, fourteen days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids, that the Owner furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Owner shall then furnish such reasonable evidence to the Bidder no later than seven days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished within the allotted time, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 6.3 Submittals

- § 6.3.1 After notification of selection for the award of the Contract, the Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, submit in writing to the Owner through the Architect:
 - .1 a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces:
 - .2 names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each; and
 - .3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.
- § 6.3.2 The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.
- § 6.3.3 Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder.
- § 6.3.4 Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

§ 7.1 Bond Requirements

- § 7.1.1 If stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.
- § 7.1.2 If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.
- § 7.1.3 The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.
- § 7.1.4 Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of the Contract Sum.
- (If Payment or Performance Bonds are to be in an amount other than 100% of the Contract Sum, indicate the dollar amount or percentage of the Contract Sum.)

§ 7.1.5 Subcontractor Bonds

The Contractor shall require all major subcontractors — including, sitework/civil, concrete, mechanical, electrical, plumbing, roofing, steel, framing, masonry, and with subcontracts exceeding \$50,000 — to furnish Payment and Performance Bonds in the full amount of their respective subcontracts. These bonds shall be issued by a surety company licensed in the State of Alabama. The cost of such bonds shall be included in each subcontractor's proposal to the Contractor.

§ 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds

§ 7.2.1 The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to commence sooner in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.

- § 7.2.2 Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond.
- § 7.2.3 The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.
- § 7.2.4 The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- § 8.1 Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:
 - .1 AIA Document A101TM–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, unless otherwise stated below.
 (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
 - 2 AIA Document A101TM–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, unless otherwise stated below. (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
 - .3 AIA Document A201TM–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, unless otherwise stated below.
 (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
 - .4 Building Information Modeling Exhibit, if completed:
 - Number Title Date
 Refer to project Dropbox link for
 - .6 Specifications

bid documents

bid documents

Drawings

Section Title Date Pages
Refer to project Dropbox link for

.7 Addenda:

Number Date Pages
Refer to project Dropbox link for
bid documents

.8 Other Exhibits:

(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)

[] AIA Document E204TM_2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below: (Insert the date of the E204-2017.)

The Sustainability Pl	an:			
	Date	Pages		
Supplementary and o	other Conditions of the Con	itract:		
ent	Title	Date	Pages	
•	Supplementary and o	Date Supplementary and other Conditions of the Con	Date Pages Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:	Date Pages Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

.9 Other documents listed below: (List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Proposed Contract Documents.)

PROPOSAL FORM

To:	City of Lincoln		Date:
	(Awarding Authority)		
In comp	liance with the Advertisement for Bid	ls and subject to all the cond	itions thereof, the undersigned
		Legal Name of Bidder)	
hereby p	proposes to furnish all labor and mater	ials and perform all work rea	quired for the construction of
WORK	New Lincoln Police Department		
	Lincoln, Alabama		
in accord	dance with Drawings and Specification	ns, dated 3/31/2025	, prepared by
Bill Wh	nittaker P.C., Architecture		, Architect/Engineer.
The Ride	der, which is organized and existing u	inder the laws of the State of	
	ts principal offices in the City of		
			,
15. <u> </u>			·
having band Spe Docume ADDEN	R'S REPRESENTATION: The Bio become fully informed regarding all pecifications (including all Addenda ents relative thereto, and that it has satisful to the Bidder acknowledges receipted.	pertinent conditions, and that received) for the Work and isfied itself relative to the Work of Addenda Nos	t it has examined the Drawings d the other Bid and Contract ork to be performed. through inclusively.
BASE B	BID : For construction complete as sho		
		Dol	lars (\$)
	ENATES: If alternates as set forth in the made to the Base Bid:	the Bid Documents are acce	pted, the following adjustments
For Alter	rnate No. 1 () [add] [deduct] 5	\$
For Alter	mate No. 2 () (add) (deduct)	\$
For Alter	rnate No. 3 () (add) (deduct)	\$
For Alter	mate No. 4 () (add) (deduct)	\$
For Alter	mate No. 5 () (add) (deduct)	\$
For Alter	rnate No. 6 () \square (add) \square (deduct)	\$

UNIT PRICES - Attached

(Bidder to list required unit prices on separate sheet on their letterhead and submit with this proposal form.)

BID SECURITY: The undersigned agrees to enter into a Construction Contract and furnish the prescribed Performance and Payment Bonds and evidence of insurance within fifteen calendar days, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents, after the contract forms have been presented for signature, provided such presentation is made within 30 calendar days after the opening of bids, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents. As security for this condition, the undersigned further agrees that the funds represented by the Bid Bond (or cashier's check) attached hereto may be called and paid into the account of the Awarding Authority as liquidated damages for failure to so comply.

Attached hereto is a: (Mark the appro	opriate box and provide the applicable info	rmation.)
O Bid Bond, executed by		as Surety
	Bank of	
for the sum of		
Dollars (\$) made payable to the Av	warding Authority.
BIDDER'S ALABAMA LICENS State License for General Contracting		Type(s) of Work
on behalf of the Bidder as legal fraud or collusion with any other complete, and that the bid is made the undersigned at the address set of the Bidder also declares that a submitted at a time subsequent	rsigned certifies that he or she is ally named, that this proposal is r bidder, that the information indice in full accord with State law. No forth below. A list of all proposed major subotto the receipt of bids as establishis time exceed twenty-four (24) hourself.	submitted in good faith withou cated in this document is true and otice of acceptance may be sent to contractors and suppliers will be shed by the Architect in the Bio
Legal Name of Bidder		
Mailing Address		
* By (Legal Signature)		
* Name & Title (print)		(Seal)
Telephone Number		
Email Address		

ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX

(Attach to proposal form)

To: City of Lincoln	Date:		
(Awarding Aut	thority)		
NAME OF PROJECT New Lincoln Police Department, Lincoln, Alabama			
SALES TAX ACCOUNTING			
Pursuant to Act 2013-205, Section 1(g) the proposal form as follows:	he Contractor accounts for the sales tax NOT included in the bid ESTIMATED SALES TAX AMOUNT		
BASE BID:	\$		
Alternate No. 1 ((Insert key word for Alternat) [(add) [(deduct) \$		
Alternate No. 2 () [add] [deduct] \$		
Alternate No. 3 () [add] [deduct] \$		
Alternate No. 4 () [add] [deduct] \$		
Alternate No. 5 () [add] [deduct] \$		
Alternate No. 6 (
<u>.</u>	f sales tax shall render the bid non-responsive. Other than accounting shall not affect the bid pricing nor be considered in the e and responsive bidder.		
Legal Name of Bidder			
Mailing Address			
*By (Legal Signature)			
	(Seal)		
*Title			
Telephone Number			
Email Address			

ATA[®] Document A310[™] – 2010

Bid Bond

CONTRACTOR:

(Name, legal status and address)

SURFTY:

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

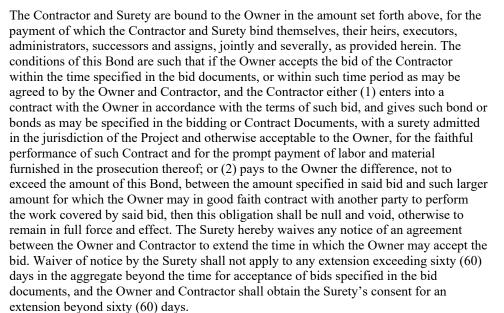
This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

BOND AMOUNT: \$

PROJECT:

(Name, location or address, and Project number, if any)



If this Bond is issued in connection with a subcontractor's bid to a Contractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be

deemed to be Contractor.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location of the Project, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a

common law bond.		
Signed and sealed this day of ,		
	(Contractor as Principal)	(Seal)
(Witness)	(Title)	
	(Surety)	(Seal)
(Witness)		
(Witness)	(Title)	



Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of

payment is a Stipulated Sum

AGREEMENT made as of the day of in the year	
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)	ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:
BETWEEN the Owner: (Name, legal status, address and other information)	The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is
	available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.
and the Contractor:	This document has important legal
(Name, legal status, address and other information)	consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.
	The parties should complete A101®–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201®–2017, General Conditions of
for the following Project:	the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by
(Name, location and detailed description)	reference. Do not use with other
	general conditions unless this document is modified.
The Architect:	
(Name, legal status, address and other information)	
The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.	

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT
- 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
- 4 CONTRACT SUM
- 5 PAYMENTS
- 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION
- 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
- 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

EXHIBIT A INSURANCE AND BONDS

ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modification, appears in Article 9.

ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:

(Check one of the following boxes.)

The date of this Agreement.

A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

Established as follows:

(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

§ 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:15:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

(640e2aedf442e4498d0967f6)

Substantial Completion of the e (Check one of the following box	entire Work: sees and complete the necessary information.)	
[] Not later tha	nn () calendar days from the date of c	ommencement of the Work.
By the follo	wing date:	
	f the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Doct Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall a	
Portion of Work	Substantial Completion Date	
§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to shall be assessed as set forth in	achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this S Section 4.5.	Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any,
ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM		
The Contract Sum shall be	Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the (\$), subject to additions and deductions a	
§ 4.2 Alternates § 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, include	ed in the Contract Sum:	
ltem	Price	
this Agreement. Upon acceptan	s noted below, the following alternates may be accepted, the Owner shall issue a Modification to this Agreed the conditions that must be met for the Owner to accept the Owner the Owner to accept the Owner t	eement.
Item	Price	Conditions for Acceptance
§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, includ (Identify each allowance.)	ed in the Contract Sum:	
ltem	Price	
§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any: (Identify the item and state the	unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which th	he unit price will be applicable.)
ltem	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit (\$0.00)
§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any (Insert terms and conditions for		

§ 4.6 Other:

(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)

ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS § 5.1 Progress Payments § 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents. § 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows: § 5.1.3 Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the day of the month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than) days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment. ((Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.) § 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. § 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment. § 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201TM–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows: § 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include: That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work; .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner,

§ 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

judgment, to be reasonably justified.

The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and

The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017;

That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional

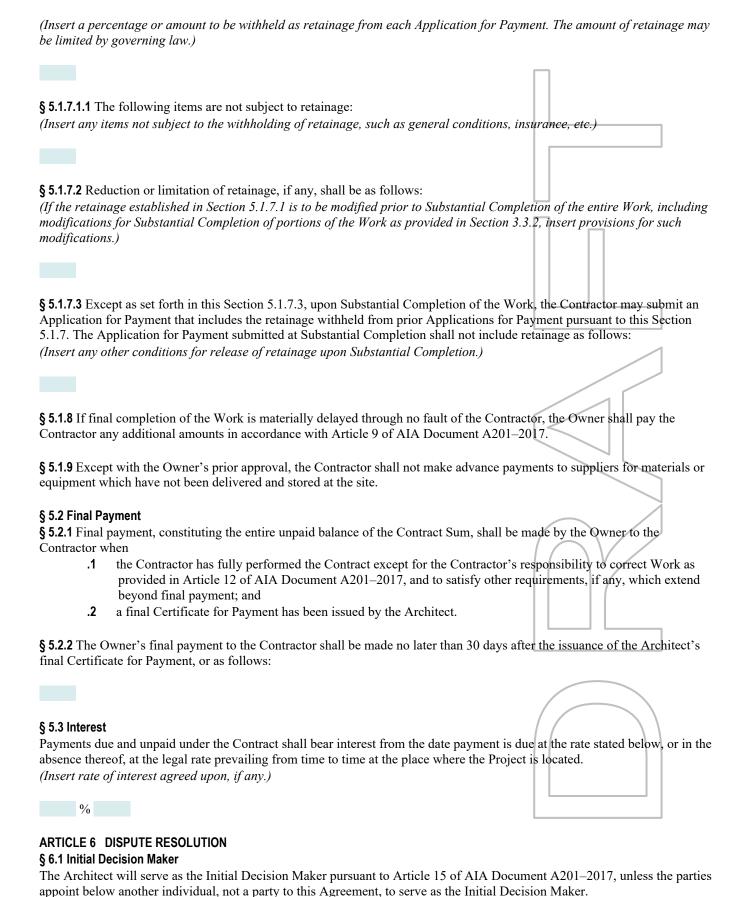
- .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
- For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017; and
- Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

§ 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:15:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

(640e2aedf442e4498d0967f6)



AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:15:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations. e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)
§ 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows: (Check the appropriate box.)
[Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017
[Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction
[] Other (Specify)
If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.
ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION § 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.
§ 7.1.1 If the Contract is terminated for the Owner's convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017 then the Owner shall pay the Contractor a termination fee as follows: (Insert the amount of, or method for determining, the fee, if any, payable to the Contractor following a termination for the Owner's convenience.)
§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.
ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS § 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201–2017 or another Contract Document the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.
§ 8.2 The Owner's representative: (Name, address, email address, and other information)

6

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:

(Name, addre	ess, email address, and other informa	tion)		
§ 8.4 Neither party.	the Owner's nor the Contractor's repr	esentative shall be changed w	vithout ten da	ays' prior notice to the other
Standard For	ce and Bonds wner and the Contractor shall purchas m of Agreement Between Owner and d Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contrac	Contractor where the basis of		
§ 8.5.2 The Contract Doc	ontractor shall provide bonds as set foruments.	orth in AIA Document A101Th	M_2017 Exhi	ibit A, and elsewhere in the
building information (If other than electronic for	n electronic format, pursuant to Artic rmation modeling exhibit, if complete in accordance with a building informat such as name, title, and email and receipt for the transmission.)	d, or as otherwise set forth be nation modeling exhibit, insert	elow: t requiremen	nts for delivering notice in
§ 8.7 Other pr	rovisions:			
	ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUME reement is comprised of the following AIA Document A101™—2017, Stan AIA Document A101™—2017, Exhi AIA Document A201™—2017, Gene Building information modeling exhi (Insert the date of the building information)	g documents: dard Form of Agreement Betweent bit A, Insurance and Bonds eral Conditions of the Contract bit, dated as indicated below:	et for Constru	uction
.5	Drawings			
	Number	Title	Date	
.6	Specifications			
	Section	Title	Date	Pages

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:15:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

.7

Addenda, if any:

	Number	Date	Pages	
		lating to bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerate		f the Contract Documents unless
.8	Other Exhibits: (Check all boxes that ap	pply and include appropriate info	ormation identifying the	exhibit where required.)
		ament E204 TM _2017, Sustainable of the E204-2017 incorporated	-	as indicated below:
	[] The Susta	inability Plan:		
	Title	Date	P	ages
	[] Suppleme	ntary and other Conditions of the	e Contract:	
	Document	Title	D	Pages
.9	A201 TM –2017 provides Contractor's bid or pro information furnished b	al documents that are intended to that the advertisement or invitat posal, portions of Addenda relat by the Owner in anticipation of re nerated in this Agreement. Any st	ion to bid, Instructions t ting to bidding or propos eceiving bids or proposa	to Bidders, sample forms, the sal requirements, and other als, are not part of the Contract
This Agreem	ent entered into as of the	day and year first written above.		
OWNER (Sign	nature)	CONTRAC	CTOR (Signature)	
(Printed nam	e and title)	(Printed n	name and title)	



General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)



THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)



THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status and address)



TABLE OF ARTICLES

- **GENERAL PROVISIONS** 1
- 2 **OWNER**
- CONTRACTOR 3
- **ARCHITECT** 4
- **SUBCONTRACTORS** 5
- CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS 6
- 7 **CHANGES IN THE WORK**
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY 10
- 11 **INSURANCE AND BONDS**
- **UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK** 12
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™-2017, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.





ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

15 **CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**



INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

Access to Work

3.16, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 4.2, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

Allowances

3.8

Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

ARCHITECT

4

Architect, Definition of

4.1.1

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7



3

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Architect's Authority to Reject Work 3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1 Architect's Copyright 1.1.7, 1.5 Architect's Decisions 3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2Architect's Inspections 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 Architect's Instructions 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2 Architect's Interpretations 4.2.11, 4.2.12 Architect's Project Representative 4.2.10 Architect's Relationship with Contractor 1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2 Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors 1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3 Architect's Representations 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1 Architect's Site Visits 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 Asbestos 10.3.1 Attorneys' Fees 3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3 Award of Separate Contracts 6.1.1, 6.1.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work 5.2 **Basic Definitions Bidding Requirements** 1.1.1 Binding Dispute Resolution 8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1 Bonds, Lien 7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3 **Bonds, Performance, and Payment** 7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5 Building Information Models Use and Reliance** 1.8 **Building Permit** 3.7.1 Capitalization 1.3

13.4.4 AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

(640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Certificates for Payment

Certificate of Substantial Completion

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval

Certificates of Insurance

9.10.2

Change Orders

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

Change Orders, Definition of

7.2.1

CHANGES IN THE WORK

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

Claims, Definition of

15.1.1

Claims, Notice of

1.6.2, 15.1.3

CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4

Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims

15.4.1

Claims for Additional Cost

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**

Claims for Additional Time

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**

Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for

3.7.4

Claims for Damages

3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Claims Subject to Arbitration

15.4.1

Cleaning Up

3.15, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to

2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**

Commencement of the Work, Definition of

8.1.2

Communications

3.9.1, 4.2.4

Completion, Conditions Relating to

 $3.4.1,\, 3.11,\, 3.15,\, 4.2.2,\, 4.2.9,\, 8.2,\, 9.4.2,\, 9.8,\, 9.9.1,\, 9.10,\, 12.2,\, 14.1.2,\, 15.1.2$

COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND

9

Completion, Substantial

3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

Compliance with Laws

2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.2, 15.4.2, 15

Concealed or Unknown Conditions

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written

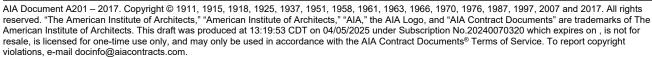
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

Consolidation or Joinder

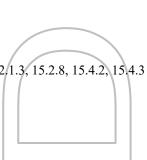
15.4.4

CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

1.1.4, 6



Waser Notes: (640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)



Construction Change Directive, Definition of

7.3.1

Construction Change Directives

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

5.4, 14.2.2.2

Continuing Contract Performance

15.1.4

Contract, Definition of

1.1.2

CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE

5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, 14

Contract Administration

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of

1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

Contract Documents, Definition of

1.1.1

Contract Sum

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5, 15.2.5**

Contract Sum, Definition of

9.1

Contract Time

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

Contract Time, Definition of

8.1.1

CONTRACTOR

3

Contractor, Definition of

3.1, 6.1.2

Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contractor's Employees

2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Contractor's Liability Insurance

11.1

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces

3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4

Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4

Contractor's Relationship with the Architect

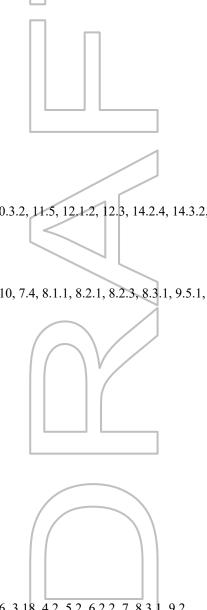
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Contractor's Representations

3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8



AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

West Notes: (640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)

Contractor's Review of Contract Documents

3.2

Contractor's Right to Stop the Work

2.2.2, 9.7

Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.1

Contractor's Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Contractor's Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor's Supervision and Construction Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Coordination and Correlation

1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications

1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11

Copyrights

1.5, 3.17

Correction of Work

2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1

Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

Cost, Definition of

7.3.4

Costs

2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4,

Cutting and Patching

3.14, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors

3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work

3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay

6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2

Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of

8.1.2

Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of

8.1.3

Day, Definition of

8.1.4

Decisions of the Architect

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

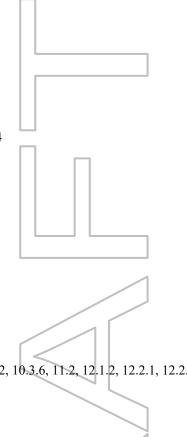
Decisions to Withhold Certification

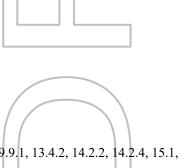
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of

2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1





AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com. **User Notes:**

Delays and Extensions of Time

3.2, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5

Digital Data Use and Transmission

1.7

Disputes

6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

Documents and Samples at the Site

3.11

Drawings, Definition of

1.1.5

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of

3.1

Effective Date of Insurance

8.2.2

Emergencies

10.4, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**

Employees, Contractor's

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, or Materials

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Execution and Progress of the Work

1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.2

12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4

Extensions of Time

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

Failure of Payment

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Faulty Work

(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

Final Completion and Final Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Financial Arrangements, Owner's

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

GENERAL PROVISIONS

1

Governing Law

13.1

Guarantees (See Warranty)

Hazardous Materials and Substances

10.2.4, **10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

5.2.1

Indemnification

3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

Information and Services Required of the Owner

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

Initial Decision

15.2

Initial Decision Maker, Definition of

1.1.8

User Notes:

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.







Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Injury or Damage to Person or Property

10.2.8, 10.4

Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

Instructions to Bidders

1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

Instruments of Service, Definition of

1.1.7

Insurance

6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, 11

Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration

11.1.4, 11.2.3

Insurance, Contractor's Liability

11.1

Insurance, Effective Date of

8.2.2, 14.4.2

Insurance, Owner's Liability

11.2

Insurance, Property

10.2.5, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

INSURANCE AND BONDS

11

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy

9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of

11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

Interest

13.5

Interpretation

1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

Labor and Materials, Equipment

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

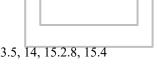
Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1





AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)

Limitations of Liability 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1Limitations of Time 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5 Materials, Hazardous 10.2.4, 10.3 Materials, Labor, Equipment and 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 10.2.4, 10.214.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2 Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction 3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2 Mechanic's Lien 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8 Mediation 8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1 Minor Changes in the Work 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, 7.4 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS Modifications, Definition of 1.1.1 Modifications to the Contract 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2 **Mutual Responsibility** 6.2 Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of 9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3 Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2 **Notice 1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance 11.1.4, 11.2.3 **Notice of Claims** 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1 Notice of Testing and Inspections 13.4.1, 13.4.2 Observations, Contractor's 3.2, 3.7.4 Occupancy 2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8 Orders, Written 1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1 **OWNER**

Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

2

2.2, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

Owner, Definition of

Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4,

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

15.1.4

Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1,

9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

Owner's Insurance

11.2

Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

2.5, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Clean Up

6.3

Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

6.1

Owner's Right to Stop the Work

2.4

Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, 9.9

Patching, Cutting and

3.14, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

10



11

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

Product Data, Definition of

3.12.2

Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings

3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7

Progress and Completion

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

Progress Payments

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

Project, Definition of

1.1.4

Project Representatives

4.2.10

Property Insurance

10.2.5, 11.2

Proposal Requirements

1.1.1

PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

10

Regulations and Laws

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

Rejection of Work

4.2.6, 12.2.1

Releases and Waivers of Liens

9.3.1, 9.10.2

Representations

3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Representatives

2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1

Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10

Retainage

9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3

Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect

3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2

Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor

3.12

Rights and Remedies

1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, 13.3, 14,

15.4

Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

3.17

Rules and Notices for Arbitration

15.4.1

Safety of Persons and Property

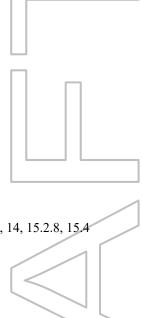
10.2, 10.4

Safety Precautions and Programs

3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4

Samples, Definition of

3.12.3





12

AlA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

Samples at the Site, Documents and

3.11

Schedule of Values

9.2, 9.3.1

Schedules, Construction

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Separate Contracts and Contractors

1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2

Separate Contractors, Definition of

6.1.1

Shop Drawings, Definition of

3.12.1

Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7

Site, Use of

3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

Site Inspections

3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Site Visits, Architect's

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Special Inspections and Testing

4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4

Specifications, Definition of

1.1.6

Specifications

1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14

Statute of Limitations

15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Stopping the Work

2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1

Stored Materials

6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4

Subcontractor, Definition of

5.1.1

SUBCONTRACTORS

5

Subcontractors, Work by

1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7

Subcontractual Relations

5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1

Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Submittal Schedule

3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7

Subrogation, Waivers of

6.1.1, 11.3

Substances, Hazardous

10.3

Substantial Completion

4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2



13

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "Alla," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Substantial Completion, Definition of

9.8.1

Substitution of Subcontractors

5.2.3, 5.2.4

Substitution of Architect

2.3.3

Substitutions of Materials

3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8

Sub-subcontractor, Definition of

5.1.2

Subsurface Conditions

3.7.4

Successors and Assigns

13.2

Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Supervision and Construction Procedures

1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7

Surety, Consent of

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys

1.1.7, 2.3.4

Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

14.3

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract

5.4.1.1, 14

Taxes

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

Termination by the Contractor

14.1, 15.1.7

Termination by the Owner for Cause

5.4.1.1, **14.2,** 15.1.7

Termination by the Owner for Convenience

14.4

Termination of the Architect

2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment

14.2.2

TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

14

Tests and Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**

TIME

8

Time, Delays and Extensions of

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5



AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AllA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

Time Limits on Claims

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

12

Uncovering of Work

12.1

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

Use of Site

3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

Values, Schedule of

9.2, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

Waivers of Subrogation

6.1.1, **11.3**

Warranty

3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

Work, Definition of

1.1.3

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1



AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 Basic Definitions

§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

§ 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

§ 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

§ 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

§ 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

AlA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

§ 1.2.1.1 The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

§ 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

§ 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

§ 1.6 Notice

§ 1.6.1 Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

§ 1.6.2 Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon written protocols governing the transmission and use of, and reliance on, Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form.

§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to written protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model,

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

and each of their agents and employees.

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 General

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

§ 2.2.2 Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 2.2.3 After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

§ 2.2.4 Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.3.2 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

§ 2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a tenday period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

§ 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

§ 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be

of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

§ 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.
- § 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

§ 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

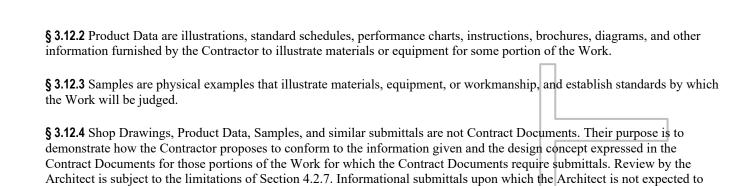
§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.



take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract

Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

- § 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.
- § 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.
- § 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.
- § 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.
- § 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.
- § 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.
- § 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such

AlA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.10.2 If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

§ 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.15 Cleaning Up

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

§ 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

§ 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous onsite inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (640e2aedf442e4498d0967fa)

- § 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.
- § 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.
- § 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.
- § 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.
- § 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.
- § 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.
- § 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.
- § 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 Definitions

- § 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.
- § 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract,

shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents, Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

- § 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that
 - .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
 - .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The

Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation. § 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement. § 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised. § 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12. § 6.2 Mutual Responsibility § 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents. § 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent. § 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction. § 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5. § 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14. § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

§ 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

§ 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation:
- 2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee;
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

§ 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- **.3** Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- 4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com. **User Notes:**

§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

§ 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

§ 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later

than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

§ 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- **.3** failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint

checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

§ 9.6 Progress Payments

- § 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.
- § 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.
- § 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.
- § 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.
- § 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.
- § 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- § 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.
- § 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

§ 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is

sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

AlA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

§ 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

§ 11.1.2 The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.1.3 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance. If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage,

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AllA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss

§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the

AlA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2 Correction of Work

§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies

§ 13.3.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- 1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- 3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.
- § 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.
- § 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

- § 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.
- § 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent
 - .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
 - .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

- § 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.
- § 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall
 - .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
 - .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
 - .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.
- § 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 Claims

§ 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not

more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

§ 15.1.3.1 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

§ 15.1.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.4.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 15.2 Initial Decision

User Notes:

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AlA Logo, and "AlA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:19:53 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AlA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

- § 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.
- § 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.
- § 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.
- § 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.
- § 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.
- § 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.
- § 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.
- § 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

§ 15.3 Mediation

- § 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.
- § 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision. § 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof. § 15.4 Arbitration § 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded. § 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim. § 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof. § 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof. § 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder § 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s). § 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent. § 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and

Contractor under this Agreement.

\mathbf{AIA}° Document A312 $^{\circ}$ – 2010

Performance Bond

		_
CONTRACTOR: (Name, legal status and address)	SURETY: (Name, legal status and principal place of business)	ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS: The author of this document may have revised the text of the original
OWNER: (Name, legal status and address) CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT		AlA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or
Date: Amount: \$ Description: (Name and location)		deleted from the original AIA text. This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.
BOND Date:		Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.
(Not earlier than Construction Continuation States & Modifications to this Bond:	ract Date)	
CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL	on the last page of this Performance Bond.) SURETY Company: (Corporate Seal)	
Name and	Signature: Name and Title:	
AGENT or BROKER:	OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE: (Architect, Engineer or other party:)	

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

- § 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.
- § 2 If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Section 3.
- § 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after
 - 1.1 the Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Section 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default;
 - .2 the Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety; and
 - .3 the Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.
- § 4 Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Section 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.
- § 5 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:
- § 5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;
- § 5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors;
- § 5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Owner and a contractor selected with the Owner's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Section 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or
- § 5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:
 - .1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or
 - .2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.
- § 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Section 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Section 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.
- § 7 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication, for
 - the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;

- additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Section 5; and liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor. § 8 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.3 or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond. § 9 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns. § 10 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations. § 11 Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable. § 12 Notice to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears. § 13 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond. § 14 Definitions § 14.1 Balance of the Contract Price. The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts received or to be received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract. § 14.2 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents. § 14.3 Contractor Default. Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract. § 14.4 Owner Default. Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under
- the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.
- § 14.5 Contract Documents. All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.
- § 15 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.
- § 16 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

(Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Performance Bond)

(Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)



\mathbf{AIA}° Document A312 $^{\circ}$ – 2010

Payment Bond

r dymone Bond		
CONTRACTOR: (Name, legal status and address)	SURETY: (Name, legal status and principal place of business)	ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS: The author of this document may have revised the text of the original
OWNER: (Name, legal status and address) CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT		AlA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.
Date: Amount: \$ Description: (Name and location)		This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.
BOND Date:		Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.
(Not earlier than Construction Contraction) Amount: \$ Modifications to this Bond:	ct Date)	
(Any additional signatures appear on CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL Company: (Corporate Seal)	the last page of this Payment Bond.) SURETY Company: (Corporate Seal)	
Signature: Name and Title:	Signature: Name and Title:	
(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Nam	ne, address and telephone)	
AGENT or BROKER:	OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE: (Architect, Engineer or other party:)	
		ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited

AIA Document A312 – 2010 Payment Bond. Copyright © 2010. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "Ala," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This draft was produced at 13:21:11 CDT on 04/05/2025 under Subscription No.20240070320 which expires on , is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

§ 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner to pay for labor, materials and equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, subject to the following terms.
§ 2 If the Contractor promptly makes payment of all sums due to Claimants, and defends, indemnifies and holds harmless the Owner from claims, demands, liens or suits by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, then the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond.
§ 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation to the Owner under this Bond shall arise after the Owner has promptly notified the Contractor and the Surety (at the address described in Section 13) of claims, demands, liens or suits against the Owner or the Owner's property by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract and tendered defense of such claims demands, liens or suits to the Contractor and the Surety.
§ 4 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions in Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against a duly tendered claim, demand, lien or suit.
§ 5 The Surety's obligations to a Claimant under this Bond shall arise after the following:
§ 5.1 Claimants, who do not have a direct contract with the Contractor, .1 have furnished a written notice of non-payment to the Contractor, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the materials were, or equipment was, furnished or supplied or for whom the labor was done or performed, within ninety (90) days after having last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment included in the Claim; and .2 have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).
§ 5.2 Claimants, who are employed by or have a direct contract with the Contractor, have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).
§ 6 If a notice of non-payment required by Section 5.1.1 is given by the Owner to the Contractor, that is sufficient to satisfy a Claimant's obligation to furnish a written notice of non-payment under Section 5.1.1.
§ 7 When a Claimant has satisfied the conditions of Sections 5.1 or 5.2, whichever is applicable, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take the following actions:
§ 7.1 Send an answer to the Claimant, with a copy to the Owner, within sixty (60) days after receipt of the Claim, stating the amounts that are undisputed and the basis for challenging any amounts that are disputed; and
§ 7.2 Pay or arrange for payment of any undisputed amounts.
§ 7.3 The Surety's failure to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2 shall not be deemed to constitute a waiver of defenses the Surety or Contractor may have or acquire as to a Claim, except as to undisputed amounts for which the Surety and Claimant have reached agreement. If, however, the Surety fails to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2, the Surety shall indemnify the Claimant for the reasonable attorney's fees the Claimant incurs thereafter to recover any sums found to be due and owing to the Claimant.
§ 8 The Surety's total obligation shall not exceed the amount of this Bond, plus the amount of reasonable attorney's fees provided under Section 7.3, and the amount of this Bond shall be credited for any payments made in good faith by the Surety.
§ 9 Amounts owed by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract shall be used for the performance of the Construction Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any construction performance bond. By the Contractor furnishing

use the funds for the completion of the work.

and the Owner accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the Contractor in the performance of the Construction Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the Contractor and Surety under this Bond, subject to the Owner's priority to

§ 10 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner, Claimants or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract. The Owner shall not be liable for the payment of any costs or expenses of any Claimant under this Bond, and shall have under this Bond no obligation to make payments to, or give notice on behalf of, Claimants or otherwise have any obligations to Claimants under this Bond.

§ 11 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.

§ 12 No suit or action shall be commenced by a Claimant under this Bond other than in a court of competent jurisdiction in the state in which the project that is the subject of the Construction Contract is located or after the expiration of one year from the date (1) on which the Claimant sent a Claim to the Surety pursuant to Section 5.1.2 or 5.2, or (2) on which the last labor or service was performed by anyone or the last materials or equipment were furnished by anyone under the Construction Contract, whichever of (1) or (2) first occurs. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

§ 13 Notice and Claims to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears. Actual receipt of notice or Claims, however accomplished, shall be sufficient compliance as of the date received.

§ 14 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

§ 15 Upon request by any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of this Bond, the Contractor and Owner shall promptly furnish a copy of this Bond or shall permit a copy to be made.

§ 16 Definitions

§ 16.1 Claim. A written statement by the Claimant including at a minimum:

- the name of the Claimant:
- the name of the person for whom the labor was done, or materials or equipment furnished;
- .3 a copy of the agreement or purchase order pursuant to which labor, materials or equipment was furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
- a brief description of the labor, materials or equipment furnished;
- the date on which the Claimant last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment for use in the .5 performance of the Construction Contract;
- the total amount earned by the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim;
- .7 the total amount of previous payments received by the Claimant; and
- the total amount due and unpaid to the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim.

§ 16.2 Claimant. An individual or entity having a direct contract with the Contractor or with a subcontractor of the Contractor to furnish labor, materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract. The term Claimant also includes any individual or entity that has rightfully asserted a claim under an applicable mechanic's lien or similar statute against the real property upon which the Project is located. The intent of this Bond shall be to include without limitation in the terms "labor, materials or equipment" that part of water, gas, power, light, heat, oil, gasoline, telephone service or rental equipment used in the Construction Contract, architectural and engineering services required for performance of the work of the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors, and all other items for which a mechanic's lien may be asserted in the jurisdiction where the labor, materials or equipment were furnished.

§ 16.3 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and all changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

§ 16.4 Owner Default. Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under

the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

§ 16.5 Contract Documents. All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor. § 17 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor. § 18 Modifications to this bond are as follows: (Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Payment Bond) (Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)

Vendor Disclosure Statement Information and Instructions

Act 2001-955 requires the disclosure statement to be completed and filed with all proposals, bids, contracts, or grant proposals to the State of Alabama in excess of \$5,000. The disclosure statement is not required for contracts for gas, water, and electric services where no competition exits, or where rates are fixed by law or ordinance. In circumstances where a contract is awarded by competitive bid, the disclosure statement shall be required only from the person receiving the contract and shall be submitted within ten (10) days of the award.

A copy of the disclosure statement shall be filed with the awarding entity and the Department of Examiners of Public Accounts and if it pertains to a state contract, a copy shall be submitted to the Contract Review Permanent Legislative Oversight Committee. The address for the Department of Examiners of Public Accounts is as follows: 50 N. Ripley Street, Room 3201, Montgomery, Alabama 36130-2101. If the disclosure statement is filed with a contract, the awarding entity should include a copy with the contract when it is presented to the Contract Review Permanent Legislative Oversight Committee.

The State of Alabama shall not enter into any contract or appropriate any public funds with any person who refuses to provide information required by Act 2001-955.

Pursuant to Act 2001-955, any person who knowingly provides misleading or incorrect information on the disclosure statement shall be subject to a civil penalty of ten percent (10%) of the amount of the transaction, not to exceed \$10,000.00. Also, the contract or grant shall be voidable by the awarding entity.

Definitions as Provided in Act 2001-955

Family Member of a Public Employee - The spouse or a dependent of the public employee.

Family Member of a Public Official - The spouse, a dependent, an adult child and his or her spouse, a parent, a spouse's parents, a sibling and his or her spouse, of the public official.

Family Relationship - A person has a family relationship with a public official or public employee if the person is a family member of the public official or public employee.

Person - An individual, firm, partnership, association, joint venture, cooperative, or corporation, or any other group or combination acting in concert.

Public Official and Public Employee - These terms shall have the same meanings ascribed to them in Sections 36-25-1(23) and 36-25-1(24), Code of Alabama 1975, (see below) except for the purposes of the disclosure requirements of this act, the terms shall only include persons in a position to influence the awarding of a grant or contract who are affiliated with the awarding entity. Notwithstanding the foregoing, these terms shall also include the Governor, Lieutenant Governor, members of the cabinet of the Governor, and members of the Legislature.

Section 36-25-1(23), Code of Alabama 1975, defines a public employee as any person employed at the state, county or municipal level of government or their instrumentalities, including governmental corporations and authorities, but excluding employees of hospitals or other health care corporations including contract employees of those hospitals or other health care corporations, who is paid in whole or in part from state, county, or municipal funds. For purposes of this chapter, a public employee does not include a person employed on a part-time basis whose employment is limited to providing professional services other than lobbying, the compensation for which constitutes less than 50 percent of the part-time employee's income.

Section 36-25-1(24), Code of Alabama 1975, defines a public official as any person elected to public office, whether or not that person has taken office, by the vote of the people at state, county, or municipal level of government or their instrumentalities, including governmental corporations, and any person appointed to a position at the state, county, or municipal level of government or their instrumentalities, including governmental corporations. For purposes of this chapter, a public official includes the chairs and vice-chairs or the equivalent offices of each state political party as defined in Section 17-16-2, Code of Alabama 1975.

Instructions

Complete all lines as indicated. If an item does not apply, denote N/A (not applicable). If you cannot include required information in the space provided, attach additional sheets as necessary.

The form must be signed, dated, and notarized prior to submission.



State of Alabama

Disclosure Statement

(Required by Act 2001-955)

ENTITY COMPLETING FORM
ADDRESS
CITY, STATE, ZIP TELEPHONE NUMBER ()
STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT THAT WILL RECEIVE GOODS, SERVICES, OR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR GRANT AWARD
ADDRESS
CITY, STATE, ZIP TELEPHONE NUMBER ()
This form is provided with:
Contract Proposal Request for Proposal Invitation to Bid Grant Proposal
Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously performed work or provided goods to any State Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year? Yes No If yes, identify below the State Agency/Department that received the goods or services, the type(s) of goods or services previously provided, and the amount received for the provision of such goods or services.
STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT TYPE OF GOODS/SERVICES AMOUNT RECEIVED
Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously applied and received any grants from any Sta Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year? Yes No If yes, identify the State Agency/Department that awarded the grant, the date such grant was awarded, and the amount of the grant.
STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT DATE GRANT AWARDED AMOUNT OF GRANT
1. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the proposed transactic Identify the State Department/Agency for which the public officials/public employees work. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)
NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL/EMPLOYEE ADDRESS STATE DEPARTMENT/AGENC

NAME OF FAMILY MEMBER	ADDRESS	NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL PUBLIC EMPLOYEE	_/ STATE DEPARTMENT/ AGENCY WHERE EMPLOYED
=	nd/or their family members as the	cribe in detail below the direct financia result of the contract, proposal, reque	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	yee as the result of the contract, p	ned by any public official, public emplo roposal, request for proposal, invitatio	
List below the name(s) and a posal, invitation to bid, or gra	The state of the s	and/or lobbyists utilized to obtain the	contract, proposal, request for pro-
NAME OF PAID CONSULTANT/LO	BBYIST	ADDRESS	
to the best of my knowledg	e. I further understand that a civ	y that all statements on or attached vil penalty of ten percent (10%) of th correct or misleading information.	
Signature		Date	

2. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all family members of public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, or any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the

Act 2001-955 requires the disclosure statement to be completed and filed with all proposals, bids, contracts, or grant proposals to the State of Alabama in excess of \$5,000.



Kay Ivey Governor Bill Poole Director of Finance

STATE OF ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT

Division of Construction Management

P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150 770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444, Montgomery, AL 36104 Telephone: (334) 242-4082 Fax: (334) 242-4182



Mickey Allen
Assistant Finance Director
Real Property Management

Frank Barnes, Director Construction Management

E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding

Instructions for inclusion in project manuals.

Per DCM's May 29, 2012 bulletin *Guidance on Act 2012-491 Amending the Alabama Immigration Law*: "Contractors (including architects and engineers) will ... be required to enroll in the E-Verify program and to provide documentation of enrollment in the E-Verify program with their contracts or agreements."

Upon completing enrollment in the E-Verify program available at https://www.e-verify.gov/employers/enrolling-in-e-verify, an E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) is issued to the enrolled business. The same E-Verify MOU can be repeatedly used until any information in the business's E-Verify user profile is updated, at which time E-Verify updates the printable Company Information section of the MOU, while the original signatory information remains the same. Typically, an E-Verify MOU is 13-18 pages long depending on business type and number of employees.

DCM requires a copy of the entire current E-Verify MOU document including the completed Department of Homeland Security – Verification Division section (with name, signature and date included) to be submitted as an attachment to each Construction Contract original and to each Agreement Between Owner and Architect original.



Alabama Department of Revenue Sales and Use Tax Division

P.O. Box 327710 • Montgomery, AL 36132-7710

Application For

Sales and Use Tax Certificate of Exemption

FOR GOVERNMENT ENTITY PROJECT

This Certificate of Exemption will be limited to purchases which qualify for an exemption of sales and use taxes pursuant to Rule No. 810-6-3-.77

PROJECT INFORMATION: PROJECT NAME			PROJECT OWNER'S FEIN (EXEMPT ENTITY)	
STREET ADDRESS OF PROJECT (CITY AND COUNTY INCLUD	ED) CITY	ZIP	COUNTY	
APPLICANT'S INFORMATION:				
RELATION: (CHOOSE ONE)		-		
Government Entity General	al Contractor	Subcontractor		
APPLICANT'S LEGAL NAME			FEIN	
DBA			CONSUMER'S USE TAX ACCOUNT NUMBER	
MAILING ADDRESS: STREET	CITY	STATE ZIP	COUNTY	
CONTACT PERSON			BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER	
			()	
EMAIL ADDRESS				
CONTRACT SIGN DATE (PROVIDED BY GENERAL CONTRACTOR)		CONTRACT COMPLETION DATE (PROVIDED BY GENERAL CONTRACTOR)		
COTIMATED STADT DATE (FOR ADDITIONAL)		FOUNDATED COMPLETION D	NATE (FOR ARRIVOANT)	
ESTIMATED START DATE (FOR APPLICANT)		ESTIMATED COMPLETION D	ATE (FOR APPLICANT)	
WILL THE APPLICANT HAVE ANY SUBCONTRACTORS ON THI	S JOB?	NAME OF PARTY TO THE CO	DNTRACT	
Yes No If yes, please attach	ı list.			
IOB DESCRIPTION				
WILL ANY POLLUTION CONTROL EXEMPTION BE APPLICABL	E?	ESTIMATED POLLUTION CO	ESTIMATED POLLUTION CONTROL COST	
Yes No		\$		
TOTAL PROJECT BID AMOUNT APPLICANT'S PORTION OF PROJECT)	LABOR COST (APPLICANT'S PORTION C	F PROJECT)	MATERIAL COST (APPLICANT'S PORTION OF PROJECT)	
\$	\$	1 11100201)	\$	
ν	Y			
	REVENUE DEPA	RTMENT USE ONLY		
PENDING DOCUMENTATION / INFORMATION:		_		
☐ GCL ☐ SBL ☐ Cont	ract / NTP / LOI	☐ LOS ☐ Co	ntract Dates / Breakdown of Costs	
Contact Dates:		_ Received Date:		
		Forwarded for Deniel:		

PROJECT NAME	PROJECT OWNER'S FEIN (EXEM	IPT ENTITY)
FORM OF OWNERSHIP:		
☐ Individual ☐ Partnership ☐ Corporation ☐ I	Multi member LLC Single member LLC	Government Entity
If applicant is a corporation, a copy of the certified certifica authority, or articles of incorporation should be attached. If the a copy of the certified articles of organization should be attached.	te of incorporation, amended certificate of incorpore e applicant is a limited liability company or a limited	ration, certificate of
OWNERSHIP INFORMATION:		
Corporations - give name, title, home address, and Social S	ecurity Number of each officer.	
Partnerships – give name, home address, Social Security N	umber or FEIN of each partner.	
Sole Proprietorships – give name, home address, Social Se	curity Number of owner.	
LLC - give name, home address, and Social Security Numb	er or FEIN of each member.	
<u>LLP</u> – give name, home address, and Social Security Numb	er or FEIN of each partner.	
NAME (PLEASE PRINT)	SIGNATURE	
TITLE	DATE	
REVENUE DE	PARTMENT USE ONLY	
PENDING OTHER:		
Government Entity General Contractor	☐ Not on LOS	
Contact Dates:	Received Date:	
	Forwarded for Denial:	
Evaminar's Ramarks		
Examiner's Remarks		

Instructions For Preparation of Form ST: EXC-01 Sales and Use Tax Certificate of Exemption for Government Entity Project

NOTE: Exemption Certificates will be issued as of the contract sign date or the received date of the application. If, upon receipt of the application, the project has already commenced, the certificate will be issued as of the received date of the application. Any purchases made prior to the issuance of a certificate will not be exempt.

*** Please allow 10 to 14 business days for your application to be processed. ***

In order to expedite the processing of your application, please include the following documentation when submitting your application:

Exempt Entity:

- 1. Signed Application
- 2. Copy of Executed/Signed Contract, Letter of Intent, Notice of Award, and/or Notice to Proceed

General Contractor:

- 1. Signed Application
- 2. Copy of Executed/Signed Contract, Letter of Intent, Notice of Award, and/or Notice to Proceed
- 3. List of Subcontractors
- 4. Alabama Board of General Contractor's License
- 5. State/County Business License (usually obtained through county probate office)
- 6. Any other municipal business licenses associated with the project

Subcontractor:

- 1. Signed Application
- 2. Alabama Board of General Contractor's License
- 3. State/County Business License (usually obtained through county probate office)
- 4. Any other municipal business licenses associated with the project
- 5. List of Subcontractors (if any)

General contractors and subcontractors:

- Any additions and/or deletions to the list of subcontractors working on a project must be submitted to the Department within 30 days of occurrence.
- If an extension is needed for a project, please contact the Department of Revenue at the address, number, or email listed below. Extension requests should be submitted no more than 30 days after expiration date.
- Subcontractor's Estimated Start Date should be the date they will begin working on the project and ordering materials instead of the General Contractor's Estimated Start Date for the project.

THERE IS A FILING REQUIREMENT IF YOUR APPLICATION IS APPROVED. The return will be filed through the Consumer's Use Tax account. Please see the following page for detailed instructions and general information regarding the reporting requirements.

The application and required documentation may be mailed, faxed, or emailed to the following:

Fax: (334) 353-7867

Email: STExemptionUnit@revenue.alabama.gov

Mailing Address: ATTN: Contractor's Exemption

Alabama Department of Revenue

Sales & Use Tax Division

Room 4303 PO Box 327710

Montgomery, AL 36132-7710

General Information and Instructions Regarding the Reporting Requirements for Contractors Awarded an Exemption Certificate

A contractor's exemption certificate for a Government Entity project is needed in order to purchase materials tax exempt for the qualified project. Once the exemption certificate has been applied for and awarded, there is a monthly filing requirement to report the purchases that have been made for each exempt project. The Consumer's Use (CNU) tax account is used to report the tax-exempt purchases made with each certificate for each exempt project for each month.

The consumer's use tax return must be filed for each of the months covered by the exemption certificate. (For example, if the certificate's effective date is June 29, 2014 and the expected completion date is October 1, 2014, a consumer's use tax return must be filed for each of the following months: June, July, August, September, and October.) A return MUST be filed each month to report the monthly purchases. Therefore, all active exemption certificates must be included on the monthly report even if the monthly purchases for a specific project was \$0.

If a CNU tax account is not already open under the taxpayer/business name, one will automatically be assigned at the time the exemption certificate is generated. Electronic filing is required through the Department's online filing system, My Alabama Taxes (MAT). A letter containing the online filing information will be mailed to the address on file within a few days after the new CNU tax account has been assigned. This letter will contain all the information needed to create your online filing account in MAT. For questions relating to setting up the account on www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov, please contact Business Registration at 334-242-1584 or the Sales Tax Division at 1-866-576-6531.

Once the MAT account is set up, please log in and file the monthly CNU tax return. There is a table located at the bottom left hand corner labeled "Contractor's Exemption for Government Construction Projects." All three fields in the table are required to be completed: exemption number, project number, and total amount of purchases for that specific project for the month. Additional projects may be added on the additional rows that appear as data is added; the table will allow the addition of more projects.

***Please do not use lines 1 through 9 of the return for reporting exempt project information. Leave these lines blank unless taxable purchases were made outside of the state of Alabama that need to be reported and tax remitted. (Lines 1 through 9 do not have anything to do with the exemption reporting requirements).

When the certificate expires (upon the project's completion) and the CNU tax account is no longer needed, please contact the Business Registration Unit at 334-242-1584 and close the CNU tax account. Please be advised that if there are multiple government entity projects open, the consumer's use tax account should remain open until the last project completion date. For example, if Project EXC00ABCD ends in June of 2014 but Project EXC00EFGH ends January of 2015, the CNU tax account must remain open until the end of January 2015. A return for Project EXC00EFGH must be filed all the way through January 2015.

If the applicant already has a CNU tax account and it is currently set up online, please use this account to report exempt project purchases through www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov using the instructions provided above. The return may then be filed as usual.

***All Consumer's Use Tax returns are due on the 20th of the month following the month in which purchases were made (i.e., the return for the month of June is due July 20th, etc. There are 20 days to file the return before it is deemed late.)

***Any penalty waiver requests may be directed to the Sales and Use Tax Division at 1-866-576-6531. Only one waiver per 18 month period is allowed.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE CHECKLIST:

There is an agenda for the required conferences, and it is intended to be a summary of the requirements of any relevant scope identified in the construction documents needed for this project. Contractor is required to familiarize themselves with the requirements listed below prior to submitting a bid proposal.

- 1. Name and relationship to job of local Owner personnel
- 2. Public officials involved
- 3. Names of architect/engineer personnel involved
- 4. Provide e-mail addresses on Pre-Construction Sign-in sheet
- 5. Construction sets of plans needed and available to the contractor
- 6. Verify alternates accepted and unit prices.
- 7. Provide and review the approved list of subcontractors
- 8. Point of contact for the project.
 - a. Project Manager
 - b. Job Superintendent
- 9. Review approved cost breakdown, Schedule of Values, and CPM Schedule
- 10. Method of approving monthly payment requests
- 11. Time Extensions
 - a. Contractor is required to incorporate average rain days into their schedule. Any additional rain days over the monthly average must be requested in same month or it will not be considered for approval to add to Time.
- 12. Overall phasing of job
- 13. Project limits
- 14. Shop drawings, time to process
- 15. Sales tax savings (Alabama Department of Revenue)
- 16. Project sign and other job signs
- 17. ADEM permit, if more than one acre of land is disturbed.
 - a. Coordinate offsite storm water drainage with the authority having jurisdiction when applicable.
- 18. Inspection Minimum Requirements
- 19. Advance notice for required inspections
 - a. If the project is not ready for the scheduled inspection, the General Contractor shall incur a \$1,500.00 re-inspection fee.
- 20. Pre-Construction Conference: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Major Subs
 - a. Fully-executed construction contract and Notice to Proceed
 - b. Verification of any and all permit fees have been paid by general contractor
 - c. Fire alarm contractor and fire sprinkler contractor certification (from State Fire Marshal)
 - d. ADEM permit has been obtained and/or fees paid
 - e. The General Contractor to perform and furnish all work, labor, services, supervision, materials, equipment, tools, scaffolds, appliances, insurance, taxes, and other things necessary to complete the work in strict accordance with all plans, specifications, and GENERAL CONDITIONS. The Contractor shall be liable for any omissions in contractors bid proposal or any other interpretations made by contractor. All items of Work related to each are to be provided so that no gaps, omissions, or conflicts arise that prevents a complete and functioning result.
 - f. Contractor's duty to coordinate work of separate contractors.

- 21. Pre-Construction Conference for Storm Shelter: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Structural Engineer, Major Subs, Special Inspections Representative
 - a. The completed & signed DCM Form B-15: Owner's Statement of Responsibility for Tornado Storm Shelter must be submitted to all parties at Pre-Construction Conference. Must be kept with Owner's storm shelter records.
 - b. The completed & signed Contractor's Statement of Responsibility for Construction of Tornado Storm Shelter along with required Quality Assurance Plan (QAP) must be submitted to all parties at Pre-Construction Conference.
 - c. The completed and signed Certification of Structural Observations from the Structural Engineer of Record must be attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion
 - d. Storm Shelter Impact-protective systems Listing and labeling: Impact-protective systems shall be listed and labeled.
 - e. Marking: The following function and performance characteristics shall be provided on the label for each impact protective system tested:
 - i. Manufacturer's identification reference or listing number for the assembly.
 - ii. Type of impact-protective system, such as window assembly, door assembly shutter assembly or louver.
 - iii. Hazard: hurricane, tornado, or both.
 - iv. Missile weight and speed.
 - v. Design wind pressure.
 - vi. Edition of ICC 500.
 - vii. Doors and Frame manufacturer must visit the site and certify that the ICC-500 / FEMA doors, louvers, etc. have been installed in accordance and meet the assembly requirements for certification.
- 22. Pre-Roofing Conference: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Roofing Sub, Roofing Manufacturer's Rep
 - a. Review all Factory Mutual and Underwriters Laboratories requirements listed in the specifications and resolve any questions or conflicts that may arise. 2.
 - b. Establish trade-related job schedules, including the installation of roof mounted mechanical equipment.
 - c. Establish roofing schedule and work methods that will prevent roof damage. 4.
 - d. Require that all roof penetrations and walls be in place prior to installing the roof.
 - e. Establish those areas on the job site that will be designated as work and storage areas for roofing operations.
 - f. Establish weather and working temperature conditions to which all parties must agree.
 - g. Establish acceptable methods of protecting the finished roof if any trades must travel across or work on or above any areas of the finished roof.
 - h. Roofing submittals must be approved before the meeting
 - Roofing manufacturer must provide documentation that roof design and roofing materials meet code requirements for wind uplift and impact resistance.
 - j. Copy of sample roof warranty Note: Standard manufacturer's roofing guarantees which contain language regarding the governing of the guarantee by any state other than the State of Alabama, must be amended to exclude such language, and substituting the requirement that the Laws of the State of Alabama shall govern all such guarantees.
 - k. Contractor shall video existing building interior and exterior prior to roofing operations and provide copy to owner.
 - I. General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee and Manufacturer's Roofing Warrantees must be

- m. presented to the Architect at Final Inspection and submitted with Certificate of Substantial Completion
- Above Ceiling Inspections: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, MEP Engineers, Major Subs
 - a. All above-ceiling work is to be complete except for tile or hard ceiling installation
 - b. Space must be conditioned
 - c. Permanent power connected unless otherwise arranged
- 24. Life Safety & Final Inspection: Required Attendees: DCM Inspector, Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers, Major Subs, Local Fire Marshal
 - a. Fire alarm certification
 - b. Kitchen hood fire suppression certification (if in scope of work)
 - c. General contractor's 5-year roofing guarantee
 - d. Manufacturer's warranty
 - e. Sprinkler certifications (if in scope of work)
 - f. Structural observation certification (storm shelter)
 - g. Lighting tests, fire alarm monitoring
 - h. Elevator and boiler inspection certificates from State of Alabama
 - i. Pressure and flush tests for sprinkler and hydrants
 - j. ADA compliance and emergency responder access
 - k. Emergency Responder Radio Coverage
- 25. Year-End Inspection: Required Attendees: DCM Inspector, Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers and/or Major Subs
 - a. Review owner's warranty list
- 26. Other Required Inspections:
 - a. Footings and approval needed prior ot concrete pour
 - b. Vapor Barrier under slab, approval need prior to pour
 - c. Notification of in-wall items for plumbing, electrical, etc., before worj can be covered
- 27. Third-party/special inspections (e.g., structural, storm shelter, roofing, Geotech and special inspections)
- 28. Procedure if bad soil/rock is encountered
- 29. Distribution of inspection reports by Archiect
- 30. Concrete Ready Mix Plan, file delivery tickets, slumps test. Concrete quality expectations of building slabs, sidewalk, etc. The concrete slab must be approved prior to framing.
- 31. Structural engineer to inspect metal/wood roof truss framing
- 32. Record & As-Built Drawings: Contractor maintains a designated set soley for as-built drawings to satisfy closeout document requirements.
- 33. Protection Ooff the Work: The General Contractor shall carefully secure and protect the work and all materials, equipment, or work of Sub-Contractors and others in the vicinity of the work and shall be liable for any loss or damage that results from Contractor's failure to do so.
- 34. Use of site, access, signage
- 35. Contractor personnel conduct: no staff/student interaction, no foul language, no tobacco, drugs, or firearms
- 36. Use of existing toilets
- 37. Coordination of Owner-supplied utilities
- 38. Coordinate outages/work with Owner
- 39. Keep exits clear
- 40. Daily job cleanup, including access/egress paths and waste management

- 41. Safety & Compliance: OSHA compliance, accident reporting
- 42. Alabama Child Labor Law & E-Verify
- 43. Check building location relative to critical property lines/setbacks
- 44. Surveyor to verify foundation alignments
- 45. Verify sanitary outfall before committing to the floor level
- 46. Procedures if bad soil is encountered
- 47. Stockpiling topsoil
- 48. Protecting trees
- 49. Soil Treatment, mix on site in the presence of Job Superintendent, the Architect must observe process
- 50. What is expected of masonry work, mortar additive
 - a. Exposed CMU must be approved prior to pouring cells
 - b. Head joints must be straight and true
- 51. Problems with hollow metal install proper fire labels
- 52. Potential conflict of mechanical and electrical equipment.
 - a. Contractor is required to provide coordination shop drawings of mechanical, electrical, plumbing systems
- 53. Return air plenums (no combustibles)
- 54. Fire damper installation issues
- 55. Kraft-faced insulation is not to be installed exposed.
- 56. Coordinate with local fire authority to assure access to the building for firefighting equipment during construction and before final acceptance. Provide fire extinguishers as required.
- 57. Comply with fire hydrant requirement; coordinate with local Fire Authority or State Fire Marshal.
- 58. Certificate of Substantial Completion/Final Inspection
- 59. Release of retainage 30 days to complete punch list and closeout
- 60. Project Closeout precedes Final Payment
 - a. Warranties
 - b. Operating and Maintenance Manuals
 - c. As-built Drawings
 - d. Other requirements
- 61. Advertisement of Completion:
 - a. Not required for projects under \$100,000
 - b. For \$100,000 or more: contractor must advertise for 3 weeks via:
 - c. Newspaper in project county
 - d. Website maintained by local newspaper or awarding authority
 - e. If no local newspaper or site: post at courthouse for 30 day

OWNER'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY FOR TORNADO STORM SHELTER (HURRICANE SHELTER WHERE APPLICABLE)

Project Name:	
Owner Entity:	
Architectural/Engineering	g Firm:
Contractor Company:	
I	, acknowledge that I am responsible as the Owner, to the
or the State Fire Marshal,	Finance - Division of Construction Management, the State Department of Education, as applicable. I certify that control shall be exercised to maintain compliance with the The procedures for exercising post occupancy control shall be as listed below:
 operation, and m The provision of evaluation of the The provision of evaluation of the systems to assure 	a written statement outlining shelter preparedness, normal and emergency aintenance, prior to the issuance of a certificate of occupancy a written plan to be followed by the owner or the owner's authorized agent for annual storm shelter envelope to assess the integrity of the walls and roof systems. a written plan to be followed by the owner or the owner's authorized agent for annual e storm shelter envelope to assess the integrity of the openings impact-protective that doors, windows, or other protective devices are in compliance with the respective operational and maintenance requirements.
Note the following:	
environmental syShould it become	hall be maintained in an operable condition at all times, all structural, protective, and vistems shall be repaired or replaced when found to be damaged or inoperable. The necessary to replace certified or listed impact-resistant systems, replacements shall listed ICC 500 requirements, and shall have been tested and shall be installed as is construction.
Record Keeping:	
the owner or the owner	of the storm shelter evaluations, changes, or replacements shall be maintained by sauthorized agent. Signed records of evaluations, tests, repairs, replacements or intenance shall be kept on the premises or other approved location.
Signed on this date,	, 20
	Owner Entity Name
Bv	

Printed Name & Title

Signature

DCM (BC) No.	
()	

CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY FOR CONSTRUCTION OF TORNADO STORM SHELTER (HURRICANE SHELTER WHERE APPLICABLE)

Project Name:			
Owner Entity:			
Architectural/Engineering	Firm:		
Contractor Company:			
Division of Construction N of Education as applicable resisting system and any of I acknowledge that I am av	Management, the Alabama (, and the Architect/Engineen ther components listed in the vare of the special requirem	Community College Sy for the construction of e attached Quality As tents contained in the Quality Contained in the Qualit	surance Plan (QAP).)AP.
	e exercised to obtain comple control shall be as listed bel		tion documents. The
Control Procedure	How Reported	Distributed To	Distribution Frequency
(Attach additional pages if	needed)		

Furthermore, the following persons will be responsible for exercising control in accordance with the QAP. Any changes to the persons listed below will be coordinated with the Owner a minimum of 3 calendar days in advance of the change. The Owner shall provide written objections to the changes within 10 calendar days. No response shall be deemed acceptance.

Name of Person	Responsibility for QAP
Signed on this date,	
Contractor Company	
1 3	
By: Signature of Contractor	
Signature of Contractor	
Name and Title:	

<u>f</u> 1a 1

Application and Certificate for Payment

TO OWNER:	PROJ	ECT: New Linc	oln Police Department	APPLICATION NO:	001	Distribution to:
						OWNER:[]
				PERIOD TO:	April 5, 2025	ARCHITECT:[]
				CONTRACT FOR:		CONTRACTOR:[]
FROM	VIA			CONTRACT DATE:	04-05-2025	FIELD:[]
CONTRACTOR:		ITECT:		PROJECT NOS:	24001 / /	OTHER:[]
CONTRACTOR'S APPLICATION FO	R PAYMENT			actor certifies that to the best of the I by this Application for Payment I		
Application is made for payment, as shown below, ir		ontract.		at all amounts have been paid by t		
AIA Document G703 [®] , Continuation Sheet, is attached	ed.		Certificates for Paymen	t were issued and payments receiv		
			shown herein is now du	e.		
1. ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM			0.00			
2. NET CHANGE BY CHANGE ORDERS			0.00 CONTRACTOR:			
3. CONTRACT SUM TO DATE(Line 1 ± 2)			0.00 By:		Date:	
4. TOTAL COMPLETED & STORED TO DATE(Column	G on G703)		0.00 State of:		_	
5. RETAINAGE:			County of:			
a. 0.00% of Completed Work						
$\overline{\text{(Column D + E on G703:}}$ 0.00)=	0.00	Subscribed and sworn to	o before		
b. 0.00% of Stored Material			me this	day of		
(Column F on G703: 0.00)=	0.00	Notary Public:			
Total Retainage (Lines 5a + 5b or Total in Column I	of G703)		0.00 My Commission expire	s:		
			ARCHITECT'S C	ERTIFICATE FOR PAY	MENT	
6. TOTAL EARNED LESS RETAINAGE				Contract Documents, based on on-		ne data comprising this
(Line 4 Less Line 5 Total)			application, the Archite	ct certifies to the Owner that to the	best of the Architect's	knowledge, information
7. LESS PREVIOUS CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT			0.00 Contract Documents or	s progressed as indicated, the quality	ty of the Work is in acc	cordance with the
(Line 6 from prior Certificate)			Contract Documents, an	nd the Contractor is entitled to pay	ment of the AMOUNT	CERTIFIED.
8. CURRENT PAYMENT DUE			0.00 AMOUNT CERTIFIED			0.00
9. BALANCE TO FINISH, INCLUDING RETAINAGE		-		mount certified differs from the an Continuation Sheet that are chang		ll figures on this
(Line 3 less Line 6)		0.00	ARCHITECT:	Continuation sheet that are chang	ea to conjorm with the	amouni certifiea.)
CHANGE ORDER SUMMARY	ADDITIONS	DEDUCTIONS				
Total changes approved in previous months by Owner	0.00		0.00 By:		Date:	
Total approved this Month	0.00			egotiable. The AMOUNT CERTII		
TOTALS	0.00		0.00 herein. Issuance, payme Contractor under this C	ent and acceptance of payment are ontract.	without prejudice to ar	y rights of the Owner or
NET CHANGES by Change Order			0.00			



Continuation Sheet

AIA Document G702*, Application and Certification for Payment, or G732TM, Application and Certificate for Payment, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, containing Contractor's signed certification is attached.

Use Column I on Contracts where variable retainage for line items may apply.

New Lincoln Police Department

APPLICATION NO:

001

APPLICATION DATE:

04-05-2025

PERIOD TO:

April 5, 2025

ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO:

24001

A	В	C	D	Е	F	G		Н	I
			WORK	COMPLETED					
ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION OF WORK	SCHEDULED VALUE	FROM PREVIOUS APPLICATION (D + E)	THIS PERIOD	MATERIALS PRESENTLY STORED (NOT IN D OR E)	TOTAL COMPLETED AND STORED TO DATE (D + E + F)	% (G÷C)	BALANCE TO FINISH (C - G)	RETAINAGE (IF VARIABLE RATE)
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%		0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%		0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00		0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00 0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00% 0.00%	0.00	0.00
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
	GRAND TOTAL	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		0.00%	0.00	0.00
	GRAND IOTAL	J.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	0.00



SAMPLE OF REQUIRED REPORTS AND LOGS

For quality control during construction, the awarded contractor is required to provide a brief weekly report and update, including task completed, future task, and action items. Provide a weekly photographic documentation.

A Timetable Log, RFI Log, and Submittal Log is also required. See attached samples from another project.

	Weekly Status Report
Project:	PROJECT NAME
Date:	11/16/18

Contract	Days	Lost
Days	Worked	Days
38	23	15

Average number of workers on this site this week:

Trades on site this week:

Date	Date	Weather Conditions	High Temp	Precipitation	Worked?
Friday	11/9	Cloudy	62	0.02	No
Saturday	11/10	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Sunday	11/11	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Monday	11/12	Rain	47	1 46	No
Tuesday	11/13	Rain	51	0,	No
Wednesday	11/14	Rain	49	ა.9	No
Thursday	11/15	Rain	45	0.0	No

		Task Completed → s Week
1	Rain prevented progress	
2		
3		
4		
5		

	Next Week's Task
1	Remove rock/debris - the ite
2	Continue retaining wall con Juction
3	Accept and stockpile backfill material after rock is removed from the site
4	
5	

	Action Items
	Retaining wall is under construction and must be completed so that the initial erosion control
1	plan can be put into place.
2	Rock and debris found in the excavation soil. Rycon pricing removal.
3	DOT permit is required for the jack and bore under US 78. Rycon to submit questionnaire.

<u>Photos</u>





					PROJECT NAME	IME		Fri 11/16/18	6/18
□	Task Name		Duration	Start	Finish				
					Nov 11, '18 SMTWT	Nov 18, '18 Nov 25, '18 S M T W T F S S M T W T	Dec 2, '18 Dec 9, '18 Dec 16, '18 Dec 16,	Dec 23, '18 Dec 30, '18 FIS SM TWT	S S
_	PROJECT NAME		291 days	Mon 7/23/18	Thu 5/9/19]
2	Site Work		217 days	Mon 7/23/18	Sun 2/24/19		- -	- 1 -	- 1 -
12	Retaining Wall		31 days M	31 days Mon 10/29/18 Wed 11/28/18	ed 11/28/18				
13	Install Storm Sewer Pipe & Structures	* Structures	5 days	5 days Thu 11/29/18	Mon 12/3/18	0% Instal	Install Storm Sewer Pipe & Structures	tructures	
4	Install Sanitary Sewer Piping	Вu	8 days	Tue 12/4/18 Tue 12/11/18	ue 12/11/18	%0	Install Sani	Install Sanitary Sewer Piping	
15	Install /oil separator/reclaim tanks	n tanks	3 days	Tue 12/11/18	12/11/18 Thu 12/13/18		0%	Install /oil separator/reclaim tanks	
16	Install domestic water service	ilce	5 days	Fri 12/14/18	12/14/18 Tue 12/18/18		%0	Install domestic water service	
18	Excavate and pour canopy footings	/ footings	4 days	Thu 12/13/18 S	Sun 12/16/18		%0	Excavate and pour canopy footings	
20	Excavate & form dumpster footings	rfootings	2 days	Fri 12/14/18	Sat 12/15/18		°0	Excavate & form dumpster footings	
21	Inspect & pour dumpster footings	ootings	1 day Mon		12/17/18 Mon 12/17/18		%0	Inspect & pour dumpster footings	
22	Form & pour transformer pad	ad	1 day Tue	ue 12/18/18	12/18/18 Tue 12/18/18		%0	Form & pour transformer pad	
23	Form and pour perimeter & Building curb	& Building curb	7 days M	7 days Mon 12/17/18 Sun 12/23/18	un 12/23/18		%- 0	Form and pour perimeter & B	- ഇ –
24	Bakfill curb		2 days S	Sun 12/23/18 Mon 12/24/18	on 12/24/18			0% Bakfill curb	
25	Fine Grade building sidewalks	alks	2 days	Tue 12/25/18 Wed 12/7	ed 12/2			0% Fine Grade building s	ng si
56	Form and pour building sid	Form and pour building sidewalks, site concret, aprons, & dumpster	18 days	Fri 12/28/18	Mrn 14/19	 >		%0 	
33	Building Work		198 days Wed	ed 10/24/18	Thu 49		1		T
35	Install batter boards & excavate footings	avate footings	4 days Mon	on 12 //18	12/13/1		0% Install	Install batter boards & excavate footings	
36	inspect footings		1 day	Fri '14/18	Fri '/18		%0	inspect footings	
37	Pourfootings		2 de	Sat 12/15	Sun / /16/18		%0 	Pour footings	
38	Install plumbing underground	pu	days Mo	ر ۲//۱۵	. n 12/21/18		%- 	Install plumbing underground	ъ
39	Inspect and backfill plumbing	ing	9	Sat 12/ /18 S	Sun 12/23/18			0% Inspect and backfill plumbing	nbing
40	Install underground electrical	cal	5 days	/17/18	Fri 12/21/18		%0	Install underground electrical	
4	Inspect electrical		1 day	Sat 12/22/18	Sat 12/22/18			0% Inspect electrical	
45	Install Trench Drains		8 days Mon		12/17/18 Mon 12/24/18		%0	Install Trench Drains	
43	Install foundation block		5 days Mon	on 12/17/18	Fri 12/21/18		%- 	Install foundation block	
44	Install above grade CMU		28 days	Sat 12/22/18	Fri 1/18/19			~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	-
		Task	External T	al Tasks		Duration-only	External Tasks	•	
Project	t: PROJECT NAME	Split		External Milestone	*	Manual Summary Rollup 🔷	External Milestone		
Date: I	Daté: Fri 11/16/18	Milestone	Inactiv	Inactive Milestone		Manual Summary	Progress		
		Project Summary	Manus	inactive Summary Manual Task	□□□□	Finish-only	Deadine	⇒	
					Page 1				

PROJECT NAME - Submittal Log

- - -						
Submittal Package #	Submittal Package Name	Date Received	Date Date Submitted Returned		Closed? Notes	Notes
02600-01-0	Site Structures & Piped Utilities	8/12/2018	8/13/2018	8/24/2018	Υ	Approved as Noted
03000-01-0	Concrete Submittals					
03210-01-0	Reinforcing Steel	9/25/2018	9/27/2018	10/16/2018	Υ	Approved as Noted
04200-01-0	Masonry Submittals					
05210-01-0	Structural Steel Shop Drawings	11/8/2018	11/9/2018			
06170-01-0	Wood Trusses	11/7/2018	11/7/2018			
07240-01-0	EIFS Submittals					
07500-01-0	Roofing Submittals					
07610-01-0	Metal Canopy Shop Drawings					
08100-01-0	Doors, Frames, and Hardware					
08400-01-0	Storefront & Glass					
09250-01-0	Drywall Submittals					
09310-01-0	Ceramic Tile Submittals			/		
09510-01-0	Acoustical Ceiling Tile Submittals					
09650-01-0	Flooring Submittals		>			
09000-01-0	Paint & Wallcovering					
15400-01-0	Plumbing Fixtures & Equipment					
15500-01-0	HVAC Equipment					
16000-01-0	Light Fixtures					
16000-02-0	Electrical Equipment					

ALL SUBMITTALS MUST BE LABELED PER WHAT SPEC SECTION IT FALLS UNDER

PROJECT NAME - RFI Log

Brief Description		Date Received	Date Submitted	Date Returned	Closed? Notes	Notes
Underground drain		8/12/2018	8/12/2018	8/24/2018	\	Will be a potential change order
clg and hvac ht. conflict in rm.	lict in rm. 101	9/26/2018	9/27/2018	9/27/2018 10/16/2018	Z	Will need to verify on site
			2	?		
			>			



Change Order

PROJECT: (Name and address) New Lincoln Police Department	CONTRACT INFORMA Contract For: Date: 04-05-2025	TION:	CHANGE ORDER I Change Order Nur Date:	
OWNER: (Name and address)	ARCHITECT: (Name a	nd address)	CONTRACTOR:	Jame and address)
THE CONTRACT IS CHANGED AS FOLLOWS: (Insert a detailed description of the change at adjustments attributable to executed Construction)			exhibits. Also includ	de agreed upon
The original Guaranteed Maximum Price was The net change by previously authorized Cha The Guaranteed Maximum Price prior to this The Guaranteed Maximum Price will be uncl The new Guaranteed Maximum Price including	nge Orders Change Order was nanged by this Change		\$ \$ \$ \$ \$	0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
The Contract Time will be unchanged by The new date of Substantial Completion will	(be) days.		
NOTE: This Change Order does not include Contract Time, that have been authorized upon by both the Owner and Contractor, Directive.	by Construction Ch	ange Directive until	the cost and time	have been agreed
NOT VALID UNTIL SIGNED BY THE ARCH	TECT, CONTRACTOR	R AND OWNER.		
ARCHITECT (Signature)		CONTRACTOR (Signatu	re) OWN	IER (Signature)
(Printed name, title, and license number if	required) (1	Printed name and title,	(Prii	nted name and title)
Date)ate		2

GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S	5
ROOFING GUARANTEE	

DCM (BC) Project No	

Project Name & Address	Project Owner Entity(ies) Name(s) & Address(es)

General Contractor's Company Name, Address, & Telephone Number	EFFECTIVE DATES OF GUARANTEE
	Date of Acceptance:
	Date of Expiration:

- 1. The General Contractor does hereby certify that the roofing work included in this contract was installed in strict accordance with all requirements of the plans and specifications and in accordance with approved roofing manufacturers recommendations.
- 2. The General Contractor does hereby guarantee the roofing and associated work including but not limited to all flashing and counter flashing both composition and metal, roof decking and/or sheathing; all materials used as a roof substrate or insulation over which roof is applied; promenade decks or any other work on the surface of the roof; metal work; gravel stops and roof expansion joints to be absolutely watertight and free from all leaks, due to faulty or defective materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the date of substantial completion of the project. This guarantee does not include liability for damage to interior contents of building due to roof leaks, nor does it extend to any deficiency which was caused by the failure of work which the general contractor did not damage or did not accomplish or was not charged to accomplish.
- 3. Subject to the terms and conditions listed below, the General Contractor also guarantees that during the Guarantee Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to, or replacements of said work, in accordance with the roofing manufacturers standards as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and/or materials which may develop in the work including, but not limited to: blisters, delamination, exposed felts, ridges, wrinkles, splits, warped insulation and/or loose flashings, etc. in a manner pursuant to the total anticipated life of the roofing system and the best standards applicable to the particular roof type in value and in accordance with construction documents as are necessary to maintain said work in satisfactory condition, and further, to respond on or within three (3) calendar days upon proper notification or leaks or defects by the Owner or Architect.

- A. Specifically excluded from this Guarantee are damages to the work, other parts of the building and building contents caused by: (1) lightning, windstorm, hailstorm and other unusual phenomena of the elements; and (2) fire. When the work has been damaged by any of the foregoing causes, the Guarantee shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by the General Contractor, and until the cost and expense thereof has been paid by the Owner or by the responsible party so designated.
- B. During the Guarantee Period, if the Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than the General Contractor, including cutting, patching and maintenance in connection with penetrations, and positioning of anything on the roof, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said alterations. If the owner engages the General Contractor to perform said alterations, the Guarantee shall not become null and void, unless the General Contractor, prior to proceeding with the said work, shall have notified the Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a termination of this Guarantee.
- C. Future building additions will not void this guarantee, except for that portion of the future addition that might affect the work under this contract at the point of connection of the roof areas, and any damage caused by such addition. If this contract is for roofing of an addition to an existing building, then this guarantee covers the work involved at the point of connection with the existing roof.
- D. During the Guarantee period, if the original use of the roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use of service more severe than originally specified, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said change.
- E. The Owner shall promptly notify the General Contractor of observed, known or suspected leaks, defects or deterioration, and shall afford reasonable opportunity for the General Contractor to inspect the work, and to examine the evidence of such leaks, defects or deterioration.

ΙN	WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has	been	duly	executed	this	day
of	,					
	General Contractor's Authorized Signature					
	Typed Name and Title					



Certificate of Substantial Completion

PROJECT: (name and address) New Lincoln Police Department	CONTRACT INFORMATION: Contract For:	CERTIFICATE INFORMATION: Certificate Number:				
	Date: 04-05-2025	Date:				
OWNER: (name and address)	ARCHITECT: (name and address)	CONTRACTOR: (name and address)				
The Work identified below has been reviewed and found, to the Architect's best knowledge, information, and belief, to be substantially complete. Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use. The date of Substantial Completion of the Project or portion designated below is the date established by this Certificate. (Identify the Work, or portion thereof, that is substantially complete.)						
ARCHITECT (Signature)	(Printed name, title, and license required)	number if Date Of Substantial Completion				
WARRANTIES The date of Substantial Completion of the Project or portion designated above is also the date of commencement of applicable warranties required by the Contract Documents, except as stated below: (Identify warranties that do not commence on the date of Substantial Completion, if any, and indicate their date of commencement.)						
WORK TO BE COMPLETED OR CORRECTED A list of items to be completed or corrected is attached hereto, or transmitted as agreed upon by the parties, and identified as follows: (Identify the list of Work to be completed or corrected.)						
The failure to include any items on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Unless otherwise agreed to in writing, the date of commencement of warranties for items on the attached list will be the date of issuance of the final Certificate of Payment or the date of final payment, whichever occurs first. The Contractor will complete or correct the Work on the list of items attached hereto within () days from the above date of Substantial Completion.						
Cost estimate of Work to be completed or corrected: \$						
The responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work, insurance, and other items identified below shall be as follows: (Note: Owner's and Contractor's legal and insurance counsel should review insurance requirements and coverage.)						
The Owner and Contractor hereby accept the responsibilities assigned to them in this Certificate of Substantial Completion:						
CONTRACTOR (Signature)	(Printed name and title)	Date				
OWNER (Signature)	(Printed name and title)					

DCM ((BC) No.	
-------	----------	--

CERTIFICATION OF STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

for

Project Name:		
Owner Entity:		
Contractor Company:		
Design Professional observations of the construction of the structural system a documents for the referenced project. The visual observation conducted by me at all significant construction stages and structural system. To the best of my knowledge, all structured below:	for conformar ations of the s d at the compl	nce to the approved construction tructural systems were personally letion of the construction of the
Signed and sealed on this date,	_, 20	Design Professional's Seal:
Architectural / Engineering Firm		
Signature of Architect or Structural Engineer of Record		
Printed Name		

SAMPLE FORM OF ADVERTISEMENT FOR COMPLETION

LEGAL NOTICE

In accordance with Chapter 1, Title 39, Code of Alabama,	1975, as amended, notice is hereby given
that	
(Contractor Comp	pany Name)
Contractor, has completed the Contract for [(Cor [(Equipment) [(Improvement) of	nstruction) [(Renovation) [(Alteration) (Name of Project):
at	
(Insert location data in for the State of Alabama and the (County) (City) of Owner(s), and have made request for final settlemen any claim for labor, materials, or otherwise in connenotify	nt of said Contract. All persons having
(4.1)	
(Architect / Eng	zineer)
	(Contractor)
	(Business Address)

NOTE: This notice must be run once a week for four successive weeks for projects exceeding \$50,000.00. For projects of \$50,000.00 or less, run one time only. A copy of the publisher's affidavit of publication (including a copy of the advertisement) shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Design Professional



Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims

	OJECT:(Name and address) w Lincoln Police Department	ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER: 24001 CONTRACT FOR:	OWNER:[] ARCHITECT:[] CONTRACTOR:[]
ТО	OWNER:(Name and address)	CONTRACT DATED: 04-05-2025	SURETY:[] OTHER:[]
_	ATE OF: UNTY OF:		
oth kno per	erwise been satisfied for all materials and equown indebtedness and claims against the Cont	listed below, payment has been made in full and ipment furnished, for all work, labor, and service ractor for damages arising in any manner in contract which the Owner or Owner's property might in	ces performed, and for all mection with the
EXC	CEPTIONS:		
HE 1.	PPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED RETO: Consent of Surety to Final Payment. Whenever Surety is involved, Consent of Surety is required. AIA Document G707, Consent of Surety, may be used for this purpose icate Attachment [] Yes [] No	CONTRACTOR:(Name and address)	
	e following supporting documents should attached hereto if required by the Owner:	CONTRACTOR'S Authorized Represent	tative(Signature)
1.	Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final	(Printed name and title)	
	payment.	Date	
2.	Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.	Subscribed and sworn to before me on	this date:
3.	Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens (AIA Document G706A).	Notary Public: My Commission Expires:	

Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens

PROJECT: (Name and address)	ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER:	OWNER: []
New Lincoln Police Department	24001 CONTRACT FOR:	ARCHITECT: []
TO OWNED. AL. 1. 11	CONTRACT DATED: 04-05-2025	CONTRACTOR: []
TO OWNER: (Name and address)		SURETY:[]
		OTHER: []

STATE OF: **COUNTY OF:**

The undersigned hereby certifies that to the best of the undersigned's knowledge, information and belief, except as listed below, the Releases or Waivers of Lien attached hereto include the Contractor, all Subcontractors, all suppliers of materials and equipment, and all performers of Work, labor or services who have or may have liens or encumbrances or the right to assert liens or encumbrances against any property of the Owner arising in any manner out of the performance of the Contract referenced above.

EXCEPTIONS:

SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED HERETO:

- 1. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final payment.
- 2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.

CONTRACTOR: (Name and address)

CONTRACTOR'S Authorized Representative (Signature)

Date

Subscribed and sworn to before me on this date:

Notary Public: My Commission Expires:

(Printed name and title)

Consent of Surety to Final Payment

PROJECT: (Name and address)	ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NU	MBER:	OWNER: []
New Lincoln Police Department	24001 CONTRACT FOR:		ARCHITECT: []
New Emedia Fonce Bepartment	COMMACT FOR.		CONTRACTOR: []
	CONTRACT DATED:		SURETY: []
	04-05-2025		OTHER: []
TO OWNER: (Name and address)			- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
In accordance with the provisions of the Co (Insert name and address of Surety)	ntract between the Owner and th	e Contractor as indicated above, the	
(msert name and dadress of surely)			
on bond of			, SURETY,
(Insert name and address of Contractor)			
			, CONTRACTOR,
hereby approves of the final payment to the	Contractor, and agrees that final	payment to the Contractor shall	, contractor,
not relieve the Surety of any of its obligatio (Insert name and address of Owner)	ns to		
(insert name and dadress of Owner)			
as set forth in said Surety's bond.			, OWNER,
·			
IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Surety has a (Insert in writing the month followed by the			
(insert in writing the month followed by the	numeric date and year.)		
		SURETY (Signature)	
Attest: (Seal):		(Printed name and title)	
(Scar).		(Frintea name and title)	

New City of Lincoln Police Department

150 Magnolia Street

Lincoln, Alabama

Geotechnical Engineering Report

April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042

Prepared for:

Bill Whittaker P.C. Architecture 236 Martin Street Anniston, Alabama 36206





2147 Riverchase Office Road Birmingham, Alabama 35244 P (205) 942-1289 Terracon.com

April 25, 2024

Bill Whittaker P.C. Architecture 236 Martin Street Anniston, Alabama 36206

Attn: Mr. Stephen Concepcion-King

P: 337-257-2421

E: stephen@billwarch.com

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Report

New City of Lincoln Police Department

150 Magnolia Street Lincoln, Alabama

Terracon Project No. E1245042

Dear Stephen:

We have completed the scope of Geotechnical Engineering services for the above referenced project in general accordance with Terracon Proposal No. PE1245042 dated March 11, 2024. This report presents the findings of the subsurface exploration and provides geotechnical recommendations concerning earthwork and the design and construction of foundations, floor slabs, pavements, and other site development elements for the proposed project.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this project. If you have any questions concerning this report or if we may be of further service, please contact us.

Sincerely,

Terracon

Pronchabili HE

Samuel E. Brancheau, P.E.

Matt McCullough, P.E.

Meth 5 Mille

Project Engineer Geotechnical Department Manager

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Table of Contents

Introduction	1
Project Description	1
Site Conditions	3
Geotechnical Characterization	3
Site Geology	4
Seismic Site Class	5
Geotechnical Overview	5
Earthwork	7
Site Preparation	7
Existing Fill	8
Excavation	9
Soil Stabilization in Pavement Areas	9
Fill Material Types	10
Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements	11
Utility Trench Backfill	11
Grading and Drainage	12
Earthwork Construction Considerations	12
Construction Observation and Testing	13
Shallow Foundations	
Design Parameters – Compressive Loads	
Design Parameters – Overturning and Uplift Loads	
Foundation Construction Considerations	15
Floor Slabs	16
Floor Slab Design Parameters	
Floor Slab Construction Considerations	17
Pavements	18
General Pavement Comments	18
Pavement Design Parameters	18
Pavement Section Thicknesses	18
Pavement Drainage	20
Pavement Maintenance	20
General Comments	21

Figures

GeoModel

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Attachments

Exploration and Testing Procedures Site Location and Exploration Plans Exploration and Laboratory Results Supporting Information

Note: This report was originally delivered in a web-based format. **Blue Bold** text in the report indicates a referenced section heading. The PDF version also includes hyperlinks which direct the reader to that section and clicking on the **perform** logo will bring you back to this page. For more interactive features, please view your project online at **client.terracon.com**.

Refer to each individual Attachment for a listing of contents.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Introduction

This report presents the results of our subsurface exploration and Geotechnical Engineering services performed for the proposed New Lincoln Police Department building to be located 150 Magnolia Street in Lincoln, Alabama. An access road will be constructed for the project which will route to the site from Alabama Highway 78. The purpose of these services was to provide information and geotechnical engineering recommendations relative to:

- Subsurface soil conditions
- Groundwater conditions
- Seismic site classification per IBC
- Site preparation and earthwork
- Foundation design and construction
- Floor slab design and construction
- Pavement design and construction

The geotechnical engineering Scope of Services for this project included the advancement of 15 test borings, engineering analysis, and preparation of this report.

Drawings showing the site and boring locations are shown on the **Site Location** and **Exploration Plan**, respectively. The results of the laboratory testing performed on soil samples obtained from the site during our field exploration are included on the boring logs in the **Exploration Results** section.

Project Description

Our initial understanding of the project was provided in our proposal and was discussed during project planning. A period of collaboration has transpired since the project was initiated, and our final understanding of the project conditions is as follows:

Item	Description
Information Provided	The preliminary site plans were provided by Mr. Stephen Concepcion-King of Bill Whittaker P.C. Architecture on March 5, 2024. 65% plans were provided by Mr. King on April 8, 2024.
Project Description	We understand the development will consist of a new, approximately 17,000 SF, single-story police department building and a future courtroom addition. Paved parking and

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Item	Description		
	driveways are planned on the north and east sides of the building. A new, approximately 700-ft entrance driveway is planned from US Highway 78.		
Proposed Structure	A single-story police department building, with a storm shelter and attached courtroom		
Building Construction	Steel frame and/or load bearing masonry with brick veneer and concrete slab-on-grade		
Finished Floor Elevation	FFE = 518 feet		
Maximum Loads	 Columns: 150 kips (assumed) Walls: 4-6 kips per linear foot (klf) (assumed) Floor Slabs: 100 pounds per square foot (psf) (assumed) 		
Grading/Slopes	Based on the provided grading plan and topographic survey, less than about 1 to 2 feet of fill will be required to grade the site in the building pad. In the adjacent parking lot areas, less than 1 foot of cut/fill is anticipated, and in the access road, the finished grades appear to match existing grades, with maybe 1 to 2 feet of cut/fill in isolated locations.		
Below-Grade Structures	None		
Free-Standing Retaining Walls	None apparent on the provided plans		
Pavements	Paved driveway and parking will be constructed. We assume both flexible (asphalt) and rigid (PCC) pavement sections should be considered. Assumed traffic information is as follows: Autos/light pickup trucks: 100 vehicles per day Tractor-trailer and Trash collection vehicles: 2 vehicles per week		

Terracon should be notified if any of the above information is inconsistent with the planned construction, especially the structural loading and grading assumptions, as modifications to our recommendations may be necessary.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Site Conditions

The following description of site conditions is derived from our site visit in association with the field exploration and our review of publicly available geologic and topographic maps.

Item	Description		
Parcel Information	The site is generally located behind the Lincoln City Hall building at 150 Magnolia Street in Lincoln, Alabama. The approximate GPS coordinates of the proposed building are: 33.6057° N, 86.1169° W (See Site Location)		
Existing Improvements	Mostly none. The open grass field is undeveloped and appears to be occasionally used by the fire department. The planned development does not encroach onto adjacent developments.		
Current Ground Cover	Mostly grass. Mature trees and underbrush are present on the east to southeast portions of the site for the planned access driveway off Highway 78.		
Existing Topography	According to the furnished topographic survey, the grade within the building pad and adjacent parking lots is relatively level, at about elevation 519 feet at the north end to elevation 515 feet at the south end. Along the access road, from US Highway 78, the site slopes up from elevation 518 feet to 527 feet from south to north, then down to 516 feet to the west as the access road approaches the building.		

Geotechnical Characterization

We have developed a general characterization of the subsurface conditions based upon our review of the subsurface exploration, laboratory data, geologic setting and our understanding of the project. This characterization, termed GeoModel, forms the basis of our geotechnical calculations and evaluation of the site. Conditions observed at each exploration point are indicated on the individual logs. The individual logs can be found in the **Exploration Results** and the GeoModel can be found in the **Figures** attachment of this report.

As part of our analyses, we identified the following model layers within the subsurface profile. For a more detailed view of the model layer depths at each boring location, refer to the GeoModel.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description
1	Topsoil	Dark brown, 3 to 5 inches thick
2	Existing Fill	Typically dark red-brown, sandy lean clay with trace topsoil
3	Native Clays	Variably colored but typically red-orange-brown, stiff to very stiff clays (CL, CH), variable sand content and trace chert gravel
4	Native Sands	Variably colored, medium dense to dense clayey sand (SC) with variable fine and chert gravel

The borings were advanced in the dry using a hollow stem auger drilling technique that allows short term groundwater observations to be made while drilling. Groundwater was not observed within any of the borings during drilling or for the relatively short duration the boreholes remained open after completion. Groundwater conditions may be different at the time of construction. Groundwater conditions may change because of seasonal variations in rainfall, runoff, and other conditions not apparent at the time of drilling. Long-term groundwater monitoring was outside the scope of services for this project.

Site Geology

Published geologic maps indicate the site is underlain by the Knox Group Undifferentiated geologic formation. The Knox Group consists of light gray to light brown locally sandy dolomite, dolomitic limestone, and limestone, and is characterized by abundant light-colored chert.

The Knox Group is a carbonate-based rock geology and is therefore soluble in slightly acidic groundwater. Weathering is typified by a chemical solutioning process that progresses along joints, fractures and bedding planes in the bedrock. Internal erosion can also occur around chert cobbles and boulders within the soil mass. This process often results in a highly irregular rock profile that contains deep weathered slots filled with soft soils. Voids or caves may also be present in the bedrock. The weathering of the bedrock and subsequent collapse or erosion of the overburden into these openings results in what is referred to as karst topography. Any construction in karst topography is accompanied by some degree of risk for future internal soil erosion and ground subsidence that could affect the stability of the proposed structure.

Although no evidence of sinkhole activity was observed during our subsurface exploration on the proposed site, it should be noted that this study does not preclude the possibility of future sinkhole occurrence within the area. Even an extensive drilling exploration program could not rule out the possibility of future sinkhole formation at the

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



site. The owner must accept that there is some degree of risk in developing over carbonate rock geology.

Seismic Site Class

The seismic design requirements for buildings and other structures are based on Seismic Design Category. Site Classification is required to determine the Seismic Design Category for a structure. The Site Classification is based on the upper 100 feet of the site profile defined by a weighted average value of either shear wave velocity, standard penetration resistance, or undrained shear strength in accordance with Section 20.4 of ASCE 7 and the International Building Code (IBC). Based on the soil properties observed at the site and as described on the exploration logs and results, our professional opinion is that a **Seismic Site Classification of D** be considered for the project. Subsurface explorations at this site were extended to a maximum depth of 20 feet. The site properties below the boring depth to 100 feet were estimated based on our experience and knowledge of geologic conditions of the general area. Additional deeper borings or geophysical testing may be performed to confirm the conditions below the current boring depth.

Geotechnical Overview

The site can be suitably prepared for the proposed construction based upon geotechnical conditions encountered in the test borings, provided that the recommendations provided in this report are implemented in the design and construction phases of this project.

Topsoil was encountered in most borings, ranging in thickness from 3 to 5 inches. Because several of the borings were along the access road required brush clearing for access, the upper layer of topsoil may have been disturbed. Therefore, thicker topsoil deposits may be present between and away from borings logs, particularly along the access road, than the thicknesses reported on the boring logs.

Underlying the topsoil, all borings except P-1, and P-4 through P-6, encountered previously-placed fill (mostly sandy lean clay) extending to depths of about 3 feet to 6 feet below existing grades. We have no records to indicate the degree of control, however, the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) N-values recorded within the fill at our boring locations typically ranged from 2 to 5 blows per foot (bpf), indicating the majority of the fill was likely not placed in a controlled manner (i.e., the fill was likely not placed in thin lifts and evenly compacted). In boring B-7, the existing fill from about 3 to 6 feet had a slightly higher consistency. Most of the fill in the upper 3 feet was observed to content trace amounts of topsoil.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Underlying the fill (or topsoil in other borings), stiff to very stiff native clays (CL, CH) with variable sand and chert gravel, and medium dense to dense native sands (SC) with variable fines and gravel content, extended to the termination depth of each boring.

Based on the low consistencies observed in the existing fill, we recommend the fill be completely removed within the building pad, which should consist of the upper 3 to 6 feet of soil. The general undercutting of existing fill soils should extend a minimum of 5 feet outside the building pad limits.

After stripping of the site and perform cuts necessary to reach final subgrade, followed by the recommended undercutting as described above, the exposed subgrade should be compacted and then proof-rolled under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer as further discussed in the **Earthwork** section of this report. Any soft, loose, or otherwise unstable soils excessively deflecting during the proof-roll should be undercut and replaced with structural fill or stabilized as discussed in the **Earthwork** section of this report. Near surface lower consistency fill in planned pavement areas, such as encountered in borings P-2, P-3, and P-7, may require some undercutting, or other stabilization methods in lieu of undercutting as discussed in the **Soil Stabilization in Pavement Areas** section.

Based on the conditions encountered and estimated load-settlement relationships, the proposed structures can be supported on conventional continuous or spread footing foundations bearing on new engineered fill, after proper site preparations.

Support of pavements on or above existing fill materials is discussed in this report. However, even with the recommended construction procedures, there is inherent risk for the owner that compressible fill or unsuitable material, within or buried by the fill, will not be discovered. This risk of unforeseen conditions cannot be eliminated without complete removal of the existing fill, but can be reduced by following the recommendations contained in this report. The owner must be willing to accept the risk associated with pavements constructed over the fill material, or the fill should be completely removed.

High plasticity fat clay soils will be exposed at the finished subgrade bearing elevation along the access road in the vicinity of boring P-5, and possibly elsewhere between access road borings during site grading. High plasticity soils typically "expand" or "swell" as their moisture contents increase. However, these soils may also "contract" or "shrink" as their moisture contents decrease. Based on the laboratory tested liquid limits, and percent fines measured in the tested fat clay samples, there appears to be a low risk of significant shrink/swell, therefore pavements may be founded directly on these soils without the need for a low plasticity engineered fill buffer. Additional high plasticity clays that may be encountered during grading should be evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



The onsite soils that are free of organics are considered suitable for re-use as structural fill. Some moisture conditioning (i.e., drying) of the existing fill and native soils should therefore be anticipated for onsite soils to be reused. Furthermore, soils failing the proofroll test may require additional reworking and drying to be stabilized in place, especially if earthwork is performed during the winter months.

Even after proper site preparation, the near surface soils could become unstable with typical earthwork and construction traffic, especially after precipitation events. The effective drainage should be completed early in the construction sequence and maintained after construction to avoid potential issues. If possible, the grading should be performed during the warmer and drier times of the year. If grading is performed during the winter months, an increased risk for possible undercutting and replacement of unstable subgrade will persist. Additional site preparation recommendations, including subgrade improvement and fill placement, are provided in the **Earthwork** section.

The recommendations contained in this report are based upon the results of field and laboratory testing (presented in the **Exploration Results**), engineering analyses, and our current understanding of the proposed project. The **General Comments** section provides an understanding of the report limitations.

Earthwork

Earthwork is anticipated to include clearing and grubbing, excavations, subgrade stabilization, and engineered fill placement. The following sections provide recommendations for use in the preparation of specifications for the work. Recommendations include critical quality criteria, as necessary, to render the site in the state considered in our geotechnical engineering evaluation for foundations, floor slabs, and pavements.

Site Preparation

Prior to grading operations, undercutting, and fill placement, the existing topsoil, and root mats should be removed. Complete stripping of the topsoil and other deleterious materials should be performed in the proposed building, parking/driveway areas, trash receptacle, and base of fill slopes.

Any existing utilities present that will not serve the proposed development should be removed. Soft or loose soils are commonly encountered within existing utility trenches. If existing utilities are to be removed or rerouted from the site, all soft or loose soil should be removed, and the trenches should be properly backfilled with new structural fill.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



After stripping the site, undercutting of existing fill within the building pad, and making the necessary cuts to finish subgrade, but prior to fill placement, the exposed subgrade should be densified using a heavy vibratory roller having a maximum static weight of 12,000 lbs. and capable of exerting a minimum impact energy of 20,000 lbs.

After densification/compaction as described above, the subgrade should be proofrolled with an adequately loaded vehicle such as a fully-loaded tandem-axle dump truck. The proofrolling should be performed under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer or representative. Areas excessively deflecting under the proofroll should be delineated and subsequently addressed by the Geotechnical Engineer. Such areas should either be removed, further densified in place, or stabilized by other methods discussed in the following sections, depending on site and weather conditions. Excessively wet or dry material should either be removed or moisture conditioned and recompacted. Compacted structural fill soils should then be placed to the proposed design grade and the moisture content and compaction of subgrade soils should be maintained until foundation or pavement construction.

Based upon the subsurface conditions determined from the geotechnical exploration, subgrade soils exposed during construction are anticipated to be relatively workable if proper surface water and groundwater management is performed; however, the workability of the subgrade may be affected by precipitation, repetitive construction traffic or other factors. If unworkable conditions develop, workability may be improved by scarifying and drying.

Some moisture conditioning (i.e., drying) should be anticipated for onsite soils to be reused. Furthermore, soils failing the proofroll test may require additional reworking and drying to be stabilized in place, especially if earthwork is performed during the winter months.

Existing Fill

As noted in **Geotechnical Characterization**, the borings encountered previously placed fill. The SPT N-values recorded within the fill at our boring locations indicate the fill was likely not placed in a controlled manner (i.e., not placed in lifts and compacted). Therefore, the existing fill soils encountered within the building pad do not appear suitable for support of foundations, floor slabs, or new engineered fill, and complete removal of the fill soils is recommended to a depth of up to 6 feet below existing grade.

After the existing fill soils are undercut within the building pad, the entire subgrade areas should be proofrolled with heavy, rubber tire construction equipment, to aid in delineating further areas of soft or otherwise unsuitable soil. Additional areas of soft or otherwise unsuitable material should be undercut and replaced with new structural fill.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



In pavement areas, the existing fill soils failing the proof roll may be undercut, or stabilized in place as described in the **Soil Stabilization in Pavement Areas** section.

Excavation

We anticipate that excavations for the proposed construction can be accomplished with conventional earthmoving equipment. The bottom of excavations should be thoroughly cleaned of loose soils and disturbed materials prior to backfill placement and/or construction.

Soil Stabilization in Pavement Areas

While the native subgrade within planned pavement areas is generally anticipated to be stable after the initial exposure and compaction, the existing fill soils may fail the initial proof roll. In addition, unstable subgrades may develop in areas subjected to repetitive construction traffic or if earthwork is performed during the wetter and cooler periods of the year. In lieu of undercutting and replacement, methods of subgrade improvement, as described below, could include scarification, moisture conditioning and recompaction, and removal of unstable materials and replacement with granular fill with geosynthetics. The appropriate method of improvement, if required, would be dependent on factors such as schedule, weather, the size of area to be stabilized, and the nature of the instability. More detailed recommendations can be provided during construction as the need for subgrade stabilization occurs. Performing site grading operations during warm seasons and dry periods would help reduce the amount of subgrade stabilization required.

If the exposed subgrade is unstable during proofrolling operations, it could be stabilized in lieu of undercutting using one of the methods outlined below.

- Scarification and Recompaction It may be feasible to scarify, dry, and recompact the exposed soils. The success of this procedure would depend primarily upon favorable weather and sufficient time to dry the soils. Stable subgrades likely would not be achievable if the thickness of the unstable soil is greater than about 1 foot, if the unstable soil is at or near groundwater levels, or if construction is performed during a period of wet or cool weather when drying is difficult.
- Crushed Stone The use of crushed stone or crushed gravel is a common procedure to improve subgrade stability. Typical undercut depths would be expected to range from about 12 to 18 inches below finished subgrade elevation. The use of high modulus geotextiles (i.e., engineering fabric or geogrid) could also be considered after underground work such as utility construction is completed. Prior to placing the fabric or geogrid, we recommend that all below grade construction, such as utility line installation, be completed to avoid

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



damaging the fabric or geogrid. Equipment should not be operated above the fabric or geogrid until one full lift of crushed stone fill is placed above it. The maximum particle size of granular material placed over geotextile fabric or geogrid should not exceed 1-1/2 inches.

Further evaluation of the need and recommendations for subgrade stabilization can be provided during construction as the geotechnical conditions are exposed.

Fill Material Types

Fill required to achieve design grade should be classified as structural fill. Structural fill is material used below, or within 10 feet of structures, pavements or constructed slopes.

Reuse of On-Site Soil: Excavated on-site soil may be selectively reused as fill. Material property requirements for on-site soil for use as structural fill are noted in the table below:

Property	Structural Fill
Composition	Free of deleterious material
Maximum particle size	4 inches
Fines content	Not limited
Plasticity	Liquid Limit less than 55 Plasticity index less than 30
GeoModel Layer Expected to be Suitable ^{1,2,3}	2, 3, and 4

- 1. Based on subsurface exploration.
- 2. Onsite soils not meeting the requirements above may be used at elevations 3 feet or greater below the planned finish subgrade
- 3. Some moisture conditioning (i.e., drying) may be necessary

Imported Fill Materials: Imported fill materials should meet the following material property requirements. Regardless of its source, compacted fill should consist of approved materials that are free of organic matter and debris. Frozen material should not be used, and fill should not be placed on a frozen subgrade.

Soil Type ¹	USCS Classification	Acceptable Parameters (for Structural Fill)
Low Plasticity Cohesive	CL, SC, SM, ML	Liquid Limit less than 55 Plasticity index less than 30

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Soil Type ¹	USCS Classification	Acceptable Parameters (for Structural Fill)
Granular	GW, GP, GC, SW, SP, SC	Less than 50% passing No. 200 sieve

1. Structural fill should consist of approved materials free of organic matter and debris. Frozen material should not be used, and fill should not be placed on a frozen subgrade. A sample of each material type should be submitted to the Geotechnical Engineer for evaluation prior to use on this site. Additional geotechnical consultation should be provided prior to use of uniformly graded gravel on the site.

Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements

Structural fill should meet the following compaction requirements.

Item	Structural Fill
Maximum Lift Thickness	8 inches or less in loose thickness when heavy, self-propelled compaction equipment is used 4 to 6 inches in loose thickness when hand-guided equipment (i.e. jumping jack or plate compactor) is used
Minimum Compaction Requirements ¹	98% of max.
Water Content Range ¹	Low plasticity cohesive: -2% to $+2\%$ of optimum Granular: -3% to $+3\%$ of optimum

1. Maximum density and optimum water content as determined by the standard Proctor test (ASTM D 698).

Utility Trench Backfill

Any soft or unsuitable materials encountered at the bottom of utility trench excavations should be removed and replaced with structural fill or bedding material in accordance with public works specifications for the utility be supported. This recommendation is particularly applicable to utility work requiring grade control and/or in areas where subsequent grade raising could cause settlement in the subgrade supporting the utility. Trench excavation should not be conducted below a downward 1:1 projection from existing foundations without engineering review of shoring requirements and geotechnical observation during construction.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



On-site low plasticity materials are considered suitable for backfill of utility and pipe trenches, provided the material is free of organic matter and deleterious substances. However, material used as trench backfill should comply with the pipe manufacturer or governing municipality's requirements.

Trench backfill should be mechanically placed and compacted as discussed earlier in this report. Compaction of initial lifts should be accomplished with hand-operated tampers or other lightweight compactors. Where trenches are placed beneath slabs, footings, or pavements, the backfill should satisfy the gradation requirements of engineered fill discussed in this report. Flooding or jetting for placement and compaction of backfill is not recommended.

Grading and Drainage

All grades must provide effective drainage away from the building and paved areas during and after construction and should be maintained throughout the life of the structure. Water retained next to the building can result in soil movements greater than those discussed in this report. Greater movements can result in unacceptable differential floor slab and/or foundation movements, cracked slabs and walls, and roof leaks. In areas where hardscapes and/or paving do not abut against the structure, the roof should have gutters/drains with downspouts that discharge onto splash blocks at a distance of at least 10 feet from the building.

Exposed ground should be sloped and maintained at a minimum 5% away from the building for at least 10 feet beyond the perimeter of the building. Locally, flatter grades may be necessary to transition ADA access requirements for flatwork. After building construction and landscaping have been completed, final grades should be verified to document effective drainage has been achieved. Grades around the structure should also be periodically inspected and adjusted, as necessary, as part of the structure's maintenance program. Where paving or flatwork abuts the structure, a maintenance program should be established to effectively seal and maintain joints and prevent surface water infiltration.

Earthwork Construction Considerations

Shallow excavations for the proposed structure are anticipated to be accomplished with conventional construction equipment. Upon completion of filling and grading, care should be taken to maintain the subgrade water content prior to construction of gradesupported improvements such as floor slabs and pavements. Construction traffic over the completed subgrades should be avoided. The site should also be graded to prevent ponding of surface water on the prepared subgrades or in excavations. Water collecting over or adjacent to construction areas should be removed. If the subgrade freezes, desiccates, saturates, or is disturbed, the affected material should be removed, or the

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



materials should be scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted prior to floor slab construction.

As a minimum, excavations should be performed in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR, Part 1926, Subpart P, "Excavations" and its appendices, and in accordance with any applicable local and/or state regulations.

Construction site safety is the sole responsibility of the contractor who controls the means, methods, and sequencing of construction operations. Under no circumstances shall the information provided herein be interpreted to mean Terracon is assuming responsibility for construction site safety or the contractor's activities; such responsibility shall neither be implied nor inferred.

Construction Observation and Testing

The earthwork efforts should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer (or others under their direction). Observation should include documentation of adequate removal of surficial materials (vegetation, topsoil, foundations/slabs, and pavements), evaluation and remediation of existing fill materials, as well as proofrolling and mitigation of unsuitable areas delineated by the proofroll.

Each lift of compacted fill should be tested, evaluated, and reworked, as necessary, as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer prior to placement of additional lifts. Each lift of fill should be tested for density and water content at a frequency of at least one test for every 2,500 square feet of compacted fill in the building areas and 5,000 square feet in pavement areas. Where not specified by local ordinance, one density and water content test should be performed for every 50 linear feet of compacted utility trench backfill and a minimum of one test performed for every 12 vertical inches of compacted backfill.

In areas of foundation excavations, the bearing subgrade should be evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer. If unanticipated conditions are observed, the Geotechnical Engineer should prescribe mitigation options.

In addition to the documentation of the essential parameters necessary for construction, the continuation of the Geotechnical Engineer into the construction phase of the project provides the continuity to maintain the Geotechnical Engineer's evaluation of subsurface conditions, including assessing variations and associated design changes.

Shallow Foundations

If the site has been prepared in accordance with the requirements noted in **Earthwork**, the following design parameters are applicable for shallow foundations.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Design Parameters – Compressive Loads

Item	Description
Maximum Net Allowable Bearing Pressure 1, 2	2,500 psf - foundations bearing upon new structural fill
Required Bearing Stratum ³	GeoModel Layer 3, 4, or new structural fill
Minimum Foundation Dimensions	Per IBC 1809.7
Ultimate Passive Resistance ⁴ (equivalent fluid pressures)	330 pcf (cohesive backfill) 460 pcf (crushed stone)
Sliding Resistance ⁵	0.30 ultimate coefficient of friction – onsite soil or structural fill 0.35 ultimate coefficient of friction - granular material
Minimum Embedment below Finished Grade ⁶	18 inches
Estimated Total Settlement from Structural Loads ²	Less than about 1 inch
Estimated Differential Settlement 2,7	About 1/2 of total settlement

- 1. The maximum net allowable bearing pressure is the pressure in excess of the minimum surrounding overburden pressure at the footing base elevation. Values assume that exterior grades are no steeper than 20% within 10 feet of structure.
- 2. Values provided are for maximum loads noted in **Project Description**. Additional geotechnical consultation will be necessary if higher loads are anticipated.
- 3. Unsuitable or soft soils should be overexcavated and replaced per the recommendations presented in **Earthwork**.
- 4. Use of passive earth pressures require the sides of the excavation for the spread footing foundation to be nearly vertical and the concrete placed neat against these vertical faces or that the footing forms be removed and compacted structural fill be placed against the vertical footing face. Assumes no hydrostatic pressure. Apply a factor of safety of at least 1.5 when designing for lateral force resistance.
- 5. Can be used to compute sliding resistance where foundations are placed on suitable soil/materials. Frictional resistance for granular materials is dependent on the bearing pressure which may vary due to load combinations.
- 6. Embedment necessary to minimize the effects of frost and/or seasonal water content variations. For sloping ground, maintain depth below the lowest adjacent exterior grade within 5 horizontal feet of the structure.
- 7. Differential settlements are noted for equivalent-loaded foundations and bearing elevation as measured over a span of 50 feet.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Design Parameters - Overturning and Uplift Loads

Uplift resistance of spread footings can be developed from the effective weight of the footing and the overlying soils with consideration to the IBC basic load combinations.

Item	Description
Soil Moist Unit Weight	120 pcf
Soil Effective Unit Weight ¹	60 pcf
Soil weight included in uplift resistance	Soil included within the prism extending up from the top perimeter of the footing at an angle of 20 degrees from vertical to ground surface

1. Effective (or buoyant) unit weight should be used for soil above the foundation level and below a water level. The high groundwater level should be used in uplift design as applicable.

Foundation Construction Considerations

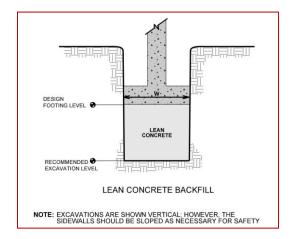
As noted in **Earthwork**, the footing excavations should be evaluated under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer. The base of all foundation excavations should be free of water and loose soil, prior to placing concrete. Concrete should be placed soon after excavating to reduce bearing soil disturbance. Care should be taken to prevent wetting or drying of the bearing materials during construction. Excessively wet or dry material or any loose/disturbed material in the bottom of the footing excavations should be removed/reconditioned before foundation concrete is placed.

Sensitive soils exposed at the surface of footing excavations may require surficial compaction with hand-held dynamic compaction equipment prior to placing structural fill, steel, and/or concrete. Should surficial compaction not be adequate, construction of a working surface consisting of either crushed stone or a lean concrete mud mat may be required prior to the placement of reinforcing steel and construction of foundations.

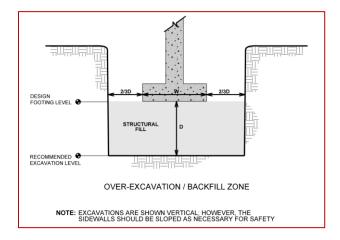
If unsuitable bearing soils are observed at the base of the planned footing excavation, the excavation should be extended deeper to suitable soils, and the footings could bear directly on these soils at the lower level or on lean concrete backfill placed in the excavations. The lean concrete replacement zone is illustrated on the sketch below.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042





Overexcavation for structural fill placement below footings should be conducted as shown below. The overexcavation should be backfilled up to the footing base elevation, with structural fill placed, as recommended in the **Earthwork** section.



Floor Slabs

Design parameters for floor slabs assume the requirements for **Earthwork** have been followed. Specific attention should be given to positive drainage away from the structure and positive drainage of the aggregate base beneath the floor slab.

Depending upon the site and weather conditions at the time of construction, unsuitable, weak, and/or loose soils may be observed at the floor slab subgrade level. These soils should be densified in place or undercut and replaced with structural fill.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Floor Slab Design Parameters

Item	Description
Floor Slab Support ¹	Minimum 4 inches base course meeting material specifications of ACI 302 Subgrade compacted to recommendations in Earthwork
Estimated Modulus of Subgrade Reaction ²	100 pounds per square inch per inch (psi/in) for point loads

- 1. Floor slabs should be structurally independent of building footings or walls to reduce the possibility of floor slab cracking caused by differential movements between the slab and foundation.
- 2. Modulus of subgrade reaction is an estimated value based upon our experience with the subgrade condition, the requirements noted in **Earthwork**, and the floor slab support as noted in this table. It is provided for point loads. For large area loads the modulus of subgrade reaction would be lower.

The use of a vapor retarder should be considered beneath concrete slabs on grade covered with wood, tile, carpet, or other moisture sensitive or impervious coverings, when the project includes humidity-controlled areas, or when the slab will support equipment sensitive to moisture. When conditions warrant the use of a vapor retarder, the slab designer should refer to ACI 302 and/or ACI 360 for procedures and cautions regarding the use and placement of a vapor retarder.

Saw-cut contraction joints should be placed in the slab to help control the location and extent of cracking. For additional recommendations, refer to the ACI Design Manual. Joints or cracks should be sealed with a waterproof, non-extruding compressible compound specifically recommended for heavy duty concrete pavement and wet environments.

Where floor slabs are tied to perimeter walls or turn-down slabs to meet structural or other construction objectives, our experience indicates differential movement between the walls and slabs will likely be observed in adjacent slab expansion joints or floor slab cracks beyond the length of the structural dowels. The Structural Engineer should account for potential differential settlement through use of sufficient control joints, appropriate reinforcing or other means.

Floor Slab Construction Considerations

Finished subgrade, within and for at least 10 feet beyond the floor slab, should be protected from traffic, rutting, or other disturbance and maintained in a relatively moist

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



condition until floor slabs are constructed. If the subgrade should become damaged or desiccated prior to construction of floor slabs, the affected material should be removed, and structural fill should be added to replace the resulting excavation. Final conditioning of the finished subgrade should be performed immediately prior to placement of the floor slab support course.

The Geotechnical Engineer should observe the condition of the floor slab subgrades immediately prior to placement of the floor slab support course, reinforcing steel, and concrete. Attention should be paid to high traffic areas that were rutted and disturbed earlier, and to areas where backfilled trenches are located.

Pavements

General Pavement Comments

Pavement designs are provided for the traffic conditions and pavement life conditions as noted in **Project Description** and in the following sections of this report. A critical aspect of pavement performance is site preparation. Pavement designs noted in this section must be applied to the site which has been prepared as recommended in the **Earthwork** section.

Pavement Design Parameters

We assume that the parking stalls and driveways may experience 100 cars and light pickup trucks per day. Additional vehicles may include 2 tractor-trailer delivery trucks and trash collection vehicles per week. The design is to be based on a 20-year design life. We have provided pavement thickness design for the parking stalls and drive lanes based upon our expectation of the quality of the subgrade as prescribed by the **Site Preparation** conditions as outlined in **Earthwork**, a subgrade maintained in a dry condition for the life of the project, and our experience with similar facilities. The subgrade in fill areas should be compacted to at least 98% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density.

A modulus of rupture of 580 psi was used in design for the concrete (based on correlations with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,000 psi).

Pavement Section Thicknesses

The following table provides our opinion of minimum thickness for AC sections:



Asphaltic Concrete Design

Layer	Thickness (inches)	
Layer	Light Duty ¹	Heavy Duty ¹
AC Wearing Surface ^{2, 3}	1.0	1.0
AC Binder ²	2.0	2.5
Aggregate Base ²	6.0	8.0

- 1. See Project Description for more specifics regarding traffic assumptions.
- 2. All materials should meet the current Alabama Department of Transportation (ALDOT) Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.
 - Asphaltic Surface ALDOT 424A Superpave Bituminous Concrete
 Wearing Surface Layer, ½ inch maximum aggregate size mix
 - Asphaltic Base ALDOT 424B Superpave Bituminous Concrete Upper Binder Layer, ¾ inch maximum aggregate size mix
 - Aggregate Base ALDOT 825B Dense Graded Aggregate Base, compacted to 100% of the modified Proctor
- 3. A minimum 1.0-inch surface course should be used on ACC pavements.

The following table provides our estimated minimum thickness of PCC pavements.

Portland Cement Concrete Design

	Thickness (inches)	
Layer	Light Duty ¹	Heavy Duty ¹ And Dumpster Pad
PCC ²	5.0	6.0
Aggregate Base	4.0	4.0

- 1. See Project Description for more specifics regarding traffic classifications.
- 2. All materials should meet Section 450 of the Alabama Department of Transportation (ALDOT) Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

Areas for parking of heavy vehicles, concentrated turn areas, and start/stop maneuvers could require thicker pavement sections. Edge restraints (i.e. concrete curbs or aggregate shoulders) should be planned along curves and areas of maneuvering vehicles.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Although not required for structural support, a minimum 4-inch thick base course layer is recommended to help reduce potential for slab curl, shrinkage cracking, and subgrade pumping through joints. Proper joint spacing will also be required to prevent excessive slab curling and shrinkage cracking. Joints should be sealed to prevent entry of foreign material and doweled where necessary for load transfer. PCC pavement details for joint spacing, joint reinforcement, and joint sealing should be prepared in accordance with ACI 330 and ACI 325.

Where practical, we recommend early-entry cutting of crack-control joints in PCC pavements. Cutting of the concrete in its "green" state typically reduces the potential for micro-cracking of the pavements prior to the crack control joints being formed, compared to cutting the joints after the concrete has fully set. Micro-cracking of pavements may lead to crack formation in locations other than the sawed joints, and/or reduction of fatigue life of the pavement.

Openings in pavements, such as decorative landscaped areas, are sources for water infiltration into surrounding pavement systems. Water can collect in the islands and migrate into the surrounding subgrade soils thereby degrading support of the pavement. Islands with raised concrete curbs, irrigated foliage, and low permeability near-surface soils are particular areas of concern. To reduce the risk of excess water migrating into the surrounding subgrade, the curb and gutter could be placed directly on the cohesive soil subgrade rather than on the unbound granular base course.

Pavement Drainage

Pavements should be sloped to provide rapid drainage of surface water. Water allowed to pond on or adjacent to the pavements could saturate the subgrade and contribute to premature pavement deterioration. In addition, the pavement subgrade should be graded to provide positive drainage within the granular base section.

Pavement Maintenance

The pavement sections represent minimum recommended thicknesses and, as such, periodic upkeep should be anticipated. Preventive maintenance should be planned and provided for through an on-going pavement management program. Maintenance activities are intended to slow the rate of pavement deterioration and to preserve the pavement investment. Pavement care consists of both localized (e.g., crack and joint sealing and patching) and global maintenance (e.g., surface sealing). Additional engineering consultation is recommended to determine the type and extent of a cost-effective program. Even with periodic maintenance, some movements and related cracking may still occur, and repairs may be required.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Pavement performance is affected by its surroundings. In addition to providing preventive maintenance, the civil engineer should consider the following recommendations in the design and layout of pavements:

- Final grade adjacent to paved areas should slope down from the edges at a minimum 2%.
- Subgrade and pavement surfaces should have a minimum 2% slope to promote proper surface drainage, unless flatter slopes are required for ADA compliance.
- Install joint sealant and seal cracks immediately.
- Seal all landscaped areas in or adjacent to pavements to reduce moisture migration to subgrade soils.
- Place compacted, low permeability backfill against the exterior side of curb and gutter.
- Place curb, gutter and/or sidewalk directly on cohesive subgrade soils rather than on unbound granular base course materials.

General Comments

Our analysis and opinions are based upon our understanding of the project, the geotechnical conditions in the area, and the data obtained from our site exploration. Variations will occur between exploration point locations or due to the modifying effects of construction or weather. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident until during or after construction. Terracon should be retained as the Geotechnical Engineer, where noted in this report, to provide observation and testing services during pertinent construction phases. If variations appear, we can provide further evaluation and supplemental recommendations. If variations are noted in the absence of our observation and testing services on-site, we should be immediately notified so that we can provide evaluation and supplemental recommendations.

Our Scope of Services does not include either specifically or by implication any environmental or biological (e.g., mold, fungi, bacteria) assessment of the site or identification or prevention of pollutants, hazardous materials or conditions. If the owner is concerned about the potential for such contamination or pollution, other studies should be undertaken.

Our services and any correspondence are intended for the sole benefit and exclusive use of our client for specific application to the project discussed and are accomplished in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices with no third-party beneficiaries intended. Any third-party access to services or correspondence is solely for information purposes to support the services provided by Terracon to our client. Reliance upon the services and any work product is limited to our client and is not intended for third parties. Any use or reliance of the provided information by third

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



parties is done solely at their own risk. No warranties, either express or implied, are intended or made.

Site characteristics as provided are for design purposes and not to estimate excavation cost. Any use of our report in that regard is done at the sole risk of the excavating cost estimator as there may be variations on the site that are not apparent in the data that could significantly effect excavation cost. Any parties charged with estimating excavation costs should seek their own site characterization for specific purposes to obtain the specific level of detail necessary for costing. Site safety and cost estimating including excavation support and dewatering requirements/design are the responsibility of others. Construction and site development have the potential to affect adjacent properties. Such impacts can include damages due to vibration, modification of groundwater/surface water flow during construction, foundation movement due to undermining or subsidence from excavation, as well as noise or air quality concerns. Evaluation of these items on nearby properties are commonly associated with contractor means and methods and are not addressed in this report. The owner and contractor should consider a preconstruction/precondition survey of surrounding development. If changes in the nature, design, or location of the project are planned, our conclusions and recommendations shall not be considered valid unless we review the changes and either verify or modify our conclusions in writing.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



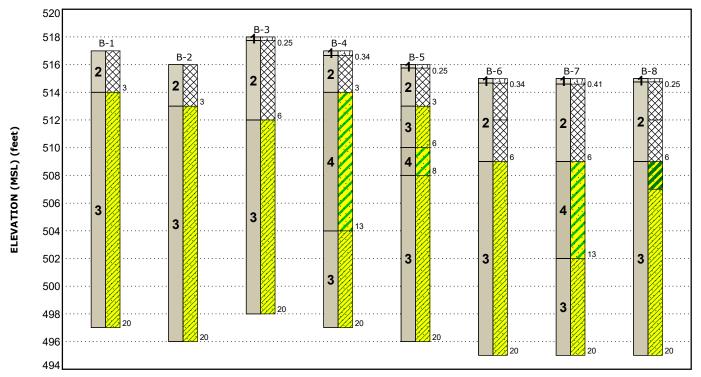
Figures

Contents:

GeoModel (2 sheets)



GeoModel



This is not a cross section. This is intended to display the Geotechnical Model only. See individual logs for more detailed conditions.

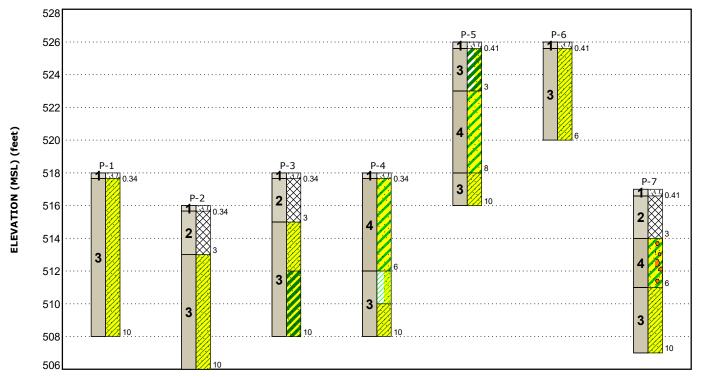
Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description	Legend
1	Topsoil	Dark brown, 3 to 5 inches thick	Sandy Lean Clay
2	Existing FIII	Typically dark red-brown, sandy lean clay with trace topsoil	Topsoil Clayey Sand Sandy Fat Clay
3	Native Clays	Variably colored but typically red-orange-brown, stiff to very stiff clays (CL, CH), variable sand content and trace chert gravel	
4	Native Sands	Variably colored, medium dense to dense clayey sand (SC), with variable fines and chert gravel	

NOTES:

Layering shown on this figure has been developed by the geotechnical engineer for purposes of modeling the subsurface conditions as required for the subsequent geotechnical engineering for this project. Numbers adjacent to soil column indicate depth below ground surface.



GeoModel



This is not a cross section. This is intended to display the Geotechnical Model only. See individual logs for more detailed conditions.

Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description	Leg	gend
1	Topsoil	Dark brown, 3 to 5 inches thick	Topsoil	Sandy Lean Clay
2	Existing FIII	Typically dark red-brown, sandy lean clay with trace topsoil		Sandy Fat Clay Lean Clay with Sand
3	Native Clays	Variably colored but typically red-orange-brown, stiff to	Fat Clay with Sand	
4	Native Sands	Variably colored, medium dense to dense clayey sand (SC), with variable fines and chert gravel		

NOTES:

Layering shown on this figure has been developed by the geotechnical engineer for purposes of modeling the subsurface conditions as required for the subsequent geotechnical engineering for this project. Numbers adjacent to soil column indicate depth below ground surface.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Attachments

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Exploration and Testing Procedures

Field Exploration

Number of Borings	Approximate Boring Depth (feet)	Planned Location
8	20	Building area
7	6 to 10	Parking and access drive

Boring Layout and Elevations: Terracon personnel provided the boring layout using handheld GPS equipment (estimated horizontal accuracy of about ± 10 feet) and referencing existing site features. If a more precise boring layout and elevations are desired, we recommend borings be surveyed.

Subsurface Exploration Procedures: We advanced the borings with an ATV-mounted rotary drill rig using continuous flight augers (solid stem and/or hollow stem, as necessary, depending on soil conditions). Four samples were obtained in the upper 10 feet of each boring and at intervals of 5 feet thereafter. In the split-barrel sampling procedure, a standard 2-inch outer diameter split-barrel sampling spoon was driven into the ground by a 140-pound automatic hammer falling a distance of 30 inches. The number of blows required to advance the sampling spoon the last 12 inches of a normal 18-inch penetration is recorded as the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) resistance value. The SPT resistance values, also referred to as N-values, are indicated on the boring logs at the test depths. We observed and recorded groundwater levels during drilling and sampling. For safety purposes, all borings were backfilled with auger cuttings after their completion.

We also observed the boreholes while drilling and at the completion of drilling for the presence of groundwater. Groundwater was not observed at these times in the boreholes.

The sampling depths, penetration distances, and other sampling information was recorded on the field boring logs. The samples were placed in appropriate containers and taken to our soil laboratory for testing and classification by a Geotechnical Engineer. Our exploration team prepared field boring logs as part of the drilling operations. These field logs included visual classifications of the materials observed during drilling and our interpretation of the subsurface conditions between samples. Final boring logs were prepared from the field logs. The final boring logs represent the Geotechnical Engineer's interpretation of the field logs and include modifications based on observations and tests of the samples in our laboratory.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Laboratory Testing

The project engineer reviewed the field data and assigned laboratory tests. The laboratory testing program included the following types of tests:

- Moisture Content
- Atterberg Limits
- Percent Passing 200 Sieve

The laboratory testing program often included examination of soil samples by an engineer. Based on the results of our field and laboratory programs, we described and classified the soil samples in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Site Location and Exploration Plans

Contents:

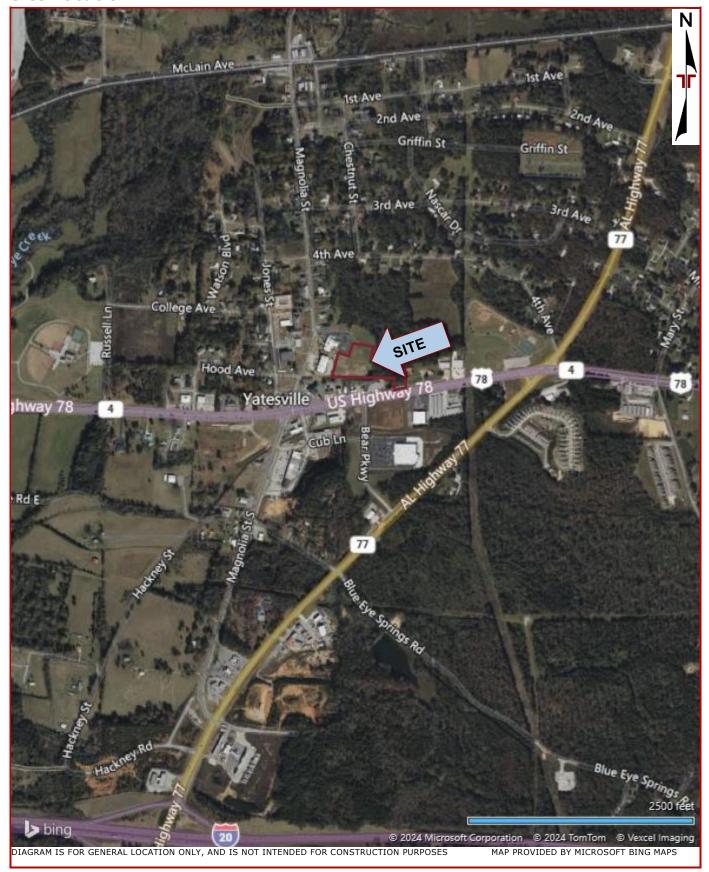
Site Location Exploration Plan

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



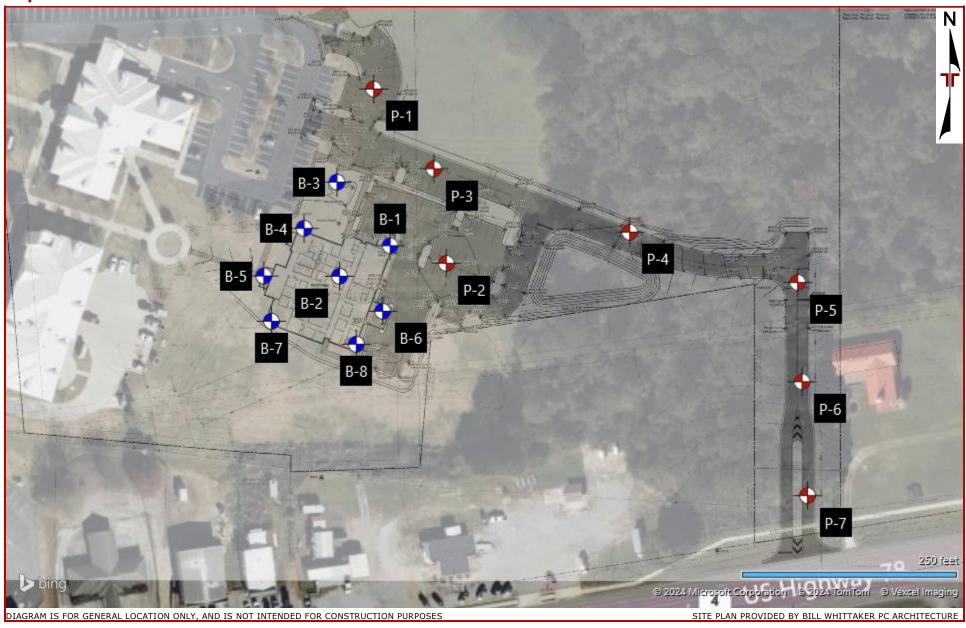
Site Location



New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Exploration Plan



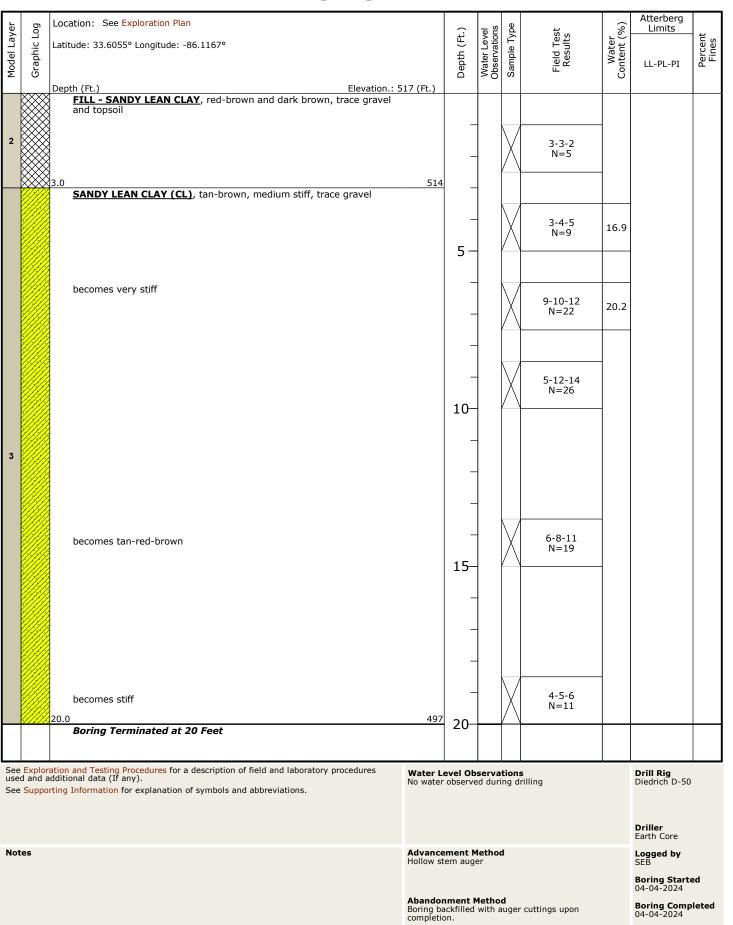
Exploration and Laboratory Results

Contents:

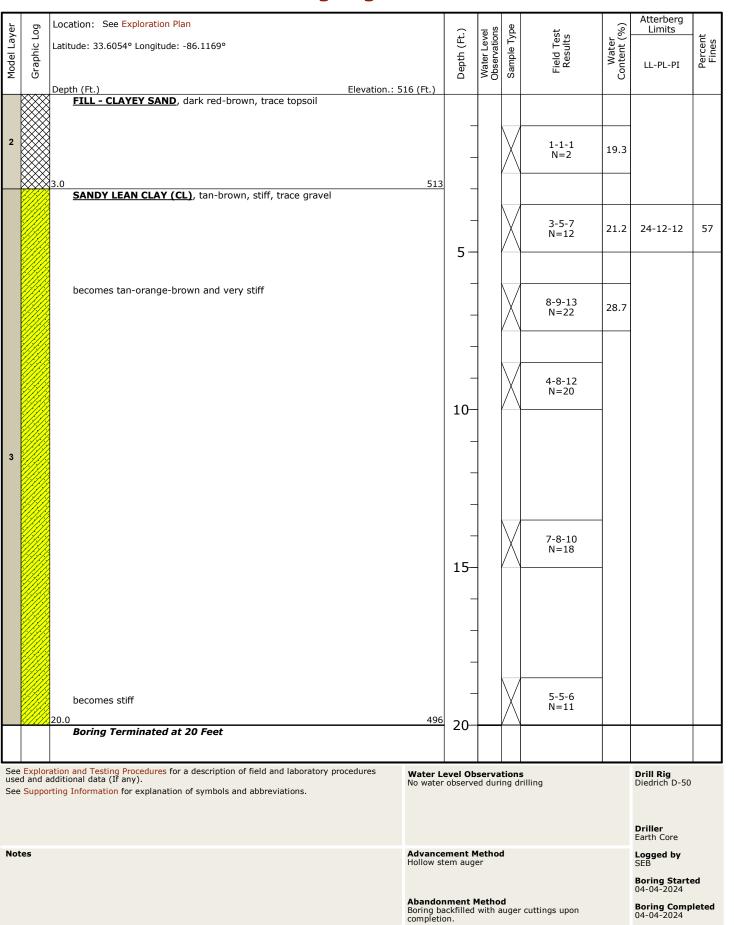
Boring Logs (B-1 through B-8, P-1 through P-7)

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

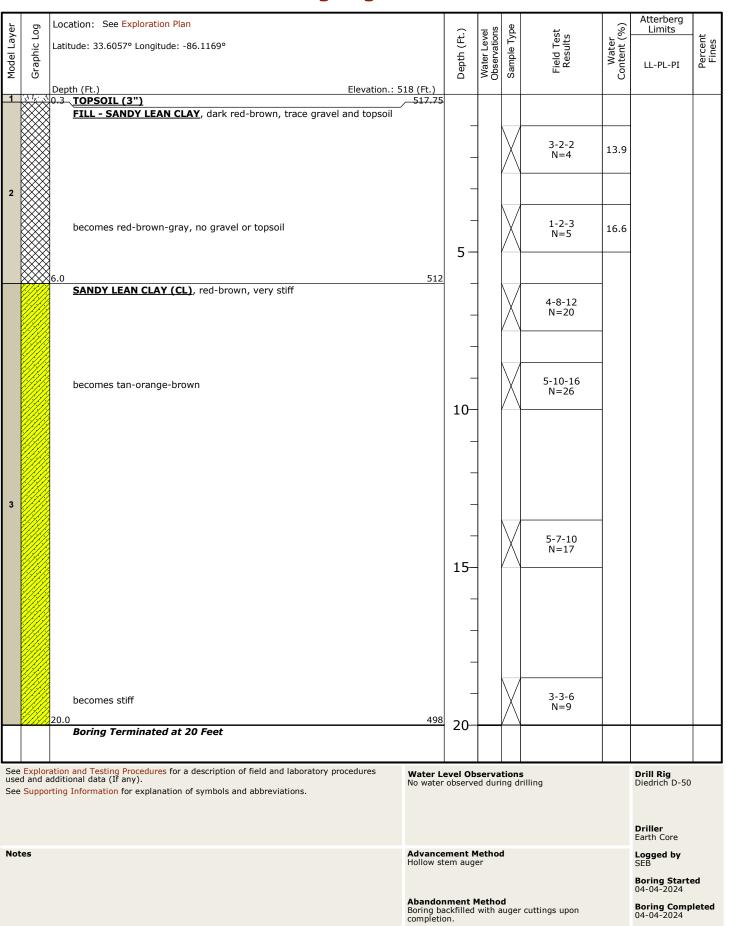




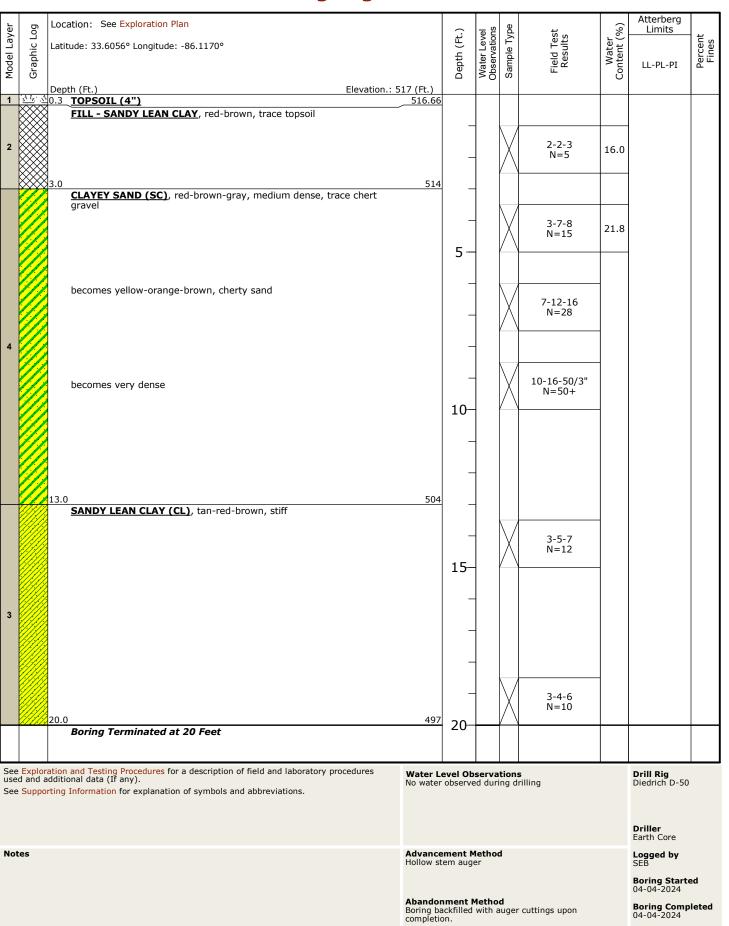




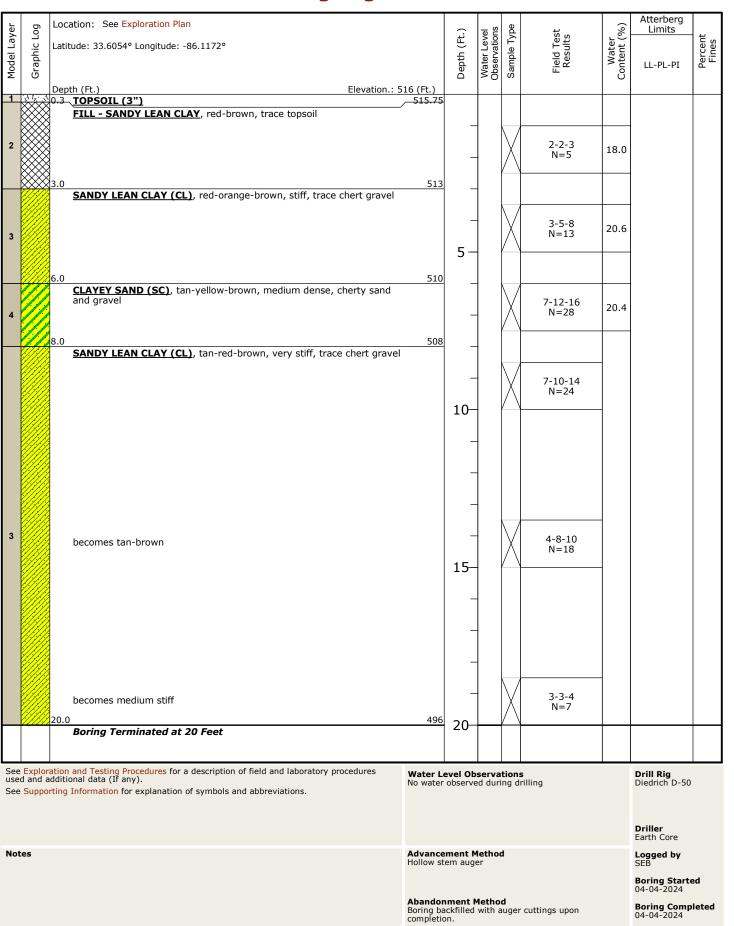




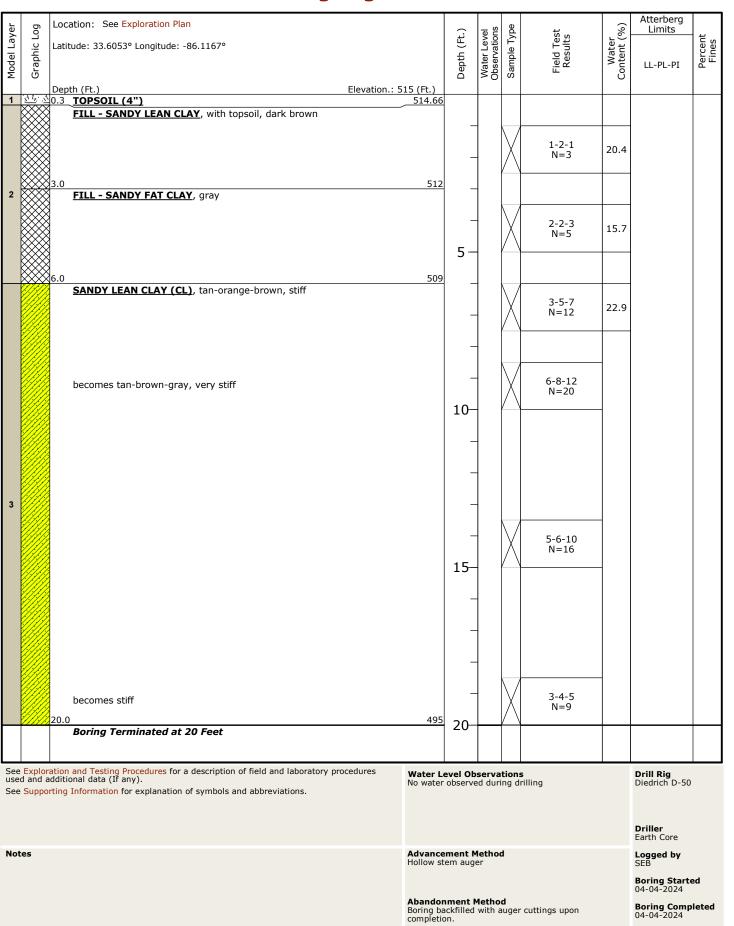




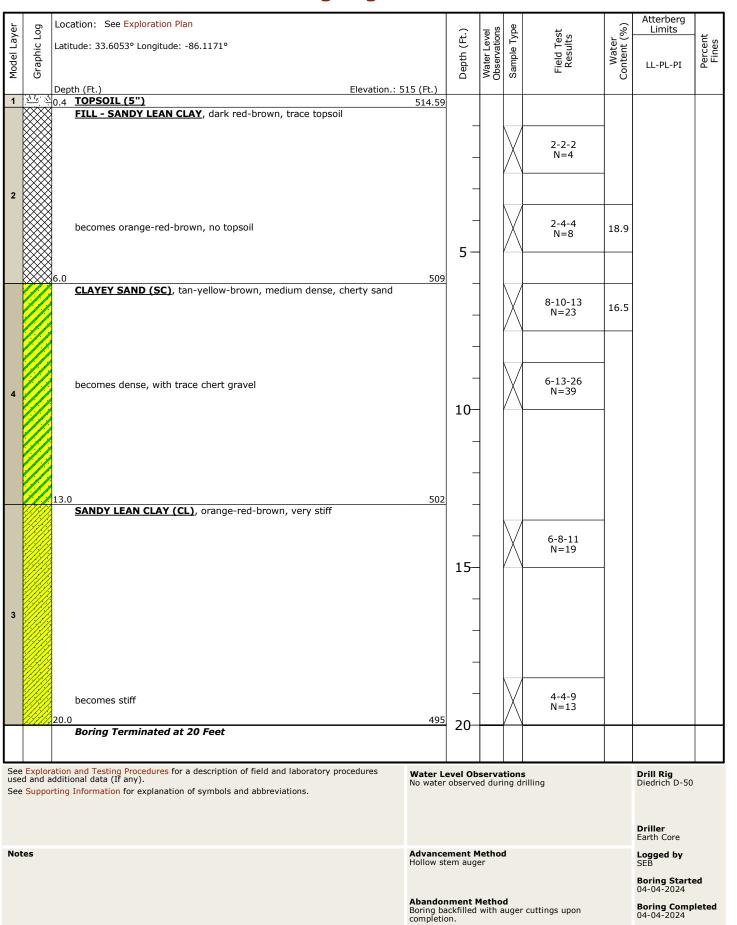




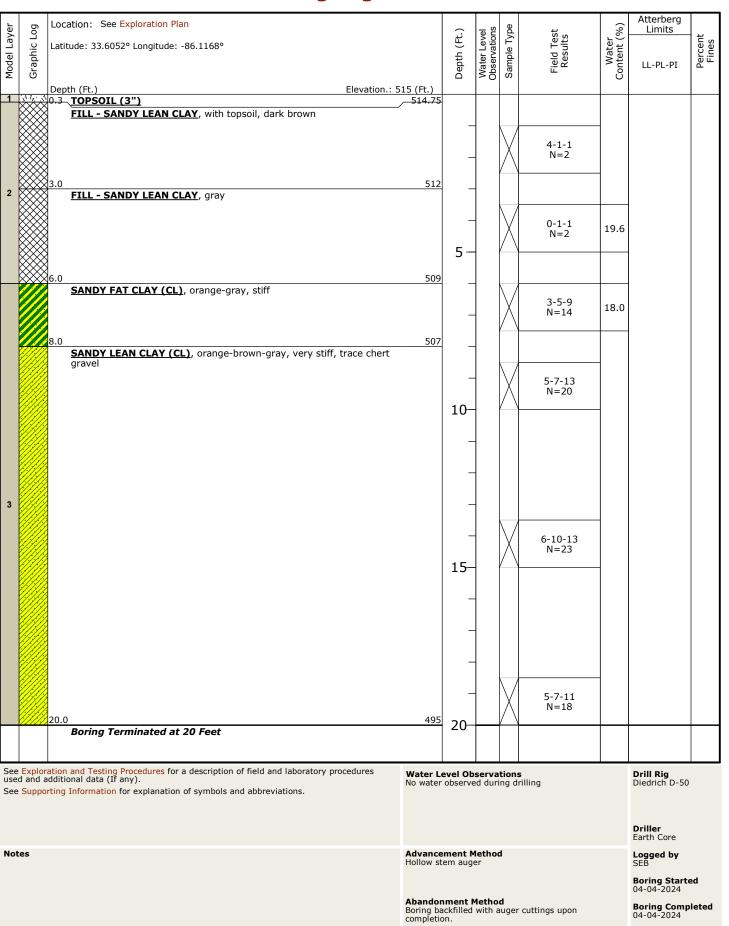




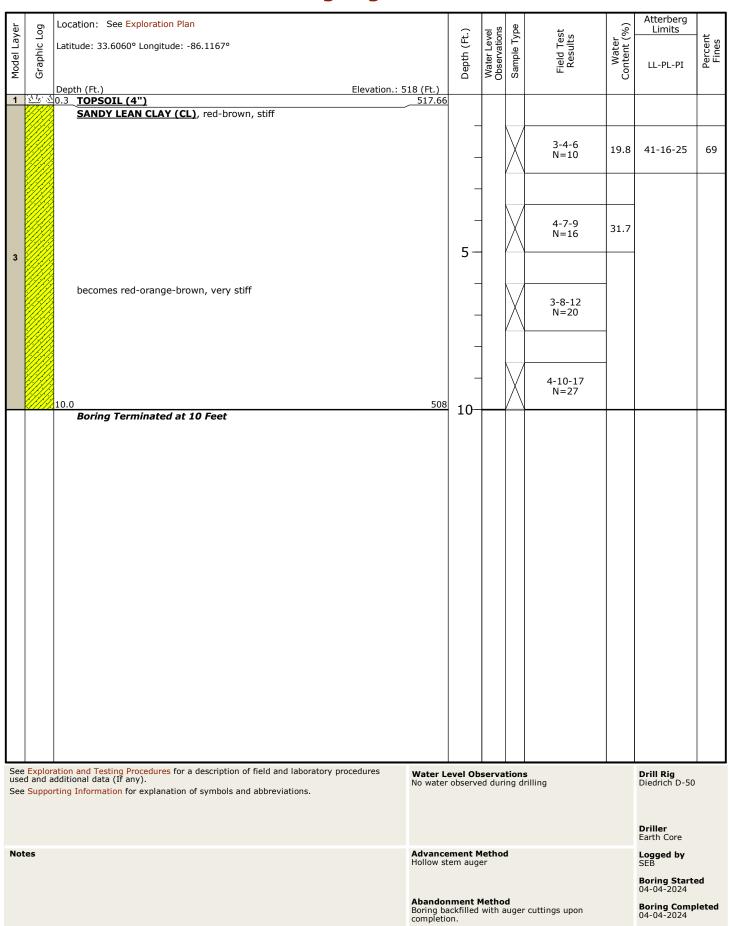




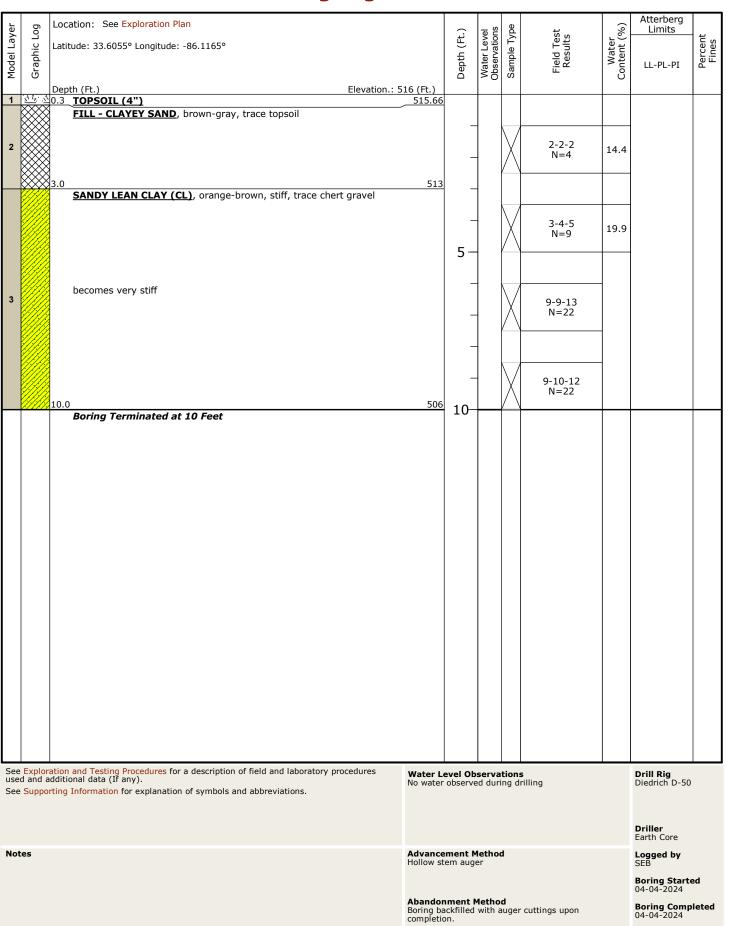




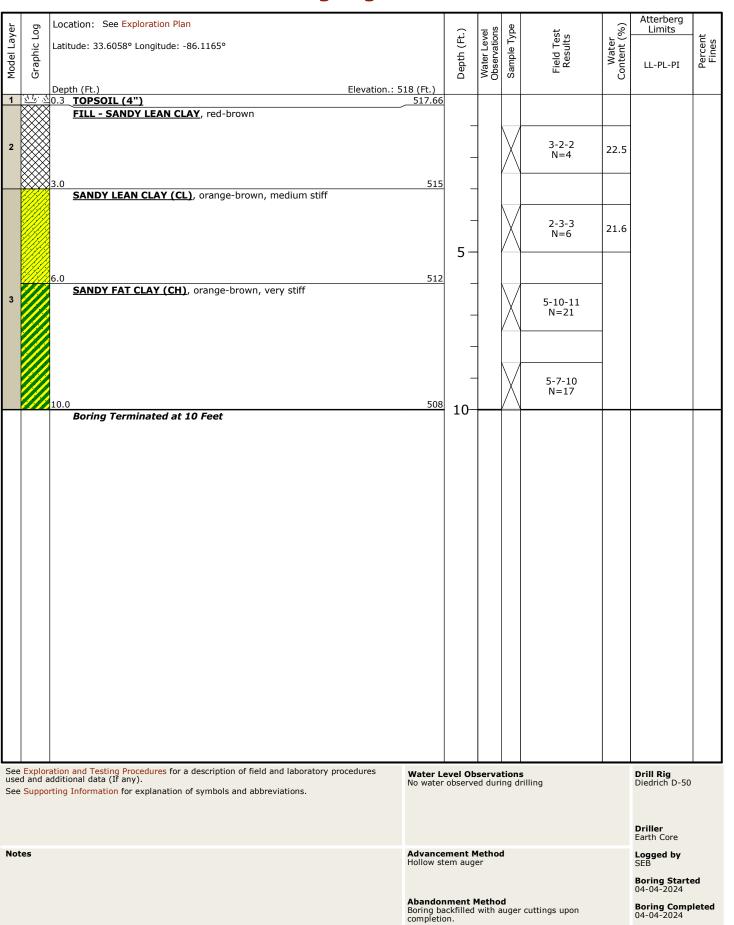




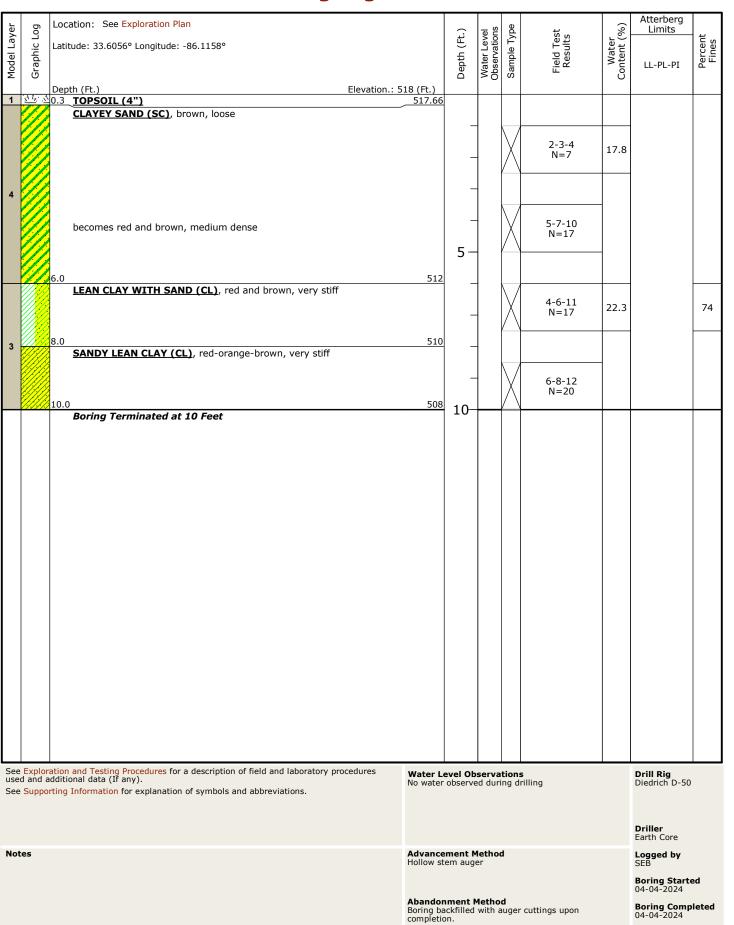




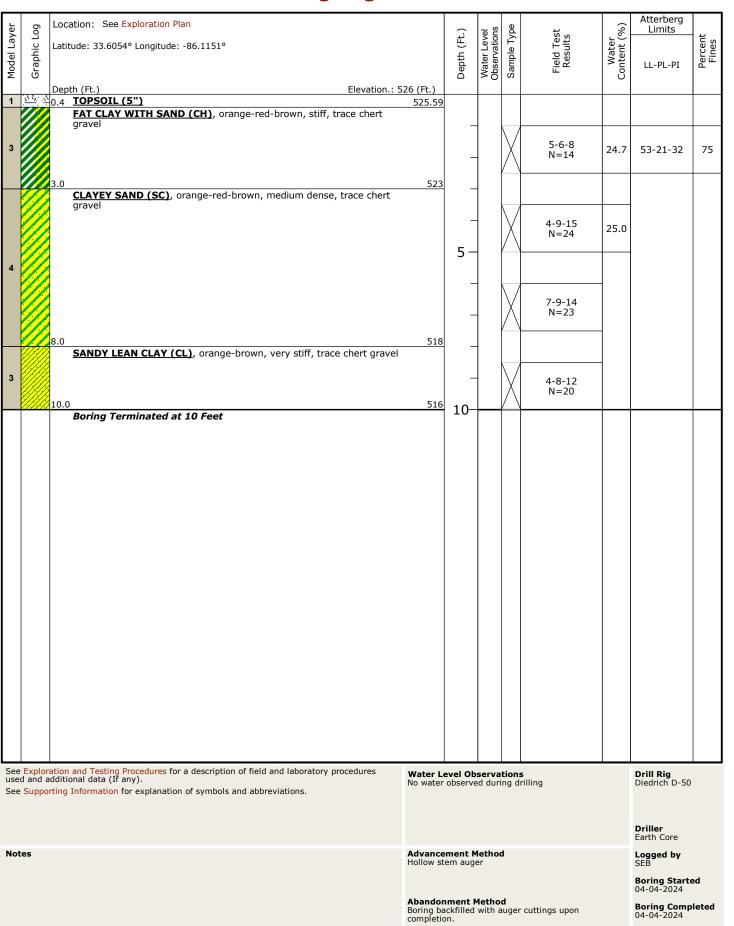








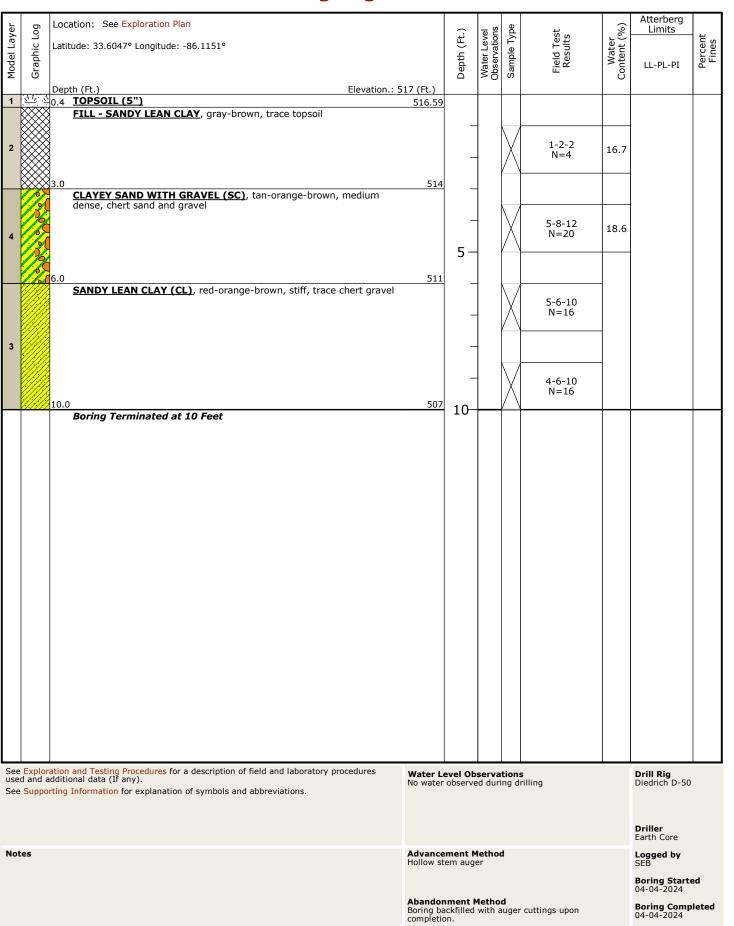






_										
er	5G	Location: See Exploration Plan		^	<u>~</u> &	oe Oe	-	(%)	Atterberg Limits	
Model Layer	Graphic Log	Latitude: 33.6051° Longitude: -86.1151°		Depth (Ft.)	Water Level Observations	Sample Type	Field Test Results	Water Content (%)		Percent Fines
lodel	iraph			epth	Vater bsen	amb	Field Res	We onte	LL-PL-PI	Per Fir
		Depth (Ft.) Elevation.: 5	526 (Ft.)		>0	00				
1	<u> </u>	0.4 TOPSOIL (5") SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), orange-red-brown, stiff, trace chert	525.59							
		SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), orange-red-brown, sun, trace chert		_	-					
						$ \bigvee $	6-7-8 N=15	20.6		
				_		$/ \setminus$	N=12			
				_						
3						/	7.42.50/4"	-		
		becomes very stiff		-	1	X	7-13-50/1" N=50+			
				5 -				1		
	<u>//////</u>	6.0 Auger Refusal at 6 Feet	520	-						
See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).			Water Le	evel Ob	serva	tions	s	1	Drill Rig Diedrich D-50	
		additional data (ir any). I <mark>rting Information f</mark> or explanation of symbols and abbreviations.	No water	observ	ed duri	ing d	rilling		Diedrich D-50	
									Driller Earth Core	
Notes			Advancement Method							
			Hollow st	em aug	er				Logged by SEB	
									Boring Start 04-04-2024	ed
			Abandon Boring ba	nment l	Metho with a	d auger	cuttings upon		Boring Comp 04-04-2024	leted
			completio	on.					04-04-2024	





Supporting Information

Contents:

General Notes Unified Soil Classification System

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.



General Notes

Sampling	Water Level		Field Tests		
Standard Penetration Test	Water Initially Encountered Water Level After a Specified Period of Time Water Level After a Specified Period of Time Cave In Encountered Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In	N (HP) (T) (DCP) UC (PID)	Standard Penetration Test Resistance (Blows/Ft.) Hand Penetrometer Torvane Dynamic Cone Penetrometer Unconfined Compressive Strength Photo-Ionization Detector		
	low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.	(OVA)	Organic Vapor Analyzer		

Descriptive Soil Classification

Soil classification as noted on the soil boring logs is based Unified Soil Classification System. Where sufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils consistent with ASTM D2487 "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" this procedure is used. ASTM D2488 "Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)" is also used to classify the soils, particularly where insufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils in accordance with ASTM D2487. In addition to USCS classification, coarse grained soils are classified on the basis of their in-place relative density, and fine-grained soils are classified on the basis of their consistency. See "Strength Terms" table below for details. The ASTM standards noted above are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods are applied as a result of local practice or professional judgment.

Location And Elevation Notes

Exploration point locations as shown on the Exploration Plan and as noted on the soil boring logs in the form of Latitude and Longitude are approximate. See Exploration and Testing Procedures in the report for the methods used to locate the exploration points for this project. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

	Strength	Terms

Relative Density of Coarse-Grained Soils (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance

Consistency of Fine-Grained Soils

(50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.)
Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance

Relative Density	Standard Penetration or N-Value (Blows/Ft.)	Consistency	Unconfined Compressive Strength Qu (tsf)	Standard Penetration or N-Value (Blows/Ft.)
Very Loose	0 - 3	Very Soft	less than 0.25	0 - 1
Loose	4 - 9	Soft	0.25 to 0.50	2 - 4
Medium Dense	10 - 29	Medium Stiff	0.50 to 1.00	4 - 8
Dense	30 - 50	Stiff	1.00 to 2.00	8 - 15
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00	15 - 30
		Hard	> 4.00	> 30

Relevance of Exploration and Laboratory Test Results

Exploration/field results and/or laboratory test data contained within this document are intended for application to the project as described in this document. Use of such exploration/field results and/or laboratory test data should not be used independently of this document.

New City of Lincoln Police Department | Lincoln, Alabama April 25, 2024 | Terracon Project No. E1245042



Unified Soil Classification System

Criteria for As	Soil Classification				
	Group Symbol	Group Name ^B			
	Gravels: More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	Clean Gravels:	Cu≥4 and 1≤Cc≤3 ^E	GW	Well-graded gravel F
		Less than 5% fines ^c	Cu<4 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] E	GP	Poorly graded gravel F
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines ^c	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty gravel F, G, H
Coarse-Grained Soils:			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey gravel F, G, H
More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	Clean Sands: Less than 5% fines D Cu<6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] $^{\text{L}}$	SW	Well-graded sand ^I	
			Cu<6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] E	SP	Poorly graded sand ^I
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines D	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty sand G, H, I
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey sand G, H, I
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit less than 50	Inorganic:	PI > 7 and plots above "A" line ³	CL	Lean clay K, L, M
		inorganic:	PI < 4 or plots below "A" line ³	ML	Silt K, L, M
		Organic:	$\frac{LL \ oven \ dried}{LL \ not \ dried} < 0.75$	OL	Organic clay K, L, M, N
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the		Organic.	LL not dried < 0.75		Organic silt K, L, M, O
No. 200 sieve	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	Inorganic:	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat clay ^{K, L, M}
		inorganic.	PI plots below "A" line	MH	Elastic silt K, L, M
		Organic:	$\frac{LL \ oven \ dried}{LL \ not \ dried} < 0.75$	ОН	Organic clay K, L, M, P
		Organic:	LL not dried < 0.75		Organic silt ^{K, L, M, Q}
Highly organic soils:	ghly organic soils: Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor				Peat

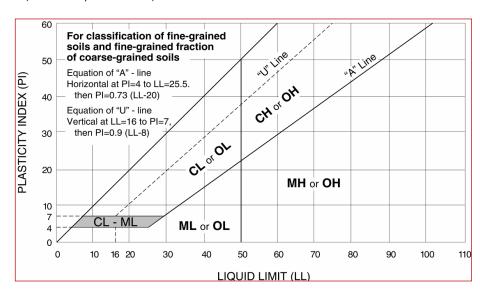
- A Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve.
- B If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.
- Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.
- P Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay.

E Cu =
$$D_{60}/D_{10}$$
 Cc = $\frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

- $^{\mathsf{F}}$ If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name.
- ^G If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

- H If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.
- If soil contains \geq 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.
- If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

 K If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or
- K If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.
- $^{\text{L}}$ If soil contains \geq 30% plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.
- ^M If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add
 "gravelly" to group name.
- N PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.
- PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.
- P PI plots on or above "A" line.
- Q PI plots below "A" line.



SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to all Sections in the Project Manual.
 - 1. The Contractor shall issue a copy of all Division 01 Sections, including copy of Table of Contents, when issuing a partial set of specifications to other contractors. Issuing partial sets of construction documents is discouraged by the Architect and the Owner.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Project information.
 - 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
 - 3. Work under Owner's separate contracts.
 - 4. Contractor's use of site and premises.
 - 5. Coordination with occupants.
 - 6. Work restrictions.
 - 7. Specification and Drawing conventions.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: New Lincoln Police Department.
 - 1. Project Location: Behind Lincoln City Hall, Alabama. Address: TBD
- B. Owner: City of Lincoln.
- C. Architect: Bill Whittaker Architecture, 236 Martin Street, Anniston, Alabama 36206.
- D. Web-Based Project Software: Project software will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
 - 1. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using web-based Project software.
- E. Contract Time: The Construction Contract to include a required contract time of 365 calendar days from the date of the Notice to Proceed.
- F. Liquidated Damages: The Construction Contract to include liquidated damages for which the Contractor, and its Surety, shall be liable and will be required to pay the Owner in accordance with the Contract Documents, shall be equal to six percent interest per annum on the total Contract Sum

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. New, single-story Police Department building consisting of approximately 15,730 gross square feet including Court Room and Storm Shelter.
 - a. The new access road and associated parking is an alternatives. Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates" for additional description.
 - b. The court room shell is an alternate. Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates" for additional description.
 - c. The court room build out is an alternate. Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates" for additional description.
 - d. The 6 office build out shell is an alternate. Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates" for additional description.
 - e. The main lobby floor finishes upgrades is an alternate. Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates" for additional description.

B. Construction Description:

- 1. Primary Exterior Materials:
 - a. Brick veneer.
 - b. Calcium silicate masonry units.
 - c. Cast stone trim.
 - d. Metal roof panels.
 - e. Aluminum storefront entrances.
 - f. Aluminum storefront windows.
 - g. EIFS cornice.
 - h. FRP composite fabrications.
 - i. Metal wall louvers.
- 2. Building Envelope Materials and Systems:
 - a. Concrete foundations and concrete slab on grade.
 - b. Concrete masonry units.
 - c. Structural steel framing.
 - d. Cold-formed metal stud framing.
 - e. Wood roof trusses.
 - f. Exterior sheathing with fluid-applied air and moisture barrier.
 - g. Thermal insulation.

3. Interior Construction:

- a. Gypsum wallboard assemblies.
- b. Architectural woodwork.
- c. Plastic laminate clad cabinets.
- d. Hollow metal doors and frames.
- e. Wood doors.
- f. Ceramic tiling.
- g. Acoustical panel ceilings.
- h. Resilient flooring.
- i. Carpeting.
- j. Painting.
- 4. Building Specialties and Equipment:

- a. Plaques, dimensional letter signage, and room signage.
- b. Toilet compartments.
- c. Toilet accessories.
- d. Fire extinguishers and cabinets.
- e. Residential appliances.
- 5. Furnishings such as window treatment and various types of countertops.
- 6. Fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, and communications infrastructure.
- 7. Site improvements, hardscaping, landscaping, and irrigation.

C. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK UNDER OWNER'S SEPARATE CONTRACTS

- A. Work with Separate Contractors: Cooperate fully with Owner's separate contractors, so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying Work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under Owner's separate contracts.
- B. Concurrent Work: Owner has awarded separate contracts for the following construction operations at Project site. Those operations will be conducted simultaneously with Work under this Contract.
 - 1. Quality control testing and special inspections.
 - 2. Telephone and data equipment installation.
 - 3. Furnishings.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

A. Unrestricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

1.7 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
 - 1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.
 - 2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
 - 3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
 - 4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

1.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Weekend and Early Morning Hours: As agreed to during the preconstruction meeting.
- C. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- D. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

1.9 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 - 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 - 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings or published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

March 31st, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
 - 2. Quantity allowances.

C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
- 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work

1.6 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, equipment rental, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
 - 1. Contractor overhead and profit is included in Base Bid and will be excluded on change orders associated with the lump sum and quantity allowances.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.7 EARTHWORK QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to earthwork quantity allowances shall be included as part of the Contract Sum, and as follows:
 - Measurement for earthwork quantity allowances are to be determined as bank cubic yard of materials undercut.
 - 2. Prior to performing work, obtain written direction of area to be undercut from Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - 3. Prior to backfilling, submit quantity of bank cubic yards of material undercut to Architect for approval.

1.8 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.9 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1A (Base Bid): Earthwork Quantity Allowance: Include in Base Bid 6,800 cu. yds. of unsatisfactory soil excavation, disposal off-site, and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site, as specified in earthwork specifications and approved by Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- B. Allowance No. 1B (Roadway Alternate): Earthwork Quantity Allowance: Include in Alternate 750 cu. yds. of unsatisfactory soil excavation, disposal off-site, and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site, as specified in earthwork specifications and approved by Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- C. Allowance No. 2 (Base Bid): Earthwork Quantity Allowance: Include in Base Bid 6,700 tons of # 57 crushed stone, as specified in earthwork specifications and approved by Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - 1. Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- D. Allowance No. 3 (Roadway Alternate): Include in Base Bid 7,200 square yards of stabilization fabric, as specified in earthwork specifications.
 - Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

March 31,2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

E. Allowance No. 4: Contingency Allowance: Include in Base Bid a construction contingency allowance of \$250,000 for use according to Owner's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for quantity allowances related to unit price requirements.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections. See Bid Form for additional requirements.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price. See Bid Form for additional requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price No. 1A (Base Bid) - Undercutting/Waste Offsite Unsuitable Soil Materials:

UNIT PRICES 012200 - 1

- 1. Description: Undercutting unsatisfactory soil materials as directed by the Owner's geotechnical engineer and waste the materials offsite in accordance with earthwork specifications, and as directed by the Owner's geotechnical engineer.
- 2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of material excavated as authorized by the Owner's representative.
- 3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."
- B. Unit Price No. 1B (Alternate) Undercutting/Waste Offsite Unsuitable Soil Materials:
 - 1. Description: Undercutting unsatisfactory soil materials as directed by the Owner's geotechnical engineer and waste the materials offsite in accordance with earthwork specifications, and as directed by the Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of material excavated as authorized by the Owner's representative.
 - 3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."
- C. Unit Price No. 2 Backfill with Crushed Stone:
 - 1. Description: Backfill with # 57 crushed stone in accordance with earthwork specifications, and as directed by the Owner's geotechnical engineer.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Weight in tons of material compacted in-place as authorized by the Owner's representative.
 - 3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."
- D. Unit Price No. 3 (Alternate) Stabilization Fabric:
 - 1. Description: As specified.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Square yards installed.
 - 3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."

UNIT PRICES 012200 - 2

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 - The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
 - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1: Roadway and Parking Lot Construction (Refer to the Civil drawings).
 - 1. Base Bid: Site preparation for building pad, front parking lot, and rear parking lot.

ALTERNATES 012300 - 1

- 2. Alternate: Provide an add alternate for subbase and pavement for front and rear parking lots, detention pond, and roadway construction in its entirety, including utilities.
- B. Alternate No. 2: Court Room Shell.
 - 1. Base Bid: Omit Court Room construction in its entirety, except as noted on the drawings.
 - 2. Alternate: Provide an add alternate to construct the Court Room shell.
- C. Alternate No. 3: Court Room build out.
 - Alternate: Provide an add alternate to build out and construct the interior of the Court Room.
- D. Alternate No. 4: 6 Office Buildout.
 - 1. Base Bid: Drawings show a shell space for 6 offices.
 - 2. Alternate: Provide an add alternate to build out the 6 offices.
- E. Alternate No. 5: Main Lobby Terrazzo Floor Seal and Tile Floor.
 - 1. Base Bid: Main Lobby: Floor finish to be VCT flooring only.
 - 2. Alternate: Omit VCT and provide Terrazzo Floor Seal and Porcelain Tile flooring.

END OF SECTION 012300

ALTERNATES 012300 - 2

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions after contract award.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests prior to award of Contract.
- 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.
 - 3. Approval of an unnamed manufacturer offering products equal to the specified products is not considered a substitution.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
- B. Product substitutions will only be considered in the event of the following:
 - 1. Specified product is no longer available.
 - 2. The specified product is not appropriate for use, in the opinion of the Contractor.
 - a. Upon evaluation, the Architect will determine whether a product substitution is required.
 - 3. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
 - 4. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:

- a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
- b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
- c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
- e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
- g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
- Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
- j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- I. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 5. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.5 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

- 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
- 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
- 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
- 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule. Cost-loaded Critical Path Method Schedule may serve to satisfy requirements for the schedule of values.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
 - 3. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Project number.
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Architect's Project number.
 - f. Contractor's name and address.
 - g. Date of submittal.

- 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
- 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest onehundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
- 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
- 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
- 6. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
- 7. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
- 8. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
- 9. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.

- 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
- 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
- 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored onsite and items stored off-site.
 - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
 - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
 - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit
 - 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
 - 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
 - 1. List of subcontractors.
 - 2. Schedule of values.
 - 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 - 4. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 - 5. List of Contractor's staff assignments.

- 6. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
- 7. Copies of building permits.
- 8. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
- 9. Initial progress report.
- 10. Report of preconstruction conference.
- 11. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
- 12. Performance and payment bonds.
- 13. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
 - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
 - 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
 - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 - 2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
 - 3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 - 4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 - 5. AIA Document G706.
 - 6. AIA Document G706A.
 - AIA Document G707.
 - 8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 - Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 - 10. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
 - 11. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - RFIs
 - 4. Digital project management procedures.
 - 5. Web-based Project management software package.
 - 6. Project meetings.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
- 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
- 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Sections covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
 - 1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep list current at all times.

1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 5. Progress meetings.
 - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 - 7. Mockup construction.
 - 8. Project closeout activities.
 - 9. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
 - Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.

- d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
- f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
 - 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 - 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling, and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 - 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 - 4. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 - 5. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
 - 6. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:
 - 1. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
 - 2. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
 - Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.
- D. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
 - 1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.

- 2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
- 3. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
 - b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1.6 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 - 1. Project name.
 - Owner name.
 - 3. Owner's Project number.
 - 4. Name of Architect.
 - 5. Architect's Project number.
 - 6. Date.
 - 7. Name of Contractor.
 - 8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 - 9. RFI subject.
 - 10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 - 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 - 13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 - 14. Contractor's signature.
 - 15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
 - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

- 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
- 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
- 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log at each project meeting. Include the following:
 - 1. Project name.
 - Name and address of Contractor.
 - 3. Name and address of Architect.
 - 4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 - 5. RFI description.
 - 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 - 7. Date Architect's response was received.
 - 8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 - 9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.7 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
 - 1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
 - 2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
 - 3. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.
 - 4. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
 - a. Floor plans.
 - b. Reflected ceiling plans.

- B. Web-Based Project Management Software Package: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
 - 1. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:
 - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
 - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
 - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
 - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
 - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
 - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
 - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
 - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
 - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
 - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
 - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
 - I. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
 - 2. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
 - 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
 - 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned

parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

- 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 - b. Tentative construction schedule.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Lines of communications.
 - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - g. Procedures for RFIs.
 - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - I. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - m. Work restrictions.
 - n. Working hours.
 - o. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - p. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - q. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - r. Parking availability.
 - s. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - t. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - u. First aid.
 - v. Security.
 - w. Progress cleaning.
- 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
 - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Related RFIs.
 - c. Related Change Orders.
 - d. Deliveries.
 - e. Submittals.
 - f. Review of mockups.
 - g. Possible conflicts.
 - h. Compatibility requirements.
 - i. Time schedules.
 - j. Weather limitations.
 - k. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - I. Warranty requirements.
 - m. Compatibility of materials.

- n. Acceptability of substrates.
- o. Temporary facilities and controls.
- p. Space and access limitations.
- q. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- r. Testing and inspecting requirements.
- s. Installation procedures.
- t. Coordination with other work.
- u. Required performance results.
- v. Protection of adjacent work.
- w. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
 - 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site use.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.

- 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
- 15) Pending changes.
- 16) Status of Change Orders.
- 17) Pending claims and disputes.
- 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
 - Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, third-party inspectors, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - b. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - c. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - d. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Mockup review.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site use.
 - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 10) Work hours.
 - 11) Hazards and risks.
 - 12) Progress cleaning.
 - 13) Quality and work standards.
 - 14) Coordination of the work.

- 15) Required performance results.
- 16) Protection of the work.
- 17) Status of RFIs.
- 18) Proposal Requests.
- 19) Change Orders.
- 20) Pending changes.
- 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.
 - a. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 - b. Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 - c. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- F. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
 - Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - i. Submittal procedures.
 - j. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - I. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.
 - 4. Site condition reports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.

3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF file.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
 - 1. Submit within 7 days after the bid opening
 - 2. Schedule of Values specified in Section 012900 and subcontractor list are required to be submitted within 24 hours of bid opening from the two apparent low bidders.
- D. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
 - 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
 - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
 - 3. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.

- 4. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
- 5. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
- 6. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
- 7. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
- 8. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
- 9. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
- 10. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting, using CPM scheduling.
 - 1. In-House Option: Owner may waive requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs highly skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications to Architect for approval.
 - 2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.
- C. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.
- D. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect and Owner.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
 - 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.

- 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- E. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 - 1. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Submittals.
 - b. Mockups.
 - c. Fabrication.
 - d. Sample testing.
 - e. Deliveries.
 - f. Installation.
 - g. Tests and inspections.
 - h. Adjusting.
 - i. Curing.
 - j. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - 2. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
 - f. Substantial Completion.
- F. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.
- G. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
 - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- H. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 - 1. Unresolved issues.
 - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- I. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

- 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
- 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
- 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- J. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- K. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.7 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
 - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule, so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.
 - 2. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 - 3. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
 - Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship
 of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following
 activities:

- a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
- b. Mobilization and demobilization.
- c. Purchase of materials.
- d. Delivery.
- e. Fabrication.
- f. Utility interruptions.
- g. Installation.
- h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
- i. Testing and inspection.
- j. Punch list and Final Completion.
- k. Activities occurring following Final Completion.
- Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
- 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
- 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
 - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- 5. Cost- and Resource-Loading of CPM Schedule: Assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Do not assign costs to submittal activities. Obtain Architect's approval prior to assigning costs to fabrication and delivery activities. Assign costs under main subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project record documents, and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
 - a. Each activity cost shall reflect an appropriate value subject to approval by Architect.
 - b. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
 - 1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 - 2. Description of activity.
 - 3. Main events of activity.
 - 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 - 5. Early and late start dates.
 - 6. Early and late finish dates.
 - 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 - 8. Total float or slack time.
 - 9. Average size of workforce.
 - 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

- 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
- 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
- 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
- 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
- 5. Changes in the critical path.
- 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
- 7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
 - In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
 - 2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
 - 3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
 - 4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
 - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
 - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1.8 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - 4. Equipment at Project site.
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - 7. Testing and inspection.
 - 8. Accidents.
 - 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - 10. Unusual events.
 - 11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 - 12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 - 13. Emergency procedures.
 - 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
 - 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 - 17. Services connected and disconnected.
 - 18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 - 19. Partial completions and occupancies.
 - 20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
 - 2. Concealed Work photographs.
 - 3. Periodic construction photographs.
 - 4. Final Completion construction photographs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files monthly with each Application for Payment.
 - 1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
 - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Name of Contractor.
 - d. Date photograph was taken.
 - e. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.
 - f. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.3 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels, and with vibration-reduction technology. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- C. Metadata: Record accurate date and time and GPS location data from camera.
- D. File Names: Name media files with date and sequential numbering suffix.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Flag excavation areas before taking construction photographs.
 - Take 10 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
- C. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Underground utilities.
 - 2. Underslab services.
 - 3. Piping.
 - 4. Electrical conduit.
 - 5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 8 photographs monthly coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
 - 1. Construction Views: Exterior and interior views as follows:
 - a. Take photographs of each pertinent exterior elevation from the same location throughout the project on a weekly basis.
 - b. Interior views of major spaces on a monthly basis. Of particular interest is the progress of HVAC ductwork and equipment, plumbing, electrical, partitions, and interior finishes.
 - c. Views of the roof areas on a weekly basis during periods when work is in progress on or adjacent to the roof.
- E. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 8 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
- 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
- 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list.
- 3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 4. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting preconstruction photographs, periodic construction photographs, and Final Completion construction photographs.
- 5. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
- 6. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
- 7. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
- 8. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

- Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
- 2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
- 3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
- 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - Activity or event number.

1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
 - 1. Project name.
 - 2. Date.
 - 3. Name of Architect.
 - 4. Name of Contractor.
 - 5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
 - 8. Category and type of submittal.
 - 9. Submittal purpose and description.
 - 10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - 13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - 14. Other necessary identification.
 - 15. Remarks.
 - 16. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals Utilizing Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files or other format indicated by Project management software.

1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
 - 5. Interior Finishes and Samples: Submit the following materials simultaneously to ensure color coordination. Submittals will not be processed by the Architect until all have been received from the Contractor.
 - a. Plastic laminate.
 - b. Ceramic tile.
 - c. Resilient flooring and accessories.
 - d. Carpeting.
 - e. Interior paint colors.
 - f. Room signage.
 - g. Toilet compartments.
 - h. Specialty items requiring color selections.
 - i. Window treatment.
 - j. Countertop materials.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

- 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
- 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
- 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 10 days for review of each resubmittal.
- 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- 5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 - Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. The Architect will review the submittals on shop drawings, product data, and samples and one resubmittal.
 - 1. For submittals in excess of the one resubmittal, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner, for additional services required of the Architect, and the Architect's consultants by these additional resubmittals.
 - No additional time will be allowed the Contractor for delays caused by excess number of resubmittals.
- F. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- G. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.

- h. Availability and delivery time information.
- 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
- 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
 - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
 - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 - 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Project name and submittal number.
 - b. Generic description of Sample.
 - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - d. Sample source.
 - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 - 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
 - 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.

- 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
- 6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit four sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.

F. Certificates:

- 1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
- 2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- 3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- 4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

G. Test and Research Reports:

- Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
- 2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- 6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - a. Name of evaluation organization.
 - b. Date of evaluation.
 - c. Time period when report is in effect.
 - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - e. Description of product.
 - f. Test procedures and results.
 - g. Limitations of use.

1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
 - 1. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trades.
- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
 - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
 - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
 - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
 - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
 - d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.

- e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
- 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
- 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

1.3 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting

requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
 - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- B. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- C. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.6 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.

- 8. Complete test or inspection data.
- 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
- 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
- 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
- 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
- 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
 - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups of size indicated.
 - 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

- Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
- 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
- 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
- Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
- 7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
- 8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
- 10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Specialty Mockups: See Section 014339 "Mockups" for additional construction requirements for integrated exterior mockups.

1.8 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
 - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 - 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 - 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
 - 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 - 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 - 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
 - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 - 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
 - 1. Access to the Work.
 - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.

- 1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
- 2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.9 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
 - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
 - 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

- Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

Project:	Lincoln Police Department	
Project Address:	Lincoln, Alabama	
Testing / Inspection Agent:		
Testing / Inspection Agent Address:		
Scope of Testing / Inspections:		
	(To be completed by Testing / Inspection Agent)	
To the best of my information, knowledg Agent in the <i>Schedule of Special Inspect</i>	e, and belief, the special inspections or ions submitted for permit, have been co	testing required for this project, and designated for this impleted in accordance with the contract documents.
Interim reports submitted prior to this fina integral part of this final report. The follo have been corrected:		, form a basis for, and are to be considered an ng since the last interim report dated
(Attach 8 1/2" x 11" continuation sheet(s) if require	ed to complete the description of corrections)	
	,	
		Special Inspector's Seal
		oposiai inoposto. O oca.
Prepared By:		
		_
Type or print name		
		_
Signature	Date	(Licensed Professional Engineer)
		CENTO
		INEER'S







STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

Project: Lincoln Police Department
Project Address: Lincoln, Alabama
Permit Applicant:
Applicant Address:
Owner:

Owner Address:

Registered Design Professionals (RDP):

Architect: Bill Whittaker Architect, PC

Geotechnical Engineer: Terracon

Structural Engineer: Barnett Jones Wilson, LLC

Mechanical Engineer: Whorton Engineering Electrical Engineer: Hays Cheatwood

This statement of special inspections is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with Chapter 17 of the International Building Code. It includes a *Schedule of Special Inspections* applicable to the above referenced project as well as the identity of the individuals, agencies, or firms intended to be retained for conducting these inspections.

The Special Inspector(s) shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish interim inspection reports to the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge at a frequency agreed upon by the permit applicant and building official prior to the start of work. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to completion of that phase of work. A *Final Report of Special Inspections* documenting required special inspections and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted by each agent at the completion of that phase of work.

Maximum frequency of interim report submittals shall not be less than 2 weeks.

The Special Inspection program does not relieve the contractor of the responsibility to comply with the Contract Documents. Jobsite safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Owner's Acknow	vledgement:			
Signature			Date	
Building Official'	s Acceptance:			
Signature			Date	
Permit No.		_		
Frequency of interim report submittals to building official:				
☐ Monthly	☐ Bi-Monthly	☐ Upon Completion	☐ Per Attached S	Schedule

RDP in Responsible Charge		







SECTION 01410 - STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements required for compliance with the International Building Code, Chapter 17, Structural Tests and Special Inspections.
- B. Structural testing and special inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve contractor of responsibility for compliance with other construction document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the construction document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by architect, owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this section.
- C. The owner will engage one or more qualified special inspectors and / or testing agencies to conduct structural tests and special inspections specified in this section and related sections and as maybe specified in other divisions of these specifications.
- D. Related Sections include but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. 03300 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
 - 2. 05120 STRUCTURAL STEEL.
 - 3. 04200 UNIT MASONRY
 - 4. 05310 STEEL DECKING
 - 5. 05400 COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING
 - 6. 06192 FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Approved Agency: An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved by the building official.
- B. Construction Documents: Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit. Construction Documents include all supplemental instructions, sketches, addenda, and revisions to the drawings and specifications issued by the registered design professional beyond those issued for a building permit.

- C. Shop Drawings / Submittal Data: Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared and / or assembled by the contractor based on the Construction Documents.
- D. Structural Observation: Visual observation of the structural system by a representative of the registered design professional's office for general conformance to the approved construction documents. Structural observations are not considered part of the structural tests and special inspections and do not replace inspections and testing by the testing agency or special inspector.
- E. Special Inspector: A qualified person who demonstrating competence, to the satisfaction of the code enforcement official and registered design professional in responsible charge, for inspection of the particular type of construction or operation requiring special inspection. The special inspector shall be a licensed professional engineer or engineering intern or a qualified representative from the testing agency.
- F. Special Inspection, Continuous: The full-time observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work is being performed.
- G. Special Inspection, Periodic: The part-time or intermittent observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.
- H. Testing Agency: A qualified materials testing laboratory under the responsible charge of a licensed professional engineer, approved by the code enforcement official and the registered design professional in responsible charge, to measure, examine, test, calibrate, or otherwise determine the characteristics or performance of construction materials and verify confirmation with construction documents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - Minimum qualifications of inspection and testing agencies and their personnel shall comply with ASTM E329-03 Standard Specification for Agencies in the Testing and / or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.
 - a. Inspectors and individuals performing tests shall be certified for the work being performed as outlined in the appendix of the ASTM E329. Certification by organizations other than those listed must be submitted to the building official for consideration before proceeding with work.
 - 2. In addition to these requirements, local jurisdiction may have additional requirements. It is the responsibility of the testing and inspection agencies to meet local requirements and comply with local procedures.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS, REPORTS, AND TEST RESULTS

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to the registered design professional in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum

quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to the registered design profession in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.

- C. The special inspector's reports and testing agencies results shall have precedence over reports and test results provided by the contractor.
- D. Where a conflict exists between the construction documents and approved shop drawings / submittal data, the construction documents shall govern unless the shop drawings / submittal data are more restrictive. All conflicts shall be brought to the attention of the registered design professional in responsible charge.

1.6 SUBMITTALS BY SPECIAL INSPECTOR AND / OR TESTING AGENCY

- A. Special inspectors shall keep and distribute records of inspections. The special inspector shall furnish inspection reports to the building official, and to the registered design professional in responsible charge, contractor, architect, and owner. Reports shall indicate that work inspected was done in conformance to approved construction documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon by the permit applicant and the building official prior to the start of work.
 - 1. Special inspection reports and test results shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Date of inspection.
 - b. Description of inspections or tests performed including location (reference grid lines, floors, elevations, etc.).
 - c. Statement noting that the work, material, and / or product conforms or does not conform to the construction document requirements.
 - Name and signature of contractor's representative who was notified of work, material, and / or products that do not meet the construction document requirements.
 - d. Name and signature of special inspector and / or testing agency representative performing the work.
- B. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work: Each agent shall maintain a log of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents. Include reference to original inspection / test report and subsequent dates of re-inspection / retesting.
- C. Reports and tests shall be submitted within 1 week of inspection or test. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work shall be updated daily and submitted at monthly intervals.
- D. Final Report of Special Inspections. Submitted by each agent listed in the schedule of Structural Testing and Special Inspections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. The contractor shall coordinate the inspection and testing services with the progress of the work. The contractor shall provide sufficient notice to allow proper scheduling of all personnel. The contractor shall provide safe access for performing inspection and on site testing.
- B. The contractor shall submit schedules to the owner, registered design professionals and testing and inspecting agencies. Schedules will note milestones and durations of time for materials requiring structural tests and special inspections.
- C. The contractor shall repair and / or replace work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.
 - 1. Contractor shall engage an engineer / architect to prepare repair and / or replacement procedures.
 - 2. Engineer / architect shall be registered in the state in which the project is located. Engineer shall be acceptable to the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner.
 - 3. Procedures shall be submitted for review and acceptance by the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner before proceeding with corrective action.
- D. The contractor shall be responsible for costs of:
 - 1. Re-testing and re-inspection of materials, work, and / or products that do not meet the requirements of the construction documents and shop drawings / submittal data.
 - 2. Review of proposed repair and / or replacement procedures by the registered design professional in responsible charge and the inspectors and testing agencies.
 - 3. Repair or replacement of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.

3.2 STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

A. Structural observations may be made periodically as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.

3.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Testing and inspection shall be in accordance with the attached Schedule of Special Inspections.
- B. Reference related specifications for the minimum level of inspections and testing. Provide additional inspections and testing as necessary to determine compliance with the construction drawings.

PART 4 - SCHEDULES AND FORMS

- 4.1 STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.
- 4.2 SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS. (See Contract Drawings)
- 4.3 FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31,2025 BWA Project No. 24001

END OF SECTION 01410

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. Architect, Engineer, Architect/Engineer: Wherever the terms "Architect", "Engineer", or "Architect/Engineer" are used, it shall refer to the design professional that holds the prime contract with the Owner for the applicable portion of the work being described. In general, these terms are used interchangeably in the context that the design professional is to be consulted at various times for submittal reviews, approvals, pre-construction reviews, work progress reviews, and other functions as defined in the contract documents.
- D. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms, including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted," have the same meaning as "directed."
- E. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms, including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified," have the same meaning as "indicated."
- F. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- G. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- H. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- I. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- J. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For standards referenced by applicable building codes, comply with dates of standards as listed in building codes.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations, List: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Abbreviations and acronyms not included in this list are to mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States." The information in this list is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. AABC Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.com.
 - 2. AAMA American Architectural Manufacturers Association; (see FGIA).
 - 3. AAPFCO Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
 - 4. AASHTO American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
 - 5. AATCC American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
 - 6. ABMA American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
 - 7. ABMA American Boiler Manufacturers Association; www.abma.com.
 - 8. ACI American Concrete Institute; www.concrete.org.
 - 9. ACP American Clean Power; (Formerly: American Wind Energy Association); www.cleanpower.org.
 - 10. ACPA American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concretepipe.org.
 - 11. AEIC Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
 - 12. AF&PA American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
 - 13. AGA American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
 - 14. AHAM Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
 - 15. AHRI Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
 - 16. Al Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
 - 17. AIA American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
 - 18. AISC American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
 - 19. AISI American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
 - 20. AITC American Institute of Timber Construction; (see PLIB).
 - 21. AMCA Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
 - 22. AMPP Association for Materials Protection and Performance; www.ampp.org.

23. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.

- 24. AOSA/SCST Association of Official Seed Analysts (The)/Society of Commercial Seed Technologists (The); www.analyzeseeds.com.
- 25. APA APA The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
- 26. APA Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
- 27. API American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
- 28. ARMA Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
- 29. ASA Acoustical Society of America; www.acousticalsociety.org.
- 30. ASCE American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
- 31. ASCE/SEI American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (see ASCE).
- 32. ASHRAE American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
- 33. ASME ASME International; American Society of Mechanical Engineers (The); www.asme.org.
- 34. ASSE ASSE International; (American Society of Sanitary Engineering); <u>www.asse-plumbing.org</u>.
- 35. ASSP American Society of Safety Professionals; www.assp.org.
- 36. ASTM ASTM International; www.astm.org.
- 37. ATIS Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
- 38. AVIXA Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association; www.avixa.org.
- 39. AWI Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
- 40. AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
- 41. AWPA American Wood Protection Association; www.awpa.com.
- 42. AWS American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
- 43. AWWA American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
- 44. BHMA Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; www.buildershardware.com.
- 45. BIA Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
- 46. BICSI BICSI, Inc.: www.bicsi.org.
- 47. BIFMA Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association; www.bifma.org.
- 48. BISSC Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
- 49. BWF Badminton World Federation; www.bwfbadminton.com.
- 50. CARB California Air Resources Board; www.arb.ca.gov.
- 51. CDA Copper Development Association Inc.; www.copper.org.
- 52. CE Conformite Europeenne (European Commission); www.ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking.
- 53. CEA Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
- 54. CFFA Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.
- 55. CFSEI Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
- 56. CGA Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
- 57. CIMA Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
- 58. CISCA Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
- 59. CISPI Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
- 60. CLFMI Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
- 61. CPA Composite Panel Association; www.compositepanel.org.
- 62. CRI Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
- 63. CRRC Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
- 64. CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
- 65. CSA CSA Group; www.csagroup.org.
- 66. CSI Cast Stone Institute; www.caststone.org.
- 67. CSI Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csiresources.org.
- 68. CSSB Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
- 69. CTA Consumer Technology Association; www.cta.tech.
- 70. CTI Cooling Technology Institute; www.coolingtechnology.org.
- 71. DASMA Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; www.dasma.com.

- 72. DHA Decorative Hardwoods Association; www.decorativehardwoods.org.
- 73. DHI Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
- 74. ECIA Electronic Components Industry Association; www.ecianow.org.
- 75. EIMA EIFS Industry Members Association; <u>www.eima.com</u>.
- 76. EJMA Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
- 77. EOS/ESD EOS/ESD Association, Inc.; Electrostatic Discharge Association; www.esda.org.
- 78. ESTA Entertainment Services and Technology Association; www.esta.org.
- 79. EVO Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
- 80. FCI Fluid Controls Institute; www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org.
- 81. FGIA Fenestration and Glazing Industry Alliance; https://fgiaonline.org.
- 82. FIBA Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); www.fiba.com.
- 83. FIVB Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); www.fivb.org.
- 84. FM Approvals FM Approvals LLC; <u>www.fmapprovals.com</u>.
- 85. FM Global FM Global; www.fmglobal.com.
- 86. FRSA Florida Roofing and Sheet Metal Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridaroof.com.
- 87. FSA Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
- 88. FSC Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
- 89. GA Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
- 90. GS Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
- 91. HI Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
- 92. HMMA Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (see NAAMM).
- 93. IAPSC International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
- 94. IAS International Accreditation Service; www.iasonline.org.
- 95. ICC International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
- 96. ICEA Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.: www.icea.net.
- 97. ICPA International Cast Polymer Association (The); www.theicpa.com.
- 98. ICRI International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
- 99. IEC International Electrotechnical Commission; <u>www.iec.ch</u>.
- 100. IEEE Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
- 101. IES Illuminating Engineering Society; www.ies.org.
- 102. IEST Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
- 103. IGMA Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; (see FGIA).
- 104. IGSHPA International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.org.
- 105. ILI Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.iliai.com.
- 106. Intertek Intertek Group; www.intertek.com.
- 107. ISA International Society of Automation (The); www.isa.org.
- 108. ISFA International Surface Fabricators Association; www.isfanow.org.
- 109. ISO International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
- 110. ITU International Telecommunication Union: www.itu.int.
- 111. KCMA Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
- 112. LPI Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
- 113. MBMA Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
- 114. MCA Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.
- 115. MFMA Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
- 116. MFMA Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
- 117. MHI Material Handling Industry; www.mhi.org.
- 118. MMPA Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; www.wmmpa.com.
- 119. MPI Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
- 120. MSS Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.; www.msshq.org.
- 121. NAAMM National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.

- 122. NACE NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); (see AMPP).
- 123. NADCA National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
- 124. NAIMA North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.insulationinstitute.org.
- 125. NALP National Association of Landscape Professionals; www.landscapeprofessionals.org.
- 126. NBGQA National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
- 127. NBI New Buildings Institute; www.newbuildings.org.
- 128. NCAA National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
- 129. NCMA National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
- 130. NEBB National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
- 131. NECA National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
- 132. NeLMA Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
- 133. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
- 134. NETA InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
- 135. NFHS National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
- 136. NFPA National Fire Protection Association; www.nfpa.org.
- 137. NFPA NFPA International; (see NFPA).
- 138. NFRC National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
- 139. NGA National Glass Association; www.glass.org.
- 140. NHLA National Hardwood Lumber Association; www.nhla.com.
- 141. NLGA National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
- 142. NOFMA National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (see NWFA).
- 143. NOMMA National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.
- 144. NRCA National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
- 145. NRMCA National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
- 146. NSF NSF International; www.nsf.org.
- 147. NSI Natural Stone Institute: www.naturalstoneinstitute.org.
- 148. NSPE National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
- 149. NSSGA National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
- 150. NTMA National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
- 151. NWFA National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
- 152. NWRA National Waste & Recycling Association; www.wasterecycling.org.
- 153. PCI Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
- 154. PDI Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
- 155. PLASA PLASA; www.plasa.org.
- 156. PLIB Pacific Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.plib.org.
- 157. PVCPA Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
- 158. RCSC Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
- 159. RFCI Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
- 160. RIS Redwood Inspection Service; (see WWPA).
- 161. SAE SAE International: www.sae.org.
- 162. SCTE Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
- 163. SDI Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
- 164. SDI Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoor.org.
- 165. SEFA Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); www.sefalabs.com.
- SEI/ASCE Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (see ASCE).
- 167. SIA Security Industry Association; www.securityindustry.org.
- 168. SJI Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
- 169. SMA Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
- 170. SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
- 171. SMPTE Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.

- 172. SPFA Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
- 173. SPIB Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
- 174. SPRI Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
- 175. SRCC Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
- 176. SSINA Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
- 177. SSPC SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; (see AMPP).
- 178. STI/SPFA Steel Tank Institute/Steel Plate Fabricators Association; www.steeltank.com.
- 179. SWI Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
- 180. SWPA Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
- 181. TCA Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
- 182. TCNA Tile Council of North America, Inc.; www.tcnatile.com.
- 183. TEMA Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.kbcdco.tema.org.
- 184. TIA Telecommunications Industry Association (The); www.tiaonline.org.
- 185. TMS The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
- 186. TPI Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
- 187. TPI Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrasssod.org.
- 188. TRI Tile Roofing Industry Alliance; www.tileroofing.org.
- 189. UL Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.org.
- 190. UL LLC UL LLC; www.ul.com.
- 191. USAV USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
- 192. USGBC U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
- 193. USITT United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
- 194. WA Wallcoverings Association; www.wallcoverings.org.
- 195. WCLIB West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; (see PLIB).
- 196. WCMA Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
- 197. WDMA Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
- 198. WI Woodwork Institute; www.woodworkinstitute.com.
- 199. WSRCA Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.
- 200. WWPA Western Wood Products Association: www.wwpa.org.
- C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. DIN Deutsches Institut fur Normung e.V.; www.din.de.
 - 2. IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
 - 3. ICC International Code Council: www.iccsafe.org.
 - ICC-ES ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.
- D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. CPSC U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
 - 2. DOC U.S. Department of Commerce; www.commerce.gov.
 - 3. DOD U.S. Department of Defense; www.defense.gov.
 - 4. DOE U.S. Department of Energy; <u>www.energy.gov</u>.
 - 5. DOJ U.S. Department of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov
 - 6. DOS U.S. Department of State; www.state.gov.
 - 7. EPA United States Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
 - 8. FAA Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
 - 9. GPO U.S. Government Publishing Office; www.gpo.gov.
 - 10. GSA U.S. General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - 11. HUD U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.

- 12. LBNL Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Energy Technologies Area; www.lbl.gov/.
- 13. NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
- 14. OSHA Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
- 15. TRB Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; www.trb.org.
- 16. USACE U.S. Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
- 17. USDA U.S. Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
- 18. USDA U.S. Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
- 19. USP U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; www.usp.org.
- 20. USPS United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.
- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. CFR Code of Federal Regulations; Available from U.S. Government Publishing Office; www.govinfo.gov.
 - 2. DOD U.S. Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/.
 - 3. DSCC Defense Supply Center Columbus; (see FS).
 - 4. FED-STD Federal Standard; (see FS).
 - 5. FS Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from U.S. General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; www.wbdg.org.
 - 6. MILSPEC Military Specification and Standards; (see DOD).
 - 7. USAB United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.
 - 8. USATBCB U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (see USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. BEARHFTI; California Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; (see BHGS).
 - 2. BHGS; State of California Bureau of Household Goods and Services; (Formerly: California Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation); www.bhgs.dca.ca.gov.
 - 3. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; www.oal.ca.gov/publications/ccr/.
 - 4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; www.cdph.ca.gov/Programs/CCDPHP/DEODC/EHLB/IAQ/Pages/Main-Page.aspx.
 - 5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; www.cpuc.ca.gov.
 - 6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; www.aqmd.gov.
 - 7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development; https://tfsweb.tamu.edu/.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

MARCH 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 014339 - MOCKUPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Integrated exterior mockups.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for quality assurance requirements for aesthetic and workmanship mockups specified in other Sections.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, and installers of major systems whose Work is included in integrated exterior mockups.
 - 2. Review locations and extent of mockups.
 - 3. Review testing procedures to be performed on mockups.
 - 4. Review and finalize schedule for mockups, and verify availability of materials, personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to complete mockups and testing and maintain schedule for the Work.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Build mockups to do the following:
 - 1. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
 - 2. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
 - 3. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
 - 4. Demonstrate acceptable coordination between components and systems.
 - 5. Perform preconstruction testing, such as window air- and water-leakage testing.
- B. Fabrication: Before fabricating or installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required. Use materials and installation methods as required for the Work.
 - 1. Build mockups of size indicated.

MOCKUPS 014339 - 1

- 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
- 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
- 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
- 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
- 6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

C. Notifications:

- Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
- 2. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be tested.
- 3. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
- D. Approval: Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting fabrication or construction of corresponding Work.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate schedule for construction of mockups, so construction, testing, and review of mockups do not impact Project schedule.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance:

- 1. Seismic Performance: Mockups and support structure to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- 2. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Mockup Testing Performance Requirements: Perform tests using design pressures and performance criteria indicated for assemblies and products that are specified in other Sections and incorporated into integrated exterior mockups.

2.2 INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

A. Construct integrated exterior mockups according to approved mockup Shop Drawings. Construct mockups to demonstrate constructability, coordination of trades, and sequencing of Work; and to

MOCKUPS 014339 - 2

014339 - 3

- ensure materials, components, subassemblies, assemblies, and interfaces integrate into a system complying with indicated performance and aesthetic requirements.
- B. Build integrated exterior mockups using installers and construction methods that will be used in completed construction.
- C. Use specified products that have been approved by Architect. Coordinate installation of materials and products specified in individual Specification Sections that include Work included in integrated exterior mockups.
- D. The Work of integrated exterior mockups includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Masonry veneer and accessories (masonry ties)
 - 2. Cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.
 - 3. Air and weather barriers.
 - 4. Thermal insulation.
 - 5. Through-wall flashing.
 - 6. Flashing and sheet metal trim.
 - 7. Joint sealants.
 - 8. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefront.
 - 9. Glazing, including storefront window assembly
 - 10. Brick lintel
 - 11. Mortar netting
 - 12. EIFS
 - 13. Eave Assembly include Fasica, Hi perf vent, Gutter, EIFS
- E. Photographic Documentation: Document construction of integrated exterior mockups with photographs in accordance with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Provide photographs showing details of interface of different materials and assemblies.
 - 1. Document testing procedures, including water leakage and other deficiencies. Photograph modifications to component interfaces intended to correct deficiencies.
- F. Provide and document modifications to construction details and interfaces between components and systems required to properly sequence the Work, or to pass performance testing requirements. Obtain Architect's approval for modifications.
- G. Retain approved mockups constructed in place. Incorporate fully into the Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

MOCKUPS

3.1 TESTING OF INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

- A. Integrated Exterior Mockup Testing Services: Perform the following tests in the following order:
 - Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, test areas designated by Architect in accordance with AAMA 501.2 for evidence of water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Water Penetration: Test in accordance with ASTM E1105 at a minimum uniform static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Mockup Testing Performance Requirements" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and verify no evidence of water

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

penetration.

- B. Integrated exterior mockup will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 014339

MOCKUPS 014339 - 4

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

1.2 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- C. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- D. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.
- B. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-Off Mats: Provide mats, minimum 36 by 60 inches.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

A. Field Offices:

- 1. Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
 - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

- B. HVAC Equipment: Until Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Water Service:

1. Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.

- D. Sanitary Facilities for Construction Personnel: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's new toilet facilities is not permitted.
- E. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
 - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- F. Conditions for Use of Permanent HVAC Systems: Prior to requesting authorization from the Owner for use of the permanent HVAC systems during construction, the following criteria shall be met at a minimum:
 - 1. Schedule the work in such a manner that provisions for electrical power, natural gas service, water, sewer and storm drainage utilities are fully functional and available to enable the HVAC systems to be operated as required to facilitate the installation of the Finishes Work.
 - 2. The permanent systems in the various building areas shall not be started until exterior doors and windows, or suitable temporary construction is in place and the building is relatively dust free. At a minimum, the floors shall be broom clean, and drywall finishing and paint spraying completed.
 - 3. The Warranty on all HVAC equipment shall be extended from start-up to one year past the date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. In lieu of providing a manufacturer's extended warranty, provide a service/replacement contract to extend the normal one year warranty period to a minimum of one year beyond the date of acceptance of the building by the Owner.
 - b. Extended warranties such as five year compressor warranties shall be extended beyond the period established by the actual start-up date of the equipment as defined herein.
 - 4. Comply with additional requirements specified in Division 23 Sections.
- G. Electric Power Service:
 - 1. Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
 - 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 - 2. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
 - 3. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course.
- C. Stabilized Construction Entrance: Provide temporary construction entrance/exit pad(s) consisting of 2-inch stone, 6-inches thick, in length as required, but not less than 50 feet, and 10 feet wide, minimum.
 - 1. Install filter fabric over the entire area prior to placing stone.
 - 2. Maintain the entrance in a condition that will prevent tracking or flowing of sediment onto public rights-of-way.
 - 3. Provide a water source adjacent to the construction entrance to remove sediment from vehicle wheels prior to entrance onto public rights-of-way.
- D. Parking: Provide parking for construction personnel within the limits of the project site.
- E. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
 - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 - 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.

H. Waste Disposal Facilities:

- 1. Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations.
- 2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
 - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
 - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

C. Stormwater Control:

- 1. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

D. Pest Control:

- 1. Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion.
- 2. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.

- 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- F. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- H. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
- I. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 - 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 - 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 - 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 - Do not install material that is wet.
 - 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 - 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.

- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
 - 1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 - 2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsumbased products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 - 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of This Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
- 2. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions after contract award.
- 3. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
- 4. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, inservice performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design

product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
 - 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
 - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
 - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
 - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
 - b. Model and serial number.
 - c. Capacity.
 - d. Speed.
 - e. Ratings.
 - 3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:

- 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
- 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
- 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
- 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

- 1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and
- 2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
- 3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
- 4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
- 5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
- 6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
- 7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
- 8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
 - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

- 1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."

- 2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
- Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
- 4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution if the product complies with requirements.
- 5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
- 6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution if the product complies with requirements.
- 7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
 - 1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
 - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 - 5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for a comparable product. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - 1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
 - 2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.
- D. Submittal Requirements, Single-Step Process: When acceptable to Architect, incorporate specified submittal requirements of individual Specification Section in combined submittal for comparable products. Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product and of individual submittal requirements will also satisfy other submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Progress cleaning.
 - 6. Starting and adjusting.
 - 7. Protection of installed construction.
 - 8. Correction of the Work.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
 - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
 - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affected by cutting and patching operations.
 - 2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- B. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grids, review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension

requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
- b. Contractor's personnel responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.
- 2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
- 3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
- 4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 - Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
 - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Air or smoke barriers.
 - d. Fire-suppression systems.
 - e. Plumbing piping systems.
 - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - g. Control systems.
 - h. Communication systems.
 - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - j. Electrical wiring systems.
 - k. Operating systems of special construction.
 - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Equipment supports.
 - d. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - e. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 - 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner

that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of inplace materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.
- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility or Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a professional engineer experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.

C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with

other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.

- 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
- 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
- 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.

6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

- F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 - 3. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
- G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 - Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris
 - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.

- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- F. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. List of incomplete items.
 - 4. Submittal of Project warranties.
 - 5. Final cleaning.

B. Related Requirements:

- Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
- 2. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting Final Completion construction photographic documentation.
- 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
- 4. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
- 5. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
 - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
 - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 - Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.

- 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
- 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
- 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
- 10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.
- E. Architect will make one inspection at Substantial Completion at the Architect's cost.
 - 1. For inspections in excess of the one, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for additional services required of the Architect and the Architect's consultants for these additional inspections.
 - 2. Architect will repeat inspection when requested and assured that the Work has been substantially completed.
 - 3. Results of the completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final acceptance.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
 - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 - Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect.
 - Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 - 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
 - 5. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

- 1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
- 2. For inspections in excess of the one, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner, for additional services required of the Architect and the Architect's consultants for these additional inspections.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor, listed by room or space number.
 - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 - 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
 - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect by email to Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - g. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 - h. Vacuum and mop concrete.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - I. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.

- p. Clean strainers.
- q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

3.2 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Product maintenance manuals.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Where operation and maintenance documentation includes information on installations by more than one factory-authorized service representative, assemble and coordinate information furnished by representatives and prepare manuals.
- B. Purge manuals prior to submitting to Architect to include only technical data related to in-place construction.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

- Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect by email to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
 - Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
 - Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
 - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Crossreference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 - 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.

- 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
- 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
- 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Architect.
 - 7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 - 8. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
 - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
 - 1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
 - 2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
 - 3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
 - 1. Type of emergency.
 - 2. Emergency instructions.
 - 3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
 - 1. Fire.
 - 2. Flood.
 - 3. Gas leak.
 - 4. Water leak.
 - Power failure.
 - 6. Water outage.
 - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 - 4. Equipment function.
 - 5. Operating characteristics.
 - 6. Limiting conditions.
 - 7. Performance curves.
 - 8. Engineering data and tests.
 - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Startup procedures.
 - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 - 5. Instructions on stopping.
 - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
 - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Product name and model number.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 - 4. Material and chemical composition.
 - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

- 1. Inspection procedures.
- 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
- 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
- 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
- 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
 - Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record specifications.
 - Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and as-built drawings.
 - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - 3) Architect will return annotated electronic files for possible revisions, organizing into sets, printing, binding and final submittal.
 - 4) Architect may request resubmittal of selected drawings for subsequent review.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Final Submittal to Owner: Submit one set record mylar transparencies and one copy of Record Drawings on compact disc in AutoCAD, latest version.
 - 2) Submit to Owner as part of Project Record Documents.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
 - 1. Submit to Owner as part of Project Record Documents.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written reportindicating items incorporated into Project Record Documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

1.3 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities, including relocated or abandoned within the entire disturbed area of the site for inclusion in the Master Campus File.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - I. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Transparencies: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up Record Prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected transparencies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.

- 1. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
- 2. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
- 3. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
 - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
 - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
 - 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 - 3. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

1.4 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

1.5 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
 - 1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

1.6 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit four copies within seven days of end of each training module.
 - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and address of videographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Date of video recording.

2. Transcript:

- a. Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
- b. Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.

3. At completion of training, submit complete training manuals for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 - 3. Review required content of instruction.
 - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:

- System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
- b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
- c. Operating standards.
- d. Regulatory requirements.
- e. Equipment function.
- f. Operating characteristics.
- g. Limiting conditions.
- h. Performance curves.
- 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - d. Product maintenance manuals.
 - e. Project Record Documents.
 - f. Identification systems.
 - g. Warranties and bonds.
 - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
- 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - I. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnostic instructions.

- b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
 - a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 - 2. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

1.9 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
 - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode.
 - 1. Submit video recordings on CD-ROM or thumb drive.
 - 2. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
 - 3. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:
 - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
 - b. Business address.
 - c. Business phone number.
 - d. Point of contact.
 - e. Email address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
 - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
 - Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
 - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
 - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
 - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 024060 - SITE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of site improvements, including curb and gutter, drives, etc.
 - 2. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning site utilities in place.
 - 3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

1.3 Definitions

- Remove: Remove and legally dispose of items except those indicated to be reinstalled, salvaged, or to remain the Owner's property.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Items indicated to be removed and salvaged remain the Owner's property. Remove, clean, and pack or crate items to protect against damage. Identify contents of containers and deliver to Owner's designated storage area.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Remove items indicated; clean, service, and otherwise prepare them for reuse; store and protect against damage. Reinstall items in locations indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during demolition. When permitted by the Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during demolition and then cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations.

1.4 Materials Ownership

A. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, demolished materials shall become the Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site with further disposition at the Contractor's option.

1.5 Submittals

- A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.
- B. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 - Identify and accurately locate capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.
- Landfill records for record purposes indicating receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

SITE DEMOLITION 024060 - 1

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 Examination

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of demolition required.
- C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.

2.2 Utility Services

- Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during demolition operations.
- B. The Contractor will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities serving structures to be demolished before start of demolition work, when requested by Contractor.
- C. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services serving structures to be demolished, if any.
 - 1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.

2.3 Preparation

- A. Drain, purge, or otherwise remove, collect, and dispose of chemicals, gases, explosives, acids, flammables, or other dangerous materials before proceeding with demolition operations.
- B. Conduct demolition operations and remove debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
- C. Conduct demolition operations to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain. Ensure safe passage of people around demolition area.
 - 1. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
 - 3. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
- D. Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of existing retaining walls, buildings, etc. to remain.
 - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.

2.4 Explosives

A. Explosives: Use of explosives will not be permitted.

2.5 Pollution Controls

A. Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit the spread of dust and dirt.

SITE DEMOLITION 024060 - 2

Comply with the latest edition of Alabama Handbook for Erosion Control and Stormwater Management on Construction Sites and Urban Areas.

- 1. Do not create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution, when using water.
- B. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.

2.6 Demolition

- A. Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction, as follows:
 - 1. Completely remove below-grade construction, including foundation walls and footings, storm drain, sanitary sewer, water distribution/fire protection, etc.
 - 2. Break up and remove below-grade concrete slabs, unless indicated to remain.
 - 3. Remove old debris such as trolley railings and ties, abandoned tanks, vaults, basements, etc.
- B. Filling Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from demolition of pavements, utilities, basements, coal shutes, etc., with soil materials according to requirements specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork", and/or stone as shown in the Construction Plans.
- C. Damages: Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by demolition operations.

2.7 Disposal Of Demolished Materials

- A. General: Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them off site.

END OF SECTION 024060

SITE DEMOLITION 024060 - 3

SECTION 03300 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Suspended slabs.
 - 5. Building walls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer ,manufacturer and testing agency.
- F. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:

- Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- G. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
 - 4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 - Waterstops.
 - 6. Curing compounds.
 - 7. Floor and slab treatments.
 - 8. Bonding agents.
 - 9. Adhesives.
 - 10. Vapor retarders.
 - 11. Semirigid joint filler.
 - 12. Joint-filler strips.
 - 13. Repair materials.
- H. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- I. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel."
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
- E. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
 - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
- b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
- c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
- d. Concrete subcontractor.
- 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers, forms and form removal limitations, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
- B. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- C. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, grey. Supplement with the following:
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class [C] [F].
 - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.
- B. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.

- 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
- 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- C. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucon CIA.
 - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI.
 - d. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete CNI.
 - e. Sika Corporation; Sika CNI.
- D. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Catexol 1000CI.
 - b. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN2.
 - c. Cortec Corporation; MCI 2000.
 - d. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI-S.
 - e. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete 222+.
 - f. Sika Corporation; FerroGard-901.

2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Greenstreak.
 - b. Progress Unlimited, Inc.
 - c. Williams Products, Inc.
 - 2. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb.
 - 3. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick; nontapered.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class C, or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Fortifiber Corporation; Moistop Plus.
 - b. Raven Industries Inc.; Dura Skrim 6.
 - c. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn Type-65.
 - d. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap, 10 mils.

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
 - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
 - j. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; Confilm.
 - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
 - I. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
 - m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.

- n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
- o. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Finishing Aid.
- p. Unitex; Pro-Film.
- q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Monofilm ER.
- r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Aqua Resin Cure.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals. Inc.: L&M Cure R.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
 - k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
 - I. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Resi-Chem Clear Cure.
 - m. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
 - n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
 - o. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Maxcure Resin Clear.
 - p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Cure and Seal WB.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Agua Cure VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.

- k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure.
- I. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 150E.
- m. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
- n. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB 150.
- o. Unitex; Hydro Seal.
- p. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Hydrasheen 15 percent
- q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 309.
- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
 - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; High Seal.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Diamond Clear VOX.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureCure Emulsion.
 - g. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
 - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
 - i. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; MasterKure-N-Seal VOC.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
 - k. Metalcrete Industries: Metcure 0800.
 - I. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 200E.
 - m. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal.
 - n. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
 - o. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB STD.
 - p. Unitex; Hydro Seal 18.
 - q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25
 - r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 0800.
- H. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315.
 - b. ChemMasters; Spray-Cure & Seal Plus.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Cure and Seal (J-22UV).
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25.
 - g. Lambert Corporation; UV Super Seal.
 - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal Plus.
 - i. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; CS-309/30.
 - j. Metalcrete Industries; Seal N Kure 0.
 - k. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex: Kure-N-Seal 5.
 - I. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal 300.
 - m. Unitex; Solvent Seal 1315.
 - n. US Mix Products Company; US Spec CS-25

- o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex AC 1315
- Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315 WB.
 - b. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315 WB.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear VOX.
 - e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25 Emulsion.
 - f. Lambert Corporation; UV Safe Seal.
 - g. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal WB Plus.
 - h. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
 - i. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
 - j. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 31 Percent E.
 - k. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal WB 300.
 - I. Unitex; Hydro Seal 25.
 - m. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25.
 - n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon Starseal 1315.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- E. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- F. Acoustic Joint Filler: Resilient non-extruding premolded bituminous impregnated, as specific in Section 03300 Concrete

2.11 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 - 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
 - 4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
 - 5. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
 - 6. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
 - 7. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
- Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- Use high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
- 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: as indicated at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: as indicated.
 - 3. Slump Limit: as indicated
 - 4. Air Content: as indicated
- B. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: as indicated at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: as indicated.
 - 3. Slump Limit: as indicated
 - 4. Air Content: as indicated
- C. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: as indicated at 28 days.
 - 2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: as indicated.
 - 3. Slump Limit: as indicated.
 - 4. Air Content: as indicated
 - 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
- D. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: as indicated at 28 days.
 - 2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: as indicated.
 - 3. Slump Limit: as indicated.
 - 4. Air Content: as indicated
 - 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.14 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.15 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

- 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
 - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by formremoval operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 - 3. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 - 4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 5. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 - 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

3.7 ACOUSTIC ISOLATION JOINTS

- 1. Joints shall be installed where indicated on plans and are detailed as follows:
- 2. General: Acoustical joints in concrete walls, slabs, and columns shall be a clear 2 inch gap between faces of adjacent concrete structures. The intent is to interrupt transmission vibration through the structure. Two layers of 1 inch polystyrene shall be installed as permanent form work between the two concrete structures; butt joints between ends of polystyrene boards shall be staggered so as to prevent concrete bridging the joints. Polystyrene strip width shall be 2 inches greater that the depth of the joint; strip shall extend 1 inch to each side of the faces of the concrete during pouring and curing to avoid concrete bridging the joints. All joints in the polystyrene shall be staggered and covered with duct tape. After installation, cover isolation joints with duct tape to prevent debris from accumulating in the joint until the sealant or joint cover is installed. No mortar, masonry, concrete, steel framing, rebar, wood, or other rigid material shall bridge across an acoustical joint.
- 3. Additional instructions for joints in grade slabs: prior to pouring the second side of the joint, place a polyethylene sheet along the vertical face of the joint approximately 12 inches under the slab to prevent concrete seepage under the joint. After curing, trim back excess joint filler. Cover joint with duct tape to prevent debris from accumulating in the joint until the sealant or join cover is installed.
- 4. Additional instructions for joints in suspended slabs: When a joint is cast between two upper level slabs or between an upper level slab and a beam or column, follow the above general measures and then the following: immediately after the work is removed, inspect the joint from above and below for bridging, and chip out all excess concrete. Where the slab will abut a wall or steel structure (to be installed later), dimension the slab to leave a 2 inch gap when the wall is built. After the wall or beam is in place pack the 2 inch joint with fiberglass and seal both sides with appropriate sealant on foam backer rod.
- 5. Slab on metal deck: Leave a 1 inch clear gap between the steel edge and adjacent construction. Pack the joint with fiberglass and sealed both sides with appropriate sealant on backer rod.

3.8 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during

progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
 - Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:

- 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
- 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process
 - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
 - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in 1 direction.
 - Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
 - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-filmfinish coating system.
 - 2. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot- long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
 - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
- G. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. of dampened slip-resistive aggregate over surface in 1 or 2 applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
 - 2. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
 - 3. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place

construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.

- c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project..
- 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
- 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.14 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

- Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Inspections:

- 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
- 2. Headed bolts and studs.
- Verification of use of required design mixture.
- 4. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
- 5. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
- Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
 - 7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
 - 8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
 - 9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
 - 10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

- 11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

 Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate dos not comply
- 12. with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 03300

SECTION 033543 - POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section specifies bonded abrasive polished concrete including, reinforcement accessories, concrete materials, concrete mixture design, placement procedures, protection during construction prior to polishing, and finishes, including the following:
 - 1. Furnish all labor, material, equipment and services necessary for the dry diamond grinding and polishing of concrete floors in accordance with the HTC Superfloor™ concept.
 - 2. Applying densifying impregnator/sealer and polishing to specified sheen level and aggregate exposure.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. See structural drawings for concrete not designated as polished concrete.
- 2. See structural drawings for formwork material, fabrication, installation requirements for steel reinforcement, and field quality control.
 - a. Note: Standard installation practices alone for regular concrete is not acceptable for polished concrete. Comply with special provisions of this Section.
- 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants not otherwise specified in this Section.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site prior to placing concrete for areas scheduled for polishing.
 - 1. Minimum Agenda: Polisher shall demonstrate understanding of work required by reviewing and discussing procedures for but not limited to the following:
 - a. Tour field mock-up and representative areas of required work, discuss and evaluate for compliance with Contract Documents, including substrate conditions, surface preparations, sequence of procedures, and other preparatory work performed by other installers.
 - b. Review procedures, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1) Contract Document requirements.
 - 2) Approved submittals and field mock-up.
 - 3) Specific concrete mix design.
 - 4) Specified curing methods and procedures.
 - 5) Projected 3, 10, and 28 day compressive strength test results and project phasing.
 - 6) Protection of concrete substrate during construction and prior to polishing.
 - 7) Project phasing and scheduling for each step of grinding, honing and polishing operations, including liquid applied products.

- 8) Proper disposal of concrete slurry and/or concrete dust.
- 9) Protecting polished concrete floors after polishing work is complete.
- c. Reports: Record discussions, including decisions and agreements reached, and furnish copy of record to each party attending.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include product data for each grinding machine, grinding heads, and dust extraction system.
 - 2. Sealer and joint sealants.
 - 3. Manufacturer's application instructions.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Placement schedule.
- D. Samples: For each polished concrete finish.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For installers, applicators, and finishers.
 - 1. For products required to be installed by workers approved by product manufacturers, include letters of acceptance by product manufacturers certifying that installers are approved to apply their products.
- B. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.
- C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Vapor retarders.
 - 3. Repair materials.
 - 4. Liquid floor treatments.
- D. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance procedures.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Concrete Polishing Association of America (CPAA).

- B. National Floor Safety Institute/American National Standards Institute (NFSI/ANSI) B101.1 Test Method for Measuring Wet SCOF of Common Hard-Surface Floor Materials.
- C. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- D. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- E. Polisher Qualifications: Company experienced in performing specified work similar in design, products, and extent to scope of this Project; with a record of successful in-service performance; and with sufficient production capability, facilities, and personnel to produce specified work.
 - 1. Supervision: Maintain competent supervisor who is at Project during times specified work is in progress, and is currently certified as Craftsman Level I or higher by CPAA.
- F. Certified Applicators: Installer/applicator certified by concrete finish equipment and chemical manufacturer. Provide adequate number of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary craft.
 - 1. Provide project names, addresses, contact names, phone numbers of at least three projects of similar scope completed by the installer.
- G. Walkway Auditor: Certified by CPAA or NFSI to test bonded abrasive polished concrete floors for dynamic and static coefficient of friction according to ANSI B101.1 and B101.3.
 - 1. ANSI B101.1 Static Coefficient of Friction Achieve a minimum of 0.42 for level floor surfaces.
 - ANSI B101.3 Dynamic Coefficient of Friction Achieve a minimum of 0.35 for level floor surfaces.
- H. Mockups: Before casting concrete, build mockup to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship. Build mockup to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Reserve 100 square feet in location adjacent to floor that will be polished, but will be covered with another finish material.
 - 2. Mockup floor shall be placed on the same day, using the same mix, as the floors to receive polish.
 - 3. Placement and finishing work shall be performed by same personnel as will place and finish concrete for Project.
 - 4. Test aggregate used in concrete mix, either by prior experience or by polishing cured mockup, to ensure it will accept polish.
 - 5. Perform grinding, honing, and polishing work as scheduled for Project using same personnel as will perform work for Project.
 - 6. Protect mockup as specified below.
 - 7. Approved mockup shall not become part of the completed Work as it will be covered by another finish material.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection: Protect areas to receive polished concrete finish at all times during construction to prevent oils, dirt, metal, excessive water and other potentially damaging materials from affecting the finished concrete surface. Protection measures listed below shall begin immediately after the concrete slab is poured:
 - 1. Prohibit use of markers, spray paint, and soapstone.
 - 2. Prohibit application of liquid membrane film forming curing compounds.
 - 3. Provide diapers on all hydraulic powered equipment to avoid staining of the concrete.
 - 4. Prohibit all vehicle parking on the finish slab area. If necessary to complete their scope of work, place drop cloths under vehicles at all times.
 - 5. Do not allow pipe cutting machine on the finish floor slab.
 - 6. Do not place steel on the finish slab to avoid rusting.
 - 7. Acids and acidic detergents shall not come in contact with slab.
 - 8. Painters shall use drop cloths on the concrete. Immediately remove paint that gets on the concrete.
 - 9. Inform all trades that the slab must be protected at all times.
- B. Environmental Limitations for Chemicals: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer.
 - 1. During hot weather, cool chemical components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting.
 - 2. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.
- C. Application Time: Minimum 21 days prior to fixture and trim installation.
- D. Close finish concrete area to traffic during finish floor application and after application, for the time as recommended by installer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 302.1R, "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction."

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Material:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, gray.

- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 1N coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse Aggregate Size: 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Gradation: Uniformly graded.
- D. Normal-Weight Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33 or ASTM C 144, manufactured limestone sand, from same source for entire Project.
- E. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M except free of wash water from mixer washout operations.
- F. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.

2.3 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces to protect against abrasion, dusting, and absorption of liquids.
- B. Polish Guard: Lithium silicate sealer, hardener, and densifier similar to Consolideck LS Guard by ProSoCo.

2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil Class A.
- B. Joint Sealants: Two-part polyurea control joint filler in colors to be selected by Architect.
 - 1. QuikJoint 200 by The Euclid Chemical Company.
 - 2. HT-PE85 Flexible Control Joint Sealer by Hi-Tech Systems.
- C. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- D. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- E. Protective Cover: Multi-ply, textured membrane laminated with a nonwoven polypropylene geotextile.

1. Product: Inteplast VBC-90 by Inteplast Group, Ltd.

2.5 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. Proportion concrete mixtures for one cubic yard of polished concrete as follows:
 - 1. Portland Cement: 564 lbs.
 - 2. Course Aggregate: 1,750 lbs.
 - 3. Fine Aggregate: 1,493 lbs.
 - 4. Water: 32 gallons.
 - 5. Air Content: No air entrained.
 - 6. Water Reducer: 45.12 oz.
- B. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3500 psi for slabs on grade.
 - 1. Slump Limit: 4-1/2 to 5-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.

2.6 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and furnish batch ticket information.
 - Clean equipment used to mix and deliver concrete to prevent contamination from other concrete
 - 2. Maintain concrete temperature below 85 degrees. Keep concrete as cool and moist for as long as possible. In essence, decrease rate of hydration and drying to minimize cracking.
 - 3. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
 - 4. Use one source for cement and aggregates throughout the job. Monitor and control incoming material consistency. Do not use calcium chloride-based admixtures. Non-chloride admixtures may be used.

2.7 POLISHING EQUIPMENT

- A. Basis-of-Design: HTC SuperFloor™, manufactured by HTC LLC.
- B. Floor Grinder: 3 or 4 head counter rotating variable speed grinder with at least 600 pounds down pressure.
- C. Dust Extraction System: Pre-separator, and squeegee attachments with minimum flow rating of 322 cubic feet per minute such as the HTC 75D.
- D. Grinding Heads:
 - 1. HTC Superfloor™ Metal bonded 16, 25, 40, 80, 150 and/or 300 grits.
 - 2. HTC Superfloor™Resin bonded, phenolic diamonds, 100, 200, 400, 800, 1500 and 3000 grits.
- E. Grinding Pads for Edges:

- 1. 40, 60, and 120 grits.
- 2. 100, 200,400, 800, 1500 and 3000 grits.
- F. Hand Grinder with dust extraction attachment and pads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.2 REINFORCEMENT AND INSERTS

A. General: Comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for fabricating and installing steel reinforcement.

3.3 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Comply with ACI 301 for measuring, batching, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously between construction joints. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

3.4 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS FOR SUBSEQUENT POLISHED FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
 - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces that will be polished.
 - 2. Take care to not over trowel the concrete surface so aggregate will not be pushed down too deep. The aggregate must remain close to the surface to be polished.
 - 3. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35.

3.5 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

3.6 PREPARATION FOR POLISHING CONCRETE

- A. Examine and approve concrete substrate with installer for conditions affecting performance of finish. Correct conditions that are found to be out of compliance with the requirements of this Section. Repairs are not acceptable unless specifically approved on a case-by-case basis by the Architect.
- B. Verify that base slab meets floor flatness and floor levelness requirements.
- C. Clean floor of materials and debris.
- D. Protect adjacent surfaces as required to prevent damage by the concrete polishing procedure.
- E. Ensure floor has cured a minimum of 28 days prior to polishing.
- F. Concrete Substrate Tests: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Alkalinity: Perform tests prior to installing sealer as recommended by sealer manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 8 or more than 10 pH.
 - 3. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to resilient sheet flooring manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation of liquids only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 5 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation of liquids only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install construction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
- B. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades that have a triangular arbor configuration. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

3.8 POLISHING AND FINISHING CONCRETE

- A. Polished Concrete Finish: Match approved mockup.
- B. Maintain uniformity of special finishes over construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Grind the concrete floor to within 1/4 inch of walls with 16, 25, 40 and 80 grit removing construction debris, floor slab imperfections and until there is a uniform scratch pattern and desired concrete aggregate exposure is achieved. Vacuum the floor thoroughly using a squeegee vacuum attachment.
- D. Apply densifying impregnator undiluted at approximately 200 square feet per gallon using a stiff, long bristled broom. Cover the entire work area liberally and allow to sit for 10 minutes. Apply again to areas where the densifying impregnator has soaked in and allow to sit for an additional 30 minutes. Squeegee excess material off the floor. Allow 12 to 24 hours for full cure.
- E. Grind the floor to within 1/4 inch of walls with metal bonded diamond grits of 150 and/or 300, grinding 90 degrees from each previous grind and removing all the scratches from the previous grit. Vacuum the floor thoroughly after each grind, using a squeegee vacuum attachment.
- F. Polish the floor, to desired sheen level, with phenolic resin bonded diamond grits of 100, 200, 400, and 800, removing all scratches from the previous grit. After each polish, clean the floor thoroughly using clean water and an autoscrubber or a mop and a wet vacuum.
 - 1. Aggregate Exposure Class B Fine / Sand Aggregate Finish: Remove not more than 1/16 inch of concrete surface by grinding and polishing.
 - 2. Sheen Level: Level 2 Semi-polished; medium reflective sheen.
- G. Apply a single coat of polish guard to final polished concrete surfaces using a low pressure sprayer. Apply sufficient material to wet the surface without producing puddles. Use a clean soft-bristle push broom to spread the product and ensure uniform wetting.
- H. Allow treated surfaces to dry. Remove any dried powder residue using a stiff broom, power sweeper, or floor-scrubbing machine.

3.9 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semi rigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. General: Comply with concrete notes on the structural drawings for field quality-control requirements, and the following:
 - Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 24 hours of finishing.
- B. Field Testing: Engage a qualified walkway auditor to perform field testing to determine if polished concrete floor finish complies with specified coefficient of friction.
- C. Measure gloss rating using Horbia 320 gloss meter; re-polish if required to achieve specified gloss rating.

3.11 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair and cure damaged finished surfaces of polished concrete when approved by Architect. Match repairs to color, texture, and uniformity of surrounding surfaces and to repairs on approved mockups.
 - 1. Remove and replace polished concrete that cannot be repaired and cured to Architect's approval.
- B. Protect polished concrete from staining, laitance, and contamination during remainder of construction period.

3.12 MAINTENANCE DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Maintenance Program: Prepare a written plan for maintenance of the polished concrete, including each phase or process, protection of surrounding materials during operations, and control of debris and runoff during the Work. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the Work.
- B. Review the maintenance procedures with Owner's maintenance staff, including periodic care requirements, regular cleaning, and application of sealers when necessary.
- C. Provide a minimum two hour demonstration and training of Owner's maintenance staff in the proper purchase of maintenance materials, application, and use of the polishing equipment.

END OF SECTION 033543

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Concrete masonry units.
- 2. Mortar and grout materials.
- Reinforcement.
- 4. Ties and anchors.
- 5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
- 6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMUs: Concrete masonry units.
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 - 3. Mortar admixtures.
 - 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

- 6. Reinforcing bars.
- 7. Joint reinforcement.
- 8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
 - 1. Note: Masonry cement mortar is not allowed on this project for reinforced masonry.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
 - 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

- C. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners in exposed areas, except first course above concrete slab where resilient wall base is scheduled and top course below suspended acoustical ceilings.

D. Building Lintels:

- Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.
 - a. Knockout blocks will not be acceptable.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Standard CMUs: Load-bearing ASTM C90 and Non-load-bearing ASTM C129.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Lightweight.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- B. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
- C. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- D. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A 951/A 951M.

- 1. Interior Walls: Mill- galvanized, carbon steel.
- 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
- 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
- Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
- 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
- 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
- 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least 1-1/2 inches into masonry but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 - 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
- C. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch- thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch- diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- D. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches wide by 1/4 inch thick by 24 inches long, with ends turned up 2 inches or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTMA 153/A153M.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene or urethane.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

2.9 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
 - 4. Where grout cells are less than 4 inches in diameter, fine grout shall be used.

2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Buffered Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
 - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
 - c. ProSoCo, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.2 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
 - 3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.

C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 3. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- C. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

3.6 CONTROL JOINTS

- A. General: Install control joint materials in CMUs as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

3.7 LINTELS

- A. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 16 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level B in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.10 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 3. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.11 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

SECTION 042613 - MASONRY VENEER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Brick.
- 2. Calcium silicate masonry units.
- 3. Mortar materials.
- 4. Ties and anchors.
- 5. Embedded flashing.
- 6. Accessories.
- 7. Mortar mixes.

B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

- 1. Cast-stone trim in masonry veneer.
- 2. Steel lintels in masonry veneer.

C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 014339 "Mockups" for integrated exterior mockup requirements.
- 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel lintels for brick masonry.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Clay face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
 - 2. Architectural Cast Stone Masonry Units
 - 3. Calcium silicate masonry units.
 - 4. Pigmented mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
 - 5. Colored mortar.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.

- a. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
- 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
- 3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- B. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.5 MOCKUPS

- A. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
 - 1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness. This is in addition to any full wall mockup requirements specified in other sections.
 - 2. Build sample panels facing south.
 - 3. Clean exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
 - 4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units.
 - 6. Allow for a minimum of 5 sample panels
- B. Wall Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, to set quality standards for materials and execution, and to set quality standards for installation. See Section 014339 "Mockups" for additional construction requirements for integrated exterior mockups.
 - 1. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 12 feet long by 10 feet high by full thickness, including accessories.
 - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
 - b. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
 - c. Include backup wall construction including all components and accessories.
 - 2. Clean one-half of exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
 - 3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 5. Notify Architect one week in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 6. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of veneer, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down face of veneer, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain exposed masonry units, cementitious mortar components, and mortar aggregate from single source producer or manufacturer.
- B. For exposed masonry units and cementitious mortar components, obtain each color and grade from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such

defects will be exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.

2.3 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
 - 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 - 2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
 - 3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
 - 4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216.
 - 1. Grade: SW.
 - 2. Type: FBS.
 - Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67
 - 4. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
 - 5. Size (Actual Dimensions): Queen, 3 inches wide by 2-3/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
 - 6. Application: Use where brick is exposed unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect.
 - 8. Design intent is to match the adjacent buildings

2.4 ARCHITECTURAL CAST STONE UNITS (ASV)

- Cast Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C1364 Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone.
- 2. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Reading Rock Inc.; RockCast product line.
- 3. Unit Compressive Strength: Minimum average compressive strength of 6,500 psi after 28 days.
- 4. Absorption: Maximum 6.0 percent by weight, per ASTM C1194 and C1195.
- 5. Pattern and Texture: Match RockCast Renaissance line; combination of smooth and textured finishes, as shown on the Drawings. Design intent is to match adjacent buildings
- 6. Unit Size: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

2.5 CALCIUM SILICATE MASONRY UNITS (CSMU)

- A. Calcium Silicate Masonry Units: ASTM C 73; Grade SW.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Arriscraft International Inc.; Georgia plant.
 - 2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 6600 psi.
 - 3. Absorption: 8.8 percent, to ASTM C97.
 - 4. Pattern and Texture: Renaissance stone; smooth and textured, as shown on the drawings.
 - 5. Unit Size: As indicated on the Drawings.
 - 6. Color: As selected by Architect.

2.6 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
- B. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
 - Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
 - 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of mortar cement by weight.
- C. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 - For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
- D. Water: Potable.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 - 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
- C. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
 - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
 - 2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.075-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
 - 3. Fabricate wire ties from 0.187-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Masonry-Veneer Anchors for CMU Backup: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw designed to receive wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of CMU.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; 2-Seal Tie.
 - 5. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors for Metal Studs: Wire tie and a gasketed sheet metal anchor section, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 6 inches long, stamped into

center to provide a slot between strap and base for inserting wire tie. Self-adhering, modified bituminous gasket fits behind anchor plate and extends beyond pronged legs.

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; DW-10-X.
 - 2) Wire-Bond; 1004X, Type III X.
- 6. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a corrosion-resistant, self-drilling, eye-screw designed to receive wire tie. Eye-screw has spacer that seats directly against framing and is same thickness as sheathing and has gasketed washer head that covers hole in sheathing.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.; Pos-I-Tie.
 - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Thermal 2-Seal Anchor.
 - 3) Wire-Bond; SureTie.
- 7. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads; either made from Type 410 stainless steel or made with a carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick.
 - 2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
 - 3. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following, at Contractor's option, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Stainless-Steel Laminated Flashing: Type 304 stainless steel core with polymer fabric laminated to one stainless steel face with non-asphalt adhesive.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - 1) York Manufacturing, Inc; Multi-Flash SS.
 - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. copper sheet bonded between two layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Copper Fabric Flashing.
 - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Copper Fabric Flashing.

- 3) York Manufacturing, Inc; Multi-Flash 500.
- 3. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) DuPont; Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Flex-Flash.
 - 3) Hyload, Inc.; Hyload Cloaked Flashing System.
 - 4) Mortar Net Solutions; Total Flash.
 - b. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch-thick coating of adhesive.
 - c. Self-Adhesive Sheet with Drip Edge: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch- thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive. Where flashing extends to face of masonry, rubberized-asphalt coating is held back approximately 1-1/2 inches from edge.
 - 1) Color: Gray.
 - d. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
 - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
 - 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
 - 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.
- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
 - 1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- F. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless steel bars, 1 by 1/8 inch thick, with sealant trays, predrilled at 8-inch centers and stainless steel screw anchors.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Weep/Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
- B. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.

- 1. Mortar Deflector: Strips, 1 inch and 10 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
 - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Mortar Trap.
 - 3) Mortar Net Solutions; Mortar Net with Insect Barrier.
 - 4) York Manufacturing, Inc; Weep-Net.
- C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. EaCo Chem, Inc.; NMD 80 New Masonry Detergent.
 - 2. Note: Chemical applicator must be trained and use equipment approved by chemical manufacturer.

2.10 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Use Type N unless another type is indicated.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of mortar cement by weight.
 - 2. Mix to match Architect's sample.
 - 3. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

- B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.2 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
 - 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints.
 - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and
 - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 25 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches, around perimeter.
- B. Provide not less than 2 inches of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of insulation.
 - 1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

3.6 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form expansion joints as follows:
 - 1. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
 - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.7 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide silicone sealant between toe of lintel and face of brick to match mortar color.

3.8 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches. Mechanically fasten top of flashing securely by a termination bar with fasteners at 8 inches on center.
 - 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
 - 4. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
- C. Install weep holes in veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
 - 1. Use specified weep/vent products to form weep holes.
 - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.
- E. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes immediately below shelf angles and at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products to form vents.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.

3.10 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 4. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042613

SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Trim units.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 4 inches square in size.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material test reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by CSI or APA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST STONE UNITS

- A. Available Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, fabricators offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Arriscast by Arriscraft.
 - 2. Castone; Opelika, AL.
 - 3. Columbia Precast; Columbia, TN.
 - 4. Corbelstone; Flowery Branch, GA.
 - 5. Miller Mize Precast Inc.; Columbus, GA.
 - 6. Reading Rock, Inc.
- B. Cast Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C1364.

- 1. Units shall be manufactured using the manufacturer's selected method.
- C. Integral Water Repellent Admixture:
 - Integral water repellents and other chemicals, in accordance with applicable ASTM standards, unless no ASTM standard exists.
 - 2. Previously established as suitable for use in concrete by proven field performance or through laboratory testing, and as approved by the Architect.
- D. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
 - 3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cure Units as Follows:
 - 1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
 - 2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
 - b. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
- F. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.
- G. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Section 042613 "Masonry Veneer" for mortar mixes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Section 042613 "Masonry Veneer."
- B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
- C. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- E. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
 - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone to comply with Section 042613 "Masonry Veneer."

END OF SECTION 047200

SECTION 05120 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Structural steel.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
 - 2. Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for additional requirements for architecturally exposed structural steel.
 - 3. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
 - 4. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
 - 5. Section 055100 "Metal Stairs."
 - 6. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for surface-preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
 - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
 - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.

E. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
 - 2. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
- B. Construction: Braced frame.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment drawings.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
 - 5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer fabricator.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 3. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 4. Shear stud connectors.
 - 5. Shop primers.

- 6. Nonshrink grout.
- F. Source quality-control reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
 - Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
 - 3. AISC 360.
 - RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Channels, Angles-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50.
- F. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.
- G. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
 - 2. Finish: Black.
- I. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.
- J. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.
- K. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A 563, Grade DH,

heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.

- 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating, baked epoxy-coated finish.
- D. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating.
- E. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- F. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- G. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- H. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- I. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
- J. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.
- K. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.
- L. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. <u>Basis-of-Design Product</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amscot Structural Products Corp.
 - b. Fluorocarbon Company Limited.
 - c. R.J. Watson Bridge & Structural Engineered Systems.
 - d. Seismic Energy Products, L.P.
- 3. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE.
- 4. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.03.
- 5. Design Load: Not less than 2,000 psi.
- 6. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Primer: Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.
- D. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25 BCS, Type I, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.
- E. Primer: SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
- F. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.

- 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
- 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
- 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
- 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
- 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
 - 5. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
 - SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
 - 8. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
 - 9. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 - 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- D. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

2.8 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - 2. Galvanize lintels shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

- 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-inplace concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.

3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

3.5 PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

March 31,2025 BWA Project No. 24001

C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 05310 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Noncomposite form deck.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
 - 2. Section 035216 "Lightweight Insulating Concrete" for lightweight insulating concrete fill over steel deck.
 - 3. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
 - 4. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
 - Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.
 - 6. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
 - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Acoustical roof deck.

- D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."
- C. Electrical Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor-deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.
- D. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
 - 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

2.2 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. <u>Manufacturers</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. <u>Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.</u>

- 2. CMC Joist & Deck.
- 3. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
- 4. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
- B. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 - 1. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 minimum.
 - 2. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 minimum, with top and underside surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating.
 - 4. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Profile Depth: 9/16 inch.
 - 6. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0239 inch.
 - 7. Span Condition: As indicated.
 - 8. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

- I. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0747 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.
- J. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- K. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- L. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- M. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
 - 1. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch. nominal.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.
 - 3. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
 - 4. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

- March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
 - 1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
 - 2. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Repair Painting: Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Load-bearing wall framing.
- 2. Floor joist framing.
- 3. Soffit framing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for standard, interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing, with height limitations and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Cold-formed steel framing materials.
 - 2. Load-bearing wall framing.
 - 3. Floor joist framing.
 - 4. Soffit framing.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
- 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Expansion anchors.
 - 2. Power-actuated anchors.

Mechanical fasteners.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- B. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association, or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.
 - 2. ClarkDietrich.
 - 3. Craco Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 4. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
 - 5. Marino\WARE.
 - 6. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
 - 7. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
 - 8. Steel Structural Systems.
 - 9. Super Stud Building Products Inc.
 - 10. Telling Industries.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.

- b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft..
- c. Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads.
- d. Soffit Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing complies AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8 for conditions indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating (Interior): G60, A60, AZ50, or GF30.
 - 3. Coating (Exterior): G90 or equivalent.

2.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0677 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 - 3. Section Properties: Refer to structural drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0677 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0677 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 - 3. Section Properties: Refer to structural drawings.

2.5 FLOOR JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel joists, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 2 inches, minimum.
 - 3. Section Properties: Per structural design.

- B. Steel Joist Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel joist track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 2 inches, minimum.

2.6 SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Exterior Soffit Frame: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches, minimum.
 - 3. Section Properties: Per structural design.

2.7 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Anchor clips.
 - 4. End clips.
 - 5. Backer plates.

2.8 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MIL-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.
- B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M, and with a fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

- C. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density, multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as framing members supported by shims.
- D. Sill Sealer Gasket: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, conditions, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Install load-bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- B. Install sill sealer gasket at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners, install according to Shop Drawings, and comply with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- D. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

- E. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- F. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 - 1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch between the end of wall framing member and the web of track.
 - 1. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
 - 2. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 - 2. Install tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- F. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- G. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
- H. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges; terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.

 Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wallframing system.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF JOIST FRAMING

- A. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
 - 1. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
- C. Space joists not more than 2 inches from abutting walls, and as follows:
 - 1. Joist Spacing: As indicated.
- D. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
- E. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as indicated on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
- F. Install bridging at intervals indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
 - 1. Bridging: Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.
- G. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
- H. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.7 REPAIRS

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Metal bollards.
 - 2. Metal downspout boots.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
 - Loose steel lintels.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042613 "Masonry Veneer" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Shop primers.
 - Metal downspout boots.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
 - 1. Steel lintels.
 - 2. Metal bollards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- F. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- G. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- H. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

2.5 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- thick steel domed cap, welded continuous around pipe and ground smooth.
 - Galvanize steel bollards.
- B. Prime steel bollards with primer specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

2.6 METAL DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

- A. Basis-of-Design: J.R. Hoe & Sons Inc., Downspout Boots; O-6636D.
 - 1. Finish: Powder coated in color to be selected by Architect.

- B. Provide downspout boots made from cast iron in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.
 - 1. Outlet: Offset, 6.875 inch, vertical discharge into pipe.
 - 2. Cleanout: 3 by 4 inches, with neoprene gasket in vertical riser.
 - 3. Provide anchors for attaching units to masonry walls.

2.7 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to one-twelfth of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

- A. Anchor metal downspout boots to concrete or masonry construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Secure downspouts terminations to downspouts and substrate per manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wood products.
- 2. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 3. Power-driven fasteners.
 - 4. Post-installed anchors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content:

- 1. Boards: 19 percent.
- 2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED LUMBER

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fireretardant-treated lumber by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - 1. Blocking.
 - Nailers.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 and ICC-ES AC193 as appropriate for the substrate.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- C. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

- D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall sheathing.
- 2. Roof sheathing.
- 3. Subflooring.
- 4. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Wall sheathing.
- 2. Roof sheathing.
- 3. Subflooring.
- 4. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment materials.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5516.
 - 4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground. Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 - Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber plywood shall be tested according to ASTM D5516 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D6305. Span ratings after treatment shall be not less than span ratings specified.
- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat plywood indicated on Drawings.

2.3 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
- b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Dens-Glass Gold.
- c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond eXP Extended Exposure Sheathing.
- d. USG Corporation; Securock.
- 2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.

2.4 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Refer to the structural drawings for additional requirements

2.5 SUBFLOORING

- A. Plywood Subflooring: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I single-floor panels or sheathing.
 - 1. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Subflooring: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 single-floor panels or sheathing.
 - 1. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.

2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For roof, parapet, and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
- B. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- C. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
 - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
 - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

2.8 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
 - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
- D. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
 - a. Nail to wood framing.
 - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
 - Subflooring:
 - a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 2. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.

- C. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 061753 - SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Wood roof trusses.
- 2. Metal truss accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal-plate connectors, metal truss accessories, and fasteners.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.
 - 1. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
 - 2. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
 - 3. Indicate locations, sizes, and materials for permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses, signed by officer of truss-fabricating firm.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Metal-plate connectors.
 - 2. Metal truss accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 and that involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations in SBCA BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
 - 1. Store trusses flat, off of ground, and adequately supported to prevent lateral bending.
 - 2. Protect trusses from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
 - 3. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal-plate-connected wood trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
 - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
 - 2. Maximum Deflection Under Design Loads:
 - a . Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of span.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of TPI 1, TPI DSB, and SBCA BCSI.
- D. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements in AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
- E. Truss supplier's engineer shall verify and account for vertical deflection above rigid ceiling assemblies (e.g., concrete deck ceilings at Storm Shelter, Armory, and Evidence Room), ensuring deflection does not result in damage to or separation from non-load-bearing wall construction or finishes. This verification shall be demonstrated in truss shop drawing submittals.

F. Additional Coordination Requirements:

- 1. Truss supplier's engineer shall coordinate with mechanical systems to ensure clear, unobstructed access to Attic HVAC equipment and appliances. Trusses shall be designed to accommodate support framing for mechanical walkways and paltforms, including additional chord bracing or blocking as required, and as shown in the architectural drawings for clearance required for installation of uncompressed batt insulation.
- 2. Provide blocking, nailers, or other necessary framing components integrated into the truss layout for the attachment of required draftstop materials and assemblies, including draftstop doors or hatches as indicated on architectural drawings..

3. All coordination items shall be clearly shown in shop drawings and submitted for review and approval prior to fabrication..

2.2 WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee (ALSC) Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- B. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Alpine, a division of ITW Inc.
 - 2. Cherokee Metal Products, Inc.; Masengill Machinery Company.
 - 3. Eagle Metal Products.
 - 4. MiTek Industries, Inc.
- B. Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.
- C. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G60 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall comply with or exceed those of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.

- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
- D. Truss Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of truss and fastens to both sides of truss, top plates, and one side of stud below.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
 - 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.
- B. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
- E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
- F. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- G. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
- H. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
 - Install bracing to comply with Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
 - 2. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
- I. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
- J. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
- K. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not meet requirements.

SECTION 064023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood railings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include the following:
 - a. Dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections.
 - b. Attachment details.
 - 2. Show large-scale details.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver interior architectural woodwork until painting and similar finish operations that might damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas.
- B. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install interior architectural woodwork until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and

maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOODWORK, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. Provide certificates from AWI certification program indicating that woodwork and installation complies with requirements of grades specified.

2.2 INTERIOR WOOD RAILINGS

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood for Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Species and Cut:
 - a. Risers: Hard maple, plain sawn.
 - b. Treads: Hard maple, plain sawn.
 - c. Railings: Hard maple, plain sawn.
 - 2. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- C. Handrail Brackets: Cast aluminum with wall flange drilled for exposed anchor and with support arm for screwing to underside of rail.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. The Wagner Companies.
 - 2. Size to provide 1-1/2-inch clearance between handrail and face of wall.
 - 3. Model Number: As indicated on the drawings.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate interior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
 - 1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site.
 - 1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
 - 2. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

- 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times interior architectural woodwork fabrication will be complete.
- 4. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.
 - a. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting.
 - b. Verify that parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition interior architectural woodwork to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours prior to beginning of installation.
- B. Before installing interior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming of concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install interior architectural woodwork to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble interior architectural woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.
- C. Railings:
 - 1. Install rails with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Wall Rails: Support rails on wall brackets securely fastened to wall framing.

3.3 REPAIR

- A. Repair damaged and defective interior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects and to result in interior architectural woodwork being in compliance with requirements of Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade.
- B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.
- C. Field Finish: See Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for final finishing of installed interior architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean interior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064023

SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
- 2. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
- Miscellaneous materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 123623.13 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops."

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

- 1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that woodwork complies with requirements of grades specified.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
- F. Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: HGS.
 - Edges: Grade HGS.
 - 3. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
- G. Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 3.0 mm thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- H. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4583-3, grade to match exposed surface.

- I. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
 - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- J. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made without urea formaldehyde.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
 - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
 - 4. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 170 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- B. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
 - 1. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
- F. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- G. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrousmetal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- C. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inchesusing concealed shims.
 - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.

- 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.
- D. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- E. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

SECTION 066116 - SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Solid surface material windowsills.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, and attachment method.
- C. Samples: For each type of material exposed to view.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups of typical windowsill as shown on Drawings.
 - Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE MATERIAL WINDOWSILLS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces.

- b. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
- c. Formica Corporation.
- d. LG Hausys, Ltd.
- e. Swan Corporation (The).
- 2. Type: Provide Standard Type unless Special Purpose Type is indicated.
- 3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Configuration: Provide windowsills in sizes and shapes as detailed on the drawings with eased edges.
- B. Fabricate windowsills to comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Thickness: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
 - 2. Joints: Fabricate windowsills without joints.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. Sealant for Windowsills: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble solid surface material windowsills and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- B. Install solid surface material windowsills level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- C. Scribe and cut solid surface material windowsills to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 066116

SECTION 068000 - COMPOSITE FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fiberglass-reinforced polymer (FRP) column covers, capitals, bases, rakes, cornices, and related support framing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include FRP design mixes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for FRP products including the following:
 - 1. Elevations, sections, and dimensions.
 - 2. Thickness of facing mix, FRP backing, and bonding pads for typical fabrications.
 - 3. Finishes.
 - 4. Joint and connection details.
 - 5. Panel corner details.
 - 6. Erection details.
 - 7. Locations and details of connection hardware attached to structure.
 - 8. Relationship to adjacent materials.
 - 9. Description of loose, cast-in, and field hardware.
- C. Samples for Verification: Representative of finish, color, and texture variations expected, approximately 12 by 12 inches by actual thickness.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For FRP fabrications, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Source Quality-Control Programs: For FRP manufacturer.
- B. Qualification Statements for FRP manufacturer.
- C. Warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm specializing in the manufacture of FRP architectural ornamentation, in the United States with a minimum of 10 years experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 10 years experience installing fiberglass materials for projects of similar size and scope.
- C. All products manufactured shall carry ICC-sanctioned Listing and Labeling per the latest IBC.
- D. Manufacturer shall demonstrate current valid certification and participation in the Certified Composites Technician (CCT) program and fabricate material based upon provisions published in the "Guidelines and Recommended Practices for Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Architectural Products".

1.6 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical column enclosure including ship lap joint detail.
 - 2. Build mockup of typical cornice including ship lap joint detail.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle, store and transport FRP fabrications according to manufacturer's recommendations and in a manner that prevents damage.
- B. Protect FRP fabrications from damage by retaining shipping protection in place until installation.
- C. Store FRP fabrications off of ground on firm, level, and smooth surfaces supported on nonstaining material and with nonstaining resilient spacers between fabrications.
- D. Damage Responsibility: Except for damage caused by others, the installer is responsible for chipping, cracking, or other damage to FRP fabrications, after delivery to the jobsite and until installation is completed and inspected and approved by the Architect or Owner's representative.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace FRP fabrications that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain FRP fabrications from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer to design FRP fabrications, including support framing, anchors, and connections.
- B. Structural Performance: FRP fabrications, including support framing, anchors, and connections, shall withstand the design loads as well as the effects of thermal- and moisture-induced dimensional changes within limits and under conditions indicated, and the following physical properties:
 - 1. Tensile Strength: 12,000 psi.
 - 2. Flexural Strength: 20,000 psi.
 - 3. Flexural Modulus: 0.9 x 10⁶ psi.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: 17,000 psi.
 - 5. Bearing Strength: 9,000 psi.
- C. AISI Specifications: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Architectural Fiberglass, Inc.
 - 2. Fiberglass Technologies, Inc.
 - 3. First Class Building Products, Inc.
 - 4. Spaulding Craft, Inc.

2.4 COLUMNS, CAPITALS, AND BASES

- A. Composite Column Enclosures: Prefinished fiberglass-reinforced polymer using the specified resins, reinforced with chopped glass fibers, and finished with colored gel-coat with UV inhibitor.
 - 1. Column Style: Shape and size as shown on the drawings to match existing wood columns.
 - a. Column covers, capitals, and bases to be supplied and tabbed for reassembly.
 - 2. Diameter and Height: As shown on the drawings.
 - 3. Finish: Smooth, ready for field painting.

2.5 CORNICES AND RAKES

- A. Composite Fabrications: Custom pattern hand carved and or machined by skilled pattern makers.
 - Custom Molds: Produced molds to have rigidity and thickness to prevent distortion and deflection of molded FRP.
 - 2. Joints: Sealable lap joints manufactured to accommodate adjoining sections and alignment of cornice surface sections.
 - 3. Corners: Factory outside corners, and unique transition sections. Field fabricated outside corners will not be permitted.
 - a. Inside corners shall be coped on site.
 - 4. Finish: Smooth, ready for field painting.

2.6 FIBERGLASS AND RESIN MATERIALS

- A. Gel-Coat: 18 to 22 mils polyester.
- B. Barrier Coat: Specifically formulated backup polyester surface veil 18-20 mils thick, Class A complying with ASTM E 84.
- C. Backup Laminate: Fire retardant polyester resin, filler, and fiberglass, glass cloth, matt and/or random chopped glass fibers.
 - 1. Glass Content: 25 to 30 percent.
 - 2. Laminate Thickness: 3/16 inch.

2.7 ANCHORS, CONNECTORS, AND MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Stainless steel shapes, plates, bars, and bolts, as required.
- B. Joint Filler: 105 Epoxy Resin and 206 Slow Hardener by West System.

2.8 SUPPORT FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Formed Steel Framing: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, complying with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," with minimum uncoated steel thickness of 0.053 inch.
- B. Hollow Structural Sections: Steel tubing, ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B, or ASTM A 513.
- C. Steel Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

2.9 FABRICATION

A. Column cover halves shall be manufactured with sufficient lap joints to provide structural integrity and shall be manufactured to accommodate construction adhesive and align with adjoining half section.

- B. Joints shall be designed to accept epoxy body filler for monolithic finish and field painting.
- C. Column cover shaft half sections shall be manufactured as a single unit spanning entire height from base to top of capital.
- D. Column base shall be manufactured as a separate unit for column shaft height adjustment.
- E. Fabricate support framing and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with components securely fastened.
 - 1. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M.
 - 2. Fasten framing members of hollow structural sections, steel channels, or steel angles by welding. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 3. Weld anchors to panel frames.
- F. Reinforce framing assemblies, as necessary, to withstand erection stresses.
- G. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Gel-Coat Thickness: Plus or minus 2.5 mils.
 - 2. Part Thickness: Plus or minus 3/16 inch.
 - a. Provide cornices with 3/8 inch control thickness along horizontal attachment edges for fastening.
 - 3. Dimensions: All directions, plus or minus 3/16 inch.
 - 4. Length: Plus or minus 1/8 inch.
 - 5. Variation From Square: 1/8 inch.
 - 6. Hardware Location Variation: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 7. Warpage or Bowing: 1/4 inch in 8 feet.
- H. Curing and Cleaning: Cure and clean components prior to shipment and remove material that may be toxic to plant or animal life, or incompatible with adjacent building materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Carefully observe and verify field conditions that substrates are ready for installation of FRP fabrications. Verify on site dimensions with shop drawings and assume full responsibility for fitting the components to the structure.
- B. Verify that bearing surfaces are true and level.
- C. Verify that support framing has been constructed to allow accurate placement, alignment and connection of FRP fabrications to structure.
- D. Report discrepancies between design dimensions and field dimensions, which could adversely affect installation, to the Architect and/or Owner's Representative.
- E. Do not proceed with installation until discrepancies are corrected, or until installation requirements are modified and approved by the Architect and/or Owner's Representative.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Employ only workmen experienced, skilled, and trained on this type of quality erection work.
- B. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting FRP fabrications to supporting members and backup materials.
- C. Install FRP fabrications level, plumb, square, and in alignment.
 - Install column covers with continuous and flush alignment at all vertical joints. Do
 not force fit or over-torque fasteners in a manner that distorts the joint flange or
 surface. Shim as needed to maintain uniform contact without bowing or
 separation.
 - 2. Ensure joints are sanded and filled per manufacturer's instruction and are free of bumps, steps, or visual discontinuities. Completed joints shall appear monolithic and smooth prior to field painting.
 - 3. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of FRP fabrications until permanent connections are completed.
 - 4. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width.
 - 5. Set forms with all joints properly adjusted for thermal movement.
- D. Allowable Installation Tolerances:
 - 1. Maximum offset from true alignment; 1/4-inch in 20 feet.
 - 2. Maximum variation from true position; 1/2-inch in 20 feet.
- E. Connect FRP fabrications in position by bolting as indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after connecting is completed.
- F. At bolted connections, use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Repairs are permitted provided structural adequacy of FRP fabrications and appearance are not impaired, as approved by Architect.
- B. Remove and replace damaged FRP fabrications when repairs do not comply with requirements.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to FRP manufacturer's written instructions.
 - Clean soiled FRP surfaces with detergent and water, using soft fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water.
 - 2. Prevent damage to FRP surfaces and staining of adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 068000

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
- 2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
- 3. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
- Accessories.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
- 2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board insulation.
- 3. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
- Accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
 - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes less than 25 and 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119 or UL 263; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- D. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.
- E. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): R-value as indicated on Drawings in accordance with ASTM C518.

2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Owens Corning.
 - c. The Dow Chemical Company.

2.3 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced: ASTM C 1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - c. Firestone Building Products.
 - d. Hunter Panels.
 - e. Rmax, Inc.

2.4 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

 A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84. Nominal density of 2 lb/cu. ft.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit courses of insulation around obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions.
 - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

3.5 INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation Type (Option 1): Extruded-polystyrene board, Type IV.
 - 1. Use: Masonry cavity walls.
- B. Insulation Type (Option 2): Polyisocyanurate board, Type I.
 - 1. Use: Masonry cavity walls.
- C. Insulation Type: Glass-fiber blanket insulation, unfaced.
 - 1. Use: Exterior metal stud walls and soffits, where indicated.
 - 2. Use: Attics.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072419 - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Water-drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS).
 - 1. EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies that are field applied over substrate.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for fluid-applied, synthetic polymer air barriers applied behind EIFS-clad wall assemblies.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASTM E2110 apply to Work of this Section.
- B. EIFS: Exterior insulation and finish system(s).

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each EIFS component, trim, and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include details for EIFS buildouts.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of exposed accessories involving color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by EIFS manufacturer, certifying the following:
 - 1. EIFS complies with requirements.
 - 2. Substrates to which EIFS is indicated to be attached are acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.

- 3. Accessory products installed with EIFS, including joint sealants, flashing, water-resistive barrier coatings, trim, whether or not furnished by EIFS manufacturer and whether or not specified in this Section, are acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: For cementitious materials and aggregates and for insulation and joint sealant, from manufacturer.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each EIFS assembly and component, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by AWCI International as qualified to install Class PB EIFS using trained workers.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, to set quality standards for materials and execution, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
- B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
 - 1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
 - 2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
 - 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - 1. Proceed with installation of adhesives or coatings only when ambient temperatures have remained, or are forecast to remain, above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after application. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bond integrity and weathertightness.
 - b. Deterioration of EIFS finishes and other EIFS materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty coverage includes the following components of EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies:
 - a. EIFS finish, including base coats, finish coats, and reinforcing mesh.
 - b. Insulation installed as part of EIFS including foam buildouts.
 - c. Insulation mechanical fasteners.
 - d. EIFS accessories, including trim components and flashing.
 - e. EIFS drainage components.
 - 3. Warranty Period: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sto Corp.; StoPowerwall ci, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Dryvit Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Parex USA, Inc.
 - 3. Master Builders Solutions, brand of MBCC Group, a Sika company.
 - 4. Senergy; Master Builders Solutions.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with EIFS components.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with ASTM E2568 and with the following:
 - 1. Weathertightness: Resistant to uncontrolled water penetration from exterior, with a means to drain water entering EIFS to the exterior.
 - 2. System Fire Performance: Fire-resistance rating of wall assembly.
 - 3. Structural Performance of Assembly and Components:
 - a. Wind Loads:
 - 1) Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Impact Performance: ASTM E2568, Standard impact resistance.
 - Abrasion Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample consisting of 1-inch- thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days and shows no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested in accordance with ASTM D968, Method A.
 - 6. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch clean glass substrate; cured for 28 days and shows no growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
 - 7. Drainage Efficiency: 90 percent average minimum when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.

2.3 EIFS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt, and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- B. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; specifically formulated to be applied to back side of insulation in a manner that creates open vertical channels designed to serve as an integral part of the water-drainage system of the EIFS-clad drainage-wall assembly; compatible with substrate; and complying with one of the following:
 - 1. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
 - 2. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
- C. Drainage Mat: Three-dimensional, nonwoven, entangled filament, nylon or plastic mat designed to drain incidental moisture by gravity; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
- D. Molded, (Expanded) Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM E 2430/E 2430M, unless otherwise noted, and the following:
 - 1. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, according to ASTM E 84.
 - 2. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards of not more than 24 by 48 inches, with thickness indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Foam Build-Outs: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.

- E. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. in accordance with ASTM E2098/E2098M and the following:
 - 1. Reinforcing Mesh for EIFS, General: Not less than weight required to comply with impact-performance level specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Strip-Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 3.75 oz./sq. yd...
 - 3. Detail-Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. vd..
 - 4. Corner-Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.2 oz./sq. yd..
- F. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following:
 - 1. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150/ C 150M, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
- G. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners, consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; designed to resist Project's design loads; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board and flush with metal lath; and complying with the following:
 - 1. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than 0.0179 inch in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C1002.
 - 2. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
- H. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- I. Finish Coat: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance complying with the following:
 - 1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
 - 2. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- J. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
- K. Water: Potable.
- L. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D1784, manufacturer's standard cell class for use intended, and ASTM C1063.
 - 1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
 - 2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.

- 3. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
- 4. Expansion Joint: Closed-cell polyethylene backer rod and elastomeric sealant 3/4-inch-minimum.

2.4 MIXING

A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials, except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roof edges, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
 - 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EIFS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C1397, ASTM E2511, and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

3.4 APPLICATION OF SUBSTRATE PROTECTION

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier Coating: Verify and approve water-resistive barrier application.
 - 1. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over water-resistive barrier coating, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, and terminations. Prime substrates with flashing primer if required and install flashing.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at wall openings, and elsewhere as indicated. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
 - 1. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF DRAINAGE MAT

A. Drainage Mat: Apply wrinkle free, continuously, with edges butted and mechanically secured with fasteners over water-resistive barrier coating.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Board Insulation: Mechanically attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C1397 and the following:
 - 1. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
 - a. Steel Framing: 5/16 inch.
 - b. Masonry: 5/16 inch.
 - 2. Apply insulation over substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
 - 3. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
 - 4. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints, so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of door openings and not less than 4 inches from aesthetic reveals.
 - 5. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
 - 6. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.

- 7. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
- 8. Install foam buildouts and attach to structural substrate by mechanical fastening.
- 9. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-resistive barrier coating.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
 - 1. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
 - 2. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
 - 3. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.

3.8 APPLICATION OF BASE COAT

- A. Base Coat: Apply full coverage to exposed insulation and foam build-outs with not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- B. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed reinforcing mesh in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C1397. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are invisible.
- C. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip-reinforcing mesh around openings, extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip-reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch- wide, strip-reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.
 - 1. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip-reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches wide.
 - 2. Embed strip-reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
- D. Foam Buildouts: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
- E. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application, except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

3.9 APPLICATION OF FINISH COAT

- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat.
- B. Finish Coat: Apply full-thickness coverage over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
 - 1. Embed aggregate in finish coat to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
- C. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Arrange for system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect EIFS installation and on completion submit report to Architect.
 - 1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of final inspection.
 - 2. Perform a minimum of two inspections during application of the system, and one visit at time of substantial completion.

3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 072419

SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barriers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for wall sheathings and wall sheathing joint-and-penetration treatments.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, jobsite foreman, testing and inspecting agency representative, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects building envelope assemblies.
 - 2. Review air-barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, surface preparation of substrates, water penetration control, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.

- 1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
- 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
- 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction testing.
 - 1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly, 300 sq. ft., or area large enough to perform three independent tests, incorporating backup wall construction, masonry veneer ties and other penetrations, to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, application of air barriers, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier assembly.
 - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of air barrier before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, and foundation wall intersection.
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups, including In-Situ locations.

- B. Mockup Testing: Air-barrier assemblies shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on mockup testing by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Adhesion Testing: Mockups will be tested for required air-barrier adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541 or ASTM D 7234.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be tested

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty:
 - 1. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement material for air barrier that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Installer's Special Warranty: Form signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of two years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.

2.3 MEDIUM-BUILD AIR BARRIERS, VAPOR PERMEABLE

- A. Medium-Build, Vapor-Permeable Air Barrier: Synthetic polymer material with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 17 to 30 mils over smooth, void-free substrates.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc; Barritech VP.
 - b. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.; DuPont Tyvek Fluid Applied WB.
 - c. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.; SEC2600 SilShield AWB.
 - d. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.; Perm-A-Barrier VPL.
 - e. MBCC Group, MasterSeal AWB 660.
 - f. Pecora Corporation; Pecora XL-Perm.
 - g. PROSOCO, Inc; Spray Wrap MVP.
 - h. Rubber Polymer Corporation, Inc.; Rub-R-Wall Airtight VP.
 - i. TK Products; TK-Airmax 2104 Vapor Permeable.
 - j. W. R. Meadows, Inc; Air-Shield LMP.

2. Physical and Performance Properties:

- a. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
- Vapor Permeance: Minimum 10 perms; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method, Procedure A.
- c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum 250 percent; ASTM D 412, Die C.
- d. Adhesion to Substrate: Minimum 16 lbf/sq. in. when tested according to ASTM D 4541.
- e. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- f. UV Resistance: Can be exposed to sunlight for 180 days according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Liquid Flashings: Unless approved otherwise in writing, wall penetrations shall be flashed with liquid applied membrane flashing (LAMF). LAMF shall be STPe, STPu, or urethane based products, provided by the air barrier membrane manufacturer, with the following performance criteria:
 - 1. Vapor permeable (10 perms minimum per ASTM E96 tested wet).
 - 2. Non-reverting when exposed to saturation conditions.
 - 3. 98% solids minimum.
 - 4. VOC compliant.
 - 5. Tack free in 2 hours.
 - 6. Self-healing at fasteners (ASTM D1970).

- 7. One step application that does not involve embedding a separate fabric material.
- 8. Unless the weather barrier (WB or air barrier) is factory installed on the sheathing, the LAMF shall be supplied by the same manufacturer of, and compatible with, the WB. If the WB is factory installed on the sheathing, the LAMF shall form a part of the compatible, tested assembly and be warranted by the sheathing manufacturer.
- 9. Air leakage less than 0.03 cfm/sf @ 1.57 psf when tested per ASTM E2357 for air barrier wall assemblies (ASHRAE/ABAA 90.1) and no leakage when tested per ASTM E331 @ 2.86 psf for 15 minutes (ICC).
- 10. Selection of sealants compatible with and properly bonded to the LAMF is the responsibility of the Contractor. Sealant shall be approved by the air barrier and sealant manufacturer.
- C. Self-Adhered Flexible Flashing (SAFF) shall meet the minimum requirements listed below.
 - 1. Basis of Design Products: Provide compatible products by the same manufacturers for the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
 - 2. Thickness: 40 mils minimum consisting of an 8 mil minimum cross laminated polyethylene film with the remainder consisting of a polymer based adhesive waterproofing membrane.
 - 3. Non-drooling when exposed to temperatures up to 220 degrees F.
 - 4. UV exposure: No less than 90 days.
 - 5. Tensile strength and elongation: Minimum 1,200 psi and 15 percent per ASTM D412.
 - 6. Puncture: > 80 pounds per ASTM E154.
 - 7. Water Absorption: <1 percent.
 - 8. Adhesion in Peel: 60 pounds minimum per ASTM D903.
 - 9. Water Permeability: <1 perms per ASTM E96.
 - 10. Low Temperature Flexibility: No affect per ASTM D1970.
 - 11. Manufacturer shall offer a compatible sealant at cut edges, laps, and terminations.
- D. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.0250 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Stainless steel bars with integral sealant tray, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch, predrilled at 8-inch centers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- D. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- E. Bridge isolation joints, discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with airbarrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
 - 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Flash all penetrations through air barrier with LAMF.
 - 1. LAMF shall extend 6 inches onto the air barrier on all sides of the opening.
 - 2. Install watertight stainless steel sleeves through the air barrier and the veneer for elements installed after the veneer is installed.
 - 3. Install watertight stainless steel sleeves for all HVAC duct penetrations.

- 4. Install sealants between the flashed opening and the penetrating element.
 - a. Contractor is responsible for ensuring compatibility between the sealant and the LAMF. Mockup pull testing of the sealant is required.
- F. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 - 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- G. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch- wide, transition strip.
- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.
- K. LAMF shall not be used to fabricate through wall flashings.

3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
 - 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
 - 4. On CMU or other porous substrates, require application with stiff brush, roller, or trowel to achieve smooth surface finish.
 - 5. Apply air barrier at wall ties with stiff bristle brushes.
- B. Medium-Build Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply an increased thickness of air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable, Medium-Build Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, applied in two equal coats. Apply additional material as needed to achieve void- and pinhole-free surface, but do not exceed thickness on which required vapor permeability is based.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.

D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or pinholes.
 - 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
 - 3. Perform six wet mil thickness measurements every 1000 square feet, and for every day the air barrier is applied. Record in installer's daily log.
 - 4. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 - 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 - 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 - 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 - 8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 - 9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 - 10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 - 11. Compatible materials have been used.
 - 12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 - 13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 - 14. All penetrations have been sealed.
- C. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
 - 1. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541 or ASTM D 7234.
 - a. Perform tests in each test area on the building as directed by Architect. Perform at least three tests each time, prior to 10, 50, and 90 percent completion.
- D. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 - 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- E. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Arrange for system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect air barrier installation on a regular basis during installation and on completion and submit report to Architect.

1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of final inspection.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 072726

SECTION 074113.19 - BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Narrow-profile, snap-on-batten-seam metal roof panels.
- 2. Underlayment.
- 3. Roof vents.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 4. Review structural loading limitations of supporting structure during and after roofing.
 - 5. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

 For batten-seam metal roof panels. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
- 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For batten-seam metal roof panels, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Qualification Statements: For roof installers.
- C. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Roof Installer Qualifications: Entity that employs a supervisor who is an NRCA ProCertified Roofing Foreman or installers who are NRCA ProCertified Metal Panel Roof Systems Installers.

1.7 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including accessories.
 - a. Size: 12 ft. long by 6 ft..
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
 - 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written installation instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace batten-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing in accordance with ASTM E1592:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

- B. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Watertightness: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E2140 for hydrostatic-head resistance.
- D. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
 - 1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Provide factory-formed metal roof panel assembly designed to be installed by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips and covering vertical side edges of adjacent panels with batten caps. Include caps and accessories required for weathertight installation.
 - Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1637.

2.3 NARROW-PROFILE, SNAP-ON-BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide PAC-CLAD; Petersen; a Carlisle company; Snap-Clad, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. ATAS International, Inc.
 - 2. Fabral; a brand of Flack Global Metals.
 - 3. Merchant & Evans Inc.
 - 4. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
- B. Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located between panels and installing narrow profile caps over panel joints.
 - 1. Structural Support: Over solid deck.
 - 2. Material: Aluminum.
 - 3. Panel Profile: Flat pan.
 - 4. Panel Coverage: 12 inches.
 - 5. Panel Height: 1.75 inches.
 - 6. Cap: Manufacturer's standard. Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
 - a. Height: 1.75 inches.
 - b. Width: 1/2 inch.
 - 7. Clips: One-piece fixed to accommodate thermal movement.

a. Steel Clips: 0.028-inch- nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.

2.4 UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
 - 3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ATAS International, Inc.
 - b. Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials.
 - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
 - d. Henry Company; a Carlisle company.
- B. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.5 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B209/B209M, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
 - 1. Thickness: 0.040 inch.
 - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.

2.6 ROOF VENTS

- A. Rigid Ridge Vent: Metal-Era Hi-Perf Ridge Vent.
- B. Eave Vent: Metal-Era Hi-Perf Vented Fascia.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.

- 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
 - 1. Material: 0.063-inch- nominal thickness.
- C. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required.
 - 1. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections, of size and metal thickness in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets.
 - 3. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels.
- D. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels.
 - 1. Fabricate in 10-ft.- long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- E. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- F. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - Apply over the entire roof surface.
- B. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Install metal panels in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and approved Shop Drawings in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

- 1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- E. Batten-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each batten-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.

- 1. Install clips to supports with self-drilling fasteners.
- 2. Apply caps to metal roof panel seams, fully engaged to provide weathertight joints.
- 3. Watertight Installation:
 - Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
 - Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true
 to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet
 metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant
 performance.
 - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 ft. with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints.
 - 1. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners.
 - 2. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
 - 3. Provide for thermal expansion.
- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints.
 - 1. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
 - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- J. Pipe and Conduit Penetrations: Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.
- K. Roof Vents: Install continuous ridge and eave vents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.19

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fireresistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Listed System Designs: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.6 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- Installer Qualifications: Entity that has been approved by FM Approvals in accordance with A. FM Approvals 4991 or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "UL Solutions Qualified Firestop Contractor Program."
- B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of penetration firestopping systems and joint firestopping in Project to a single qualified installer.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- Α. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- Α. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate B. penetration firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 **SOURCE LIMITATIONS**

Obtain penetration firestopping systems for each type of opening indicated from single A. manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - A qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, will perform 1. penetration firestopping system tests.
 - 2. Test in accordance with testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping systems installed with products bearing the classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - UL in its online directory "Product iQ." 1)
 - 2) 3) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Building Products."
 - FM Approvals in its "Approval Guide."

- B. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that, upon curing, do not reemulsify, dissolve, leach, break down, or otherwise deteriorate over time from exposure to atmospheric moisture, sweating pipes, ponding water, or other forms of moisture characteristic during and after construction.
- C. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that do not contain ethylene glycol.
- D. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are sufficiently flexible to accommodate movement, such as pipe vibration, water hammer, thermal expansion, and other normal building movement without damage.
- E. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are appropriately tested for the thickness and type of insulation utilized.

2.3 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
 - e. Tremco, Inc.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479.
 - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
 - 2. Substrate primers.
 - 3. Collars.
 - 4. Steel sleeves.

2.5 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- B. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- C. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- D. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- E. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- F. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

2.6 MIXING

A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
 - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
 - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.
- B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning Penetration Firestopping Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

SECTION 078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, smoke barriers, and for wall identification.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction.
- B. Product Schedule: For each joint firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing agency.
 - Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular joint firestopping system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by joint firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fireresistance-rated assembly developed in accordance with current International Firestop Council (IFC) guidelines.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Listed System Designs: For each joint firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that joint firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.6 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Approvals in accordance with Α. FM Approvals 4991 or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "UL Solutions Qualified Firestop Contractor Program."
- B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of penetration firestopping systems and joint firestopping in Project to a single qualified installer.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- Α. Environmental Limitations: Do not install joint firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by joint firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure joint firestopping systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- Α. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that joint firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate joint firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 **SOURCE LIMITATIONS**

A. Obtain joint firestop systems for each type of joint opening indicated from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. A qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, will perform joint firestopping system tests.
 - 2. Test in accordance with testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - Joint firestop systems installed with products bearing the classification marking of a qualified product certification agency in accordance with listed system designs published by a qualified testing agency.
 - UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 1) 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

2.3 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM TYPES

- A. Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fireresistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are installed. Joint firestopping systems must accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
 - 1. Joint firestopping systems that are compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items, if any.
 - 2. Provide products that, upon curing, do not re-emulsify, dissolve, leach, breakdown, or otherwise deteriorate over time from exposure to atmospheric moisture, sweating pipes, ponding water or other forms of moisture.
 - 3. Provide firestop products that do not contain ethylene glycol.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Building and Construction.
 - b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Tremco Incorporated.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.
- C. Exposed Joint Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E84.
 - 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- D. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing fire-resistive joint systems, clean joints immediately to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of elastomeric fill materials or compromise fire-resistive rating.
 - 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with elastomeric fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Apply a suitable bond breaker to prevent three-sided adhesion in applications where condition occurs.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install joint firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support elastomeric fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing elastomeric fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install elastomeric fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Elastomeric fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply elastomeric fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 - 3. For elastomeric fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
- B. Joint Identification: Identify joint firestopping systems with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove or joint firestopping system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:

- 1. The words "Warning Joint Firestopping Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
- 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
- 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
- 4. Date of installation.
- 5. Manufacturer's name.
- Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2393.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess elastomeric fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure joint firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN or Category XHDG.
- B. Head-of-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: HW-D- 0000-0999.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.

END OF SECTION 078443

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
- 2. Urethane joint sealants.
- 3. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
- 4. Latex joint sealants.
- 5. Acoustical joint sealants.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in concrete paving.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, testing and inspecting agency representative, joint installer, manufacturer's representative, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects joint sealants.
 - a. Manufacturer's representative shall sign off on product correctly selected for application and application procedures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Joint-sealants.
- 2. Joint sealant backing materials.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- B. Field Quality-Control Reports: For field-adhesion-test reports, for each sealant application tested.
- C. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers' special warranties.
- B. Installer's special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.7 MOCKUPS

A. Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - 5. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 6. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.

7. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints at roofing and other flashing locations shall not be left exposed to sunlight.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Silicones: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Urethanes: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Adfast; Adseal LM 4600 series.
 - b. Pecora Corporation: Pecora 890FTS/TXTR.
 - c. Sika Corporation Building Components; Sikasil WS-290.
- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Adfast.
 - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.
 - d. Sika Corporation Building Components.
 - e. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - f. Tremco Incorporated.

2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Adfast; Adthane 1800 series.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
 - c. Sika Corporation Building Components; Sikaflex®-201 T.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic.
- B. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II SG.
 - b. Tremco Incorporated; THC 900/901.

2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Adfast; Adseal KB 4800 series.
 - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.; SCS1700 Sanitary.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; Pecora 860.
 - d. Sika Corporation Building Components; Sikasil®-GP.
 - e. The Dow Chemical Company; DOW CORNING® 786 SILICONE SEALANT -.
 - f. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200.

2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Adfast; Adseal DWM 1090.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); 850A Siliconized Acrylic Latex Caulk.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical joint-sealant products that effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction, as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies in accordance with ASTM E90.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex acoustical sealant complying with ASTM C834.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.; RCS20 Acoustical.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
 - d. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

- Colors of Exposed Acoustical Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber acoustical sealant.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
 - b. Serious Energy Inc.; Quiet Seal 350.

2.8 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Contractor is responsible for ensuring all sealants are compatible with adjoining building elements.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings in accordance with Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- G. Acoustical Sealant Installation:
 - 1. Comply with acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements apply.
 - 2. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical joint sealant. Install acoustical joint sealants at both faces of partitions, at perimeters, and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919, ASTM C1193, and manufacturer's written instructions for closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.
 - Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - a. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - 1) Perform 4 tests for the first 1000 ft. of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - 2) Perform one test for each 1000 ft. of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
 - b. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - c. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - 1) Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - d. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 - e. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Exterior joints at metal roofing components and other flashing locations, where indicated.
 - 1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT.
- B. Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - c. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - f. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
 - g. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces:
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

- E. Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement:
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
 - b. Gypsum board surfaces.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Acoustical joints where indicated.
 - b. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Acoustical.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

- 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
- 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- Borrowed lites.
- 4. ICC-500 rated exterior hollow metal doors and frames.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
- 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- Borrowed lites.
- 4. ICC-500 rated exterior hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Details of each different wall opening condition.

- 5. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
- 6. Include ICC-500 labels and stamps on door and frame assemblies in a visible location for inspection.
- D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
 - 2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Field quality control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer must show compliance with ICC-500, Chapter 8 requirements.
 - 1. Product specimens shall have passed the testing requirements as conducted by a third party, nationally recognized accredited and approved testing laboratory.
 - 2. The testing laboratory shall maintain ongoing periodic inspections of the products it has tested to confirm continued compliance with ICC-500 requirements.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- C. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of egress door assemblies shall meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY.
 - 2. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group.
 - 3. Mesker Door; Mesker Openings Group.
 - 4. Republic Doors and Frames; a Allegion brand.
 - 5. Steelcraft; Allegion plc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
- B. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.50 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C1363 or ASTM E1423.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Core: Kraft-paper honeycomb.
 - 2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.

1. Doors:

- a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
- b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
- c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
- d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
- e. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
- f. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
- a. Core: Manufacturer's standard insulation material.

2. Frames:

- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
- b. Construction: Full profile welded.
- 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES – ICC 500

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Maximum-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 4; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: ICC 500 and FEMA P-361 classified.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.067 inch, with minimum A60 coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
 - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
 - h. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener with insulation core for fire-rated doors.
 - 2. Frames:

- Type: ICC 500 and FEMA P-361 classified.
- b. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.067 inch, with minimum A60 coating.
- c. Construction: Full profile welded.
- 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.6 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
- B. Construction: Full profile welded.
- C. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
 - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Material: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- H. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
 - 1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

2.10 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 - 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
 - a. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout, at exterior locations and in wet areas.
 - 6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
 - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door according to NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
 - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements according to NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.
- F. Provide a field report of certification directly from the manufacturer that ICC-500 and FEMA P-361 rated doors and frame assemblies have been installed in accordance with their tested assemblies.

3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
- 2. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.
- 3. Factory finishing flush wood doors.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Electrified Door Hardware: Coordinate requirements for electrified door hardware with door hardware requirements specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware," including pre-wired doors.
- B. Pre-Wired Doors: Coordinate wiring requirements for electrified door hardware and provide onepiece prefabricated wiring harnesses equipped with Molex connectors on each end.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product, including the following:
 - 1. Door core materials and construction.
 - 2. Door edge construction
 - 3. Door face type and characteristics.
 - 4. Factory-machining criteria.
 - 5. Factory- finishing specifications.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
 - 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
 - 3. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
 - 4. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
 - 5. Clearances and undercuts.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: WI Certified Compliance Program certificates.
- B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in WI's Certified Compliance Program.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of firerated door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Delamination of veneer.
- b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
- c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
- 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
- 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
 - 1. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A.
 - 1. Provide labels and certificates from WI certification program indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.

2.3 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply Veneer-Faced:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Masonite Architectural.
 - b. Oshkosh Door Company.
 - c. VT Industries Inc.
 - 2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty.
 - 3. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Custom.
 - 4. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
 - a. Species: Select white maple.
 - b. Cut: Plain sawn.
 - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Random match.
 - d. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.

- 5. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
 - Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
 - b. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
 - a. ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2 particleboard.
 - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 - 2) Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-compositelumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices.
- 7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
- 8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

2.4 LIGHT FRAMES

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
 - 2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
 - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
 - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.

- 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
- 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
 - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
 - 1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 - 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
 - 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Custom.
 - a. TR-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane.
 - 2. Staining: As selected by Architect.
 - 3. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- B. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- C. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:

- 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.
 - 1. Note: This specification requires the Contractor to determine the locations, quantities, and sizes of access doors to gain access to concealed equipment behind gypsum wallboard surfaces, based on final installation of equipment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Product Schedule: For access doors and frames.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
 - b. Babcock-Davis.
 - c. Cendrex Inc.
 - d. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Karp Associates, Inc.
 - f. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 - g. Milcor; Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - h. Nystrom, Inc.
 - i. Babock Davis

- 2. Description: Face of door flush with frame; with concealed flange for gypsum board installation and concealed hinge.
- 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
- 4. Door Size: As indicated.
- 5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
- 6. Latch and Lock: Concealed spring hinges.

B. Recessed Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acudor Products, Inc.
 - b. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - c. Karp Associates, Inc.
 - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - f. Nystrom.
 - g. Babock Davis
- 2. Description: Door face recessed 1/2 inch for gypsum board infill; with concealed flange for gypsum board installation and concealed hinge.
- 3. Locations: Ceiling.
- 4. Door Size: As indicated.
- 5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
- 6. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, key operated.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.

- 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
 - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
 - 2. Keys: Furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior aluminum-framed storefront systems.
- 2. Exterior aluminum-framed entrance door systems.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Exterior aluminum-framed storefront systems.
- 2. Exterior aluminum-framed entrance door systems.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

C. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Plans, elevations, sections, half-size details, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
- 3. Connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- 4. Point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:
 - a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.
 - Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size
 of wires.
- 5. Manufacturer's storefront details incorporated into the actual construction details for the project, showing attachment to other work, and compliance with air and watertight seal with adjacent construction.
 - a. Manufacturer's standard details void of adjacent construction is not acceptable and may be cause for rejection of the submittals.
- D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
- c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
- 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.

C. Structural Loads:

- 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:

- 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
- 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
- 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
 - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- H. Energy Performance: Certified and labeled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
 - 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: U-factor of not more than 0.33 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 - b. Entrance Doors: U-factor of not more than 0.68 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 - 2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: SHGC for the system of not more than 0.26 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 - b. Entrance Doors: SHGC of not more than 0.35 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 - 3. Air Leakage:
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283.
 - b. Entrance Doors: Air leakage of not more than 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 - 4. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 35 as determined according to AAMA 1503.
 - b. Entrance Doors: CRF of not less than 57 as determined according to AAMA 1503.
- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trifab VG (VersaGlaze) 451T by Kawneer; an Arconic company, or a comparable product by one of the following.
 - 1. Coral Architectural Products; Coral Industries, Inc.
 - 2. EFCO Corporation.
 - 3. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope (OBE); CRH Americas, Inc.
 - 4. YKK AP America Inc.
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 3. Glazing Plane: Center glazed.
 - 4. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
 - 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
 - 6. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 7. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer North America, an Arconic company; 560 Insulclad Thermal Entrances or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Coral Architectural Products; Coral Industries, Inc.
 - 2. EFCO Corporation.
 - 3. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope (OBE); CRH Americas, Inc.
 - YKK AP America Inc.
- B. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
 - 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
 - 2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
 - 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of doors.
 - 4. Finish: Match adjacent storefront framing finish.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
 - 1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.
- B. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- C. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- D. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- E. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- F. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- G. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- H. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
- I. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- J. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch.

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
- C. Steel Reinforcement:
 - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

- 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
- 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- 4. Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- thick stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M of type recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.

- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.
- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Metal Protection:
 - Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- I. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

- J. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weatherstripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- K. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- L. Storefront Sill Pans: Provide sill pans to capture moisture and direct leakage into the drainage cavity or to the exterior of the structure.
 - 1. Sill pans to be stainless steel, aluminum, or adhered flexible flashing.
 - 2. Sill pans to have back dams and end dams equal to or exceeding the minimum specified field water leakage testing design pressure.
 - 3. End dams shall be mechanically attached with horizontal screws. No mechanical attachments are allowed through the horizontal leg of the pan. End dams shall be sealed water tight.
 - 4. Blind seals through the sill pan are not allowed.
 - 5. Set all clips anchored through the sill pan in a full bed of sealant. Fasteners anchoring clips shall be cap sealed.
 - 6. Remove and reinstall broken fasteners.
- M. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- N. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed storefronts.
 - 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested in accordance with AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.
- C. Aluminum-framed storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 085653 - SECURITY WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Vision security windows.
- 2. Fixed, transaction security windows.
- 3. Security glazing.
- 4. Countertop intercom system.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Design Data: Bullet resistance analysis design calculations for specific project conditions, certifying system conformance to specified performance requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Attack Resistance: Provide units identical to those tested for compliance with requirements indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Ballistics Resistance, UL 752: Listed and labeled as Level 3 in accordance with UL 752.
 - 2. Ballistics Resistance, ASTM F1233: Class HG4 in accordance with ASTM F1233.
 - 3. Forced-Entry Resistance, ASTM F1233: Class 3.3 in accordance with ASTM F1233.

2.2 VISION SECURITY WINDOWS

- A. Provide vision security windows with framing on four sides and no operable sash or ventilator.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.
 - b. Creative Industries, Inc.
 - c. Quikserv, Inc.
 - d. Ready Access.
- B. Framing: Fabricate perimeter framing, mullions, and glazing stops from aluminum as follows:
 - 1. Profile: Manufacturer's standard, with minimum face dimension indicated.
 - 2. Depth: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Glazing and Glazing Materials: Match fixed, transaction security windows.
- D. Materials:
 - 1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221. Provide alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000-psi ultimate tensile strength.

2.3 FIXED, TRANSACTION SECURITY WINDOWS

- A. Provide fixed, transaction security windows with operable sash or ventilator capable of allowing transfer of currency and documents.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Quikserv, Inc.; Ticket / Teller Window, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.
 - b. Creative Industries, Inc.
 - c. Ready Access.
- B. Configuration: One fixed-glazed panel.
- C. Framing: Fabricate perimeter framing, mullions, and glazing stops from aluminum as follows:
 - 1. Profile: Manufacturer's standard, with minimum face dimension indicated.
 - 2. Depth: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Channel-Frame Sill: Formed from stainless steel and designed for sealant glazing.
 - 1. Transaction Counter: Stainless steel, 12 inches deep by width of security window, with integral deal tray centered in opening.

2.4 POLYCARBONATE SECURITY GLAZING

- A. Laminated-Polycarbonate Security Glazing: Two or more polycarbonate sheets bonded with clear urethane interlayer that complies with ASTM C1349, Appendix X2, and has a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation. Provide laminated units that comply with requirements of ASTM C1349 for maximum allowable laminating process blemishes and haze.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: LEXGARD® SP1250 laminate: 4-ply, clear, polycarbonate of the following construction:
 - a. 1/8 inch polycarbonate sheet with high AR abrasion-resistant surface.
 - b. Polyurethane bonding interlayer.
 - c. 1/2 inch polycarbonate sheet.
 - d. Polyurethane bonding interlayer.
 - e. 1/2 inch polycarbonate sheet.
 - f. Polyurethane bonding interlayer.
 - g. 1/8 inch polycarbonate sheet with high AR abrasion-resistant surface.
 - 2. Level 3 .44 Magnum caliber rated.

2.5 COUNTERTOP INTERCOM SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: DC-300 Counter Top Ticket Window Intercom System APS1187 by Alpha Communications.
 - 1. Two-way, hands-free audio communication including microphones and speakers on each side of the glass partition.
 - 2. Features:
 - a. 15 inch gooseneck microphone.
 - b. Volume controls.
 - c. Voice activated switch.
 - d. Vandal-resistant controls on remote unit.
 - e. Two voice channels.
 - f. Microphone amplifier.
 - g. Power amplifier.
 - 3. Include mounting on the countertop where shown on the drawings.
 - a. Provide Type B mounting under the barrier.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate security windows to provide a complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window units.
- B. Framing: Miter or cope corners the full depth of framing; weld and dress smooth.
 - 1. Fabricate framing with manufacturer's standard, internal opaque armoring in thicknesses required for security windows to comply with ballistics-resistance performance indicated.

- C. Factory-cut openings in glazing for speaking apertures.
- D. Preglazed Fabrication: Preglaze window units at factory, where required for applications indicated. Installation orientation of glazing to meet performance requirements.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.8 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 1. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Recessed, Nonricochet Deal Trays: Formed from stainless steel; fabricated with recessed bullet trap to ricochet bullets away from secure side, with exposed flanges for recessed installation into horizontal surface.
 - 1. Ballistics Resistance: UL Level 3.
 - 2. Listed and labeled as bullet resisting in accordance with UL 752.
 - 3. Size: 16 inches by 10 inches by 1-1/2 inches.
- B. Speaking Apertures: Fabricate from stainless steel, designed to allow passage of speech at normal speaking volume without distortion.
 - 1. Shape: Circular.
 - 2. Ballistics Resistance: UL Level 3.
 - 3. Listed and labeled as bullet resisting in accordance with UL 752.
- C. Concealed Bolts: ASTM A307, Grade A unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Embedded Plate Anchors: Fabricated from mild steel shapes and plates, minimum 3/16 inch thick; with minimum 1/2-inch- diameter, headed studs welded to back of plate.
- E. Anchors, Clips, and Window Accessories: Stainless steel; hot-dip, zinc-coated steel or iron, complying with ASTM B633; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressures indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing security windows to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for inserts, security fasteners, and other connectors.
- B. Removable Glazing Stops and Trim: Fasten components with security fasteners.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 PERMIT SET

C. Fasteners: Install security windows using fasteners recommended by manufacturer with head style appropriate for installation requirements, strength, and finish of adjacent materials. Provide stainless steel fasteners in stainless steel materials.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed products to verify compliance with requirements. Prepare inspection reports and indicate compliance with and deviations from the Contract Documents.
- B. Prepare field quality-control certification that states installed products and their installation comply with requirements in the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 085653

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glass for the following applications:
 - 1. Doors.
 - Glazed entrances.
 - 3. Exterior storefront framing.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of the following products; 12 inches square.
 - Coated glass.
 - 2. Insulating glass.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For glass.
- B. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- D. Sample: Glazing samples with coatings and tinting, minimum 6x6

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Cardinal Glass Industries.
 - 2. Guardian Glass: SunGuard.
 - 3. Viracon, Inc.
 - 4. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
 - 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.

- 3. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 4. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
 - 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
- E. Strength: Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

- 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Solarban 70 by Vitro Architectural Glass.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 - 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:

- 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
- 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.
- C. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 - 1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.

- 2. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks:
 - 1. Silicone with Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers:
 - 1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks:
 - 1. EPDM or Silicone with Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set class lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

3.2 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

GLAZING 088000 - 6

H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.3 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.4 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

GLAZING 088000 - 7

D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.6 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear Glass Type G1: Fully tempered float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
 - 2. Safety glazing required.

3.7 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Low-E-Coated, Clear Insulating Glass Type IG1:
 - 1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 2. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
 - 3. Outdoor Lite: Clear float glass.
 - a. Kind HS (heat strengthened), or Kind FT (fully tempered), as required.
 - 4. Interspace Content: Air.
 - 5. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass.
 - a. Kind HS (heat strengthened), or Kind FT (fully tempered), as required.
 - 6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
 - 7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.24 maximum.
 - 8. Visible Light Transmittance: 64 percent minimum.
 - 9. SHGC: 0.27 maximum.
 - 10. Safety glazing required.

END OF SECTION 088000

GLAZING 088000 - 8

SECTION 088300 - MIRRORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silvered flat glass mirrors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachment details.
- C. Samples: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Mirrors: 12 inches square, including edge treatment on two adjoining edges.
 - 2. Mirror Clips: Full size.
 - 3. Mirror Trim: 12 inches long.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For mirrors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of mirrors is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to mirror breakage or to maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

MIRRORS 088300 - 1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Binswanger Mirror; a division of Vitro America, Inc.
 - 2. Gardner Glass, Inc.
 - 3. Gilded Mirrors, Inc.
 - 4. Guardian Glass; SunGuard.
 - 5. Lenoir Mirror Company.
 - 6. Stroupe Mirror Co., Inc.
 - 7. Sunshine Mirror.
 - 8. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
 - 9. Gamco

2.2 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRRORS

- A. Mirrors, General: ASTM C1503.
- B. Tempered Glass Mirrors: Mirror Glazing Quality for blemish requirements and complying with ASTM C1048 for Kind FT, Condition A, tempered float glass before silver coating is applied.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- C. Safety Glazing Products: For tempered mirrors, provide products that comply with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- B. Edge Sealer: Coating compatible with glass coating and approved by mirror manufacturer for use in protecting against silver deterioration at mirrored glass edges.

2.4 MIRROR HARDWARE

- A. Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover edges of mirrors in a single piece.
 - 1. Aluminum J Channel Bottom Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 3/8 and 7/8 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch.
 - 2. Aluminum J Channel Bottom Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/8 and 1 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch.
 - 3. Finish: Clear bright anodized.
- B. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal and matching it in finished color and texture where fasteners are exposed.

MIRRORS 088300 - 2

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts, so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
- B. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished.
 - 1. Seal edges of mirrors with edge sealer after edge treatment to prevent chemical or atmospheric penetration of glass coating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced National Glass Association (NGA) publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- B. Install mirrors with mirror hardware. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
 - 1. Aluminum J-Channels: Provide setting blocks 1/8 inch thick by 4 inches long at quarter points. To prevent trapping water, provide, between setting blocks, two slotted weeps not less than 1/4 inch wide by 3/8 inch long at bottom channel.
- C. Clean exposed surface of mirrors not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Clean mirrors as recommended in writing by mirror manufacturer and NGA's publication "Proper Procedures for Cleaning Flat Glass Mirrors."

END OF SECTION 088300

MIRRORS 088300 - 3

SECTION 089119 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.
- 2. Blank-off panels for louvers

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- C. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on tests performed according to AMCA 500-L.
- B. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.
- C. Sample warranties.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Classified Wind-Storm Rated Assembly in accordance with FEMA Guidelines P-320 and P-361, and ICC 500.
 - 1. Static and Cyclical Design Pressure: 250 psf.
- B. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 - 1. Wind Loads:
 - a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade pass enhanced protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.
- E. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Horizontal, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - d. Nystrom, Inc.
- 2. Louver Depth: 4 inches.
- 3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch.
- 4. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: Not less than 7.0 sq. ft. for 48-inch- wide by 48-inch- high louver.
 - b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 600-fpm freearea intake velocity.
 - c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 95 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 3 inches per hour and a wind speed of 29 mph at a core-area intake velocity of 300 fpm.
- 5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade, Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Greenheck Fan Corporation; AFL-501, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Reliable Products, Inc.
 - 2. Louver Depth: 5-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.25 inches.
 - 4. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: Not less than 7.60 sq. ft. for 48-inch- wide by 48-inch- high louver.
 - b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 552 fpm.
 - 5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
 - 6. AMCA Rating: AMCA 540.

2.3 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
 - 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
 - 2. Screening Type: Bird screening for mechanical equipment.
 - 3. Screening Type: Insect screening for ventilation.
- B. Louver Screen Frames: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached.
- C. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

- 1. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch- square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.
- 2. Insect Screening, Aluminum: 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

2.4 BLANK-OFF PANELS

- A. Insulated, Blank-Off Panels: Laminated panels consisting of insulating core surfaced on back and front with metal sheets and attached to back of louver.
 - 1. Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 2. Metal Facing Sheets: Aluminum sheet, not less than 0.032-inch nominal thickness.
 - 3. Insulating Core: Rigid, glass-fiber-board insulation or extruded-polystyrene foam.
 - 4. Edge Treatment: Trim perimeter edges of blank-off panels with louver manufacturer's standard channel frames, with corners mitered and with same finish as panels.
 - 5. Seal perimeter joints between panel faces and louver frames with gaskets or sealant.
 - 6. Panel Finish: Same finish applied to louvers.
 - 7. Attach blank-off panels with clips.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, No. 2D finish.
- D. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- E. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless-steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- B. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Refer to exterior elevations for locations.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Refer to exterior elevations for locations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

END OF SECTION 089119

SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Framing systems.
- 2. Suspension systems.
- 3. Grid suspension systems.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing wall studs; floor joists.
- C. Seismic Requirements:
- 1. This project is designated as Risk Category IV and is located in Seismic Design Category D.
- 2. Non-structural metal framing, suspension systems, and ceiling grid systems shall be designed, detailed, and installed to resist seismic forces in accordance with IBC, ASCE 7-16 (or 7-22), and ASTM C754.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Framing systems.
- 2. Suspension systems.
- 3. Grid suspension systems.
- 4. Seismic Submittals:

Shop drawings showing framing bracing, anchorage, and deflection control details for seismic conditions.

Certification from manufacturer and installer that the non-structural framing system complies with seismic design requirements for Seismic Design Category D and Risk Category IV.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

- B. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Design framing systems in accordance with AISI S220, "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing Nonstructural Members," unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Design Loads: As indicated on architectural Drawings or 5 lbf/sq. ft. minimum as required by the IBC.

E. Seismic Design:

Design all framing and suspension systems to accommodate story drift, building movement, and seismic inertial forces per ASCE 7-16.

Provide compression struts, lateral bracing, and anchorage capable of resisting forces consistent with Ip = 1.5 (importance factor for Category IV).

Ceiling grid and framing systems exceeding 144 square feet shall be seismically braced.

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with AISI S220 for conditions indicated.
 - Steel Sheet Components: Comply with AISI S220 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated
 - 2. Protective Coating: Comply with AISI S220; ASTM A653/A653M, G40; or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
 - a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Studs and Track: AISI S220.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ClarkDietrich.
 - b. MBA Building Supplies.
 - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
 - d. Marino\WARE.
 - e. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.
 - f. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
 - g. Telling Industries.
 - 2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 - 3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Single Long-Leg Track System: ASTM C 645 top track with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top track and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
 - Double-Track System: ASTM C 645 top outer tracks, inside track with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer track sized to friction-fit over inner track.
 - 3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.053 inch.
- E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.
- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 - 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 3/4 inch.
 - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoatedsteel thickness of 0.0329 inch.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
 - 1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
 - b. Type: Torque-controlled, expansion anchor.
 - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 2 inches.

- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
 - 2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645.
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
 - Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 - 4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

2.4 GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions; Drywall Grid Systems.
 - b. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International; 640/660 Drywall Ceiling Suspension.
 - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.

- 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.

E.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.
- F. Seismic Bracing:
 - Provide lateral bracing, compression struts, and anchorage for partitions and ceilings per ASTM C754, CISCA Guidelines for Seismic Zones, and ASCE 7 requirements for Seismic Design Category D.
 - 2. Bracing shall resist anticipated lateral seismic forces and accommodate required deflection without damaging finishes.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.
- B. Seismic Inspection:
 - 1. Verify seismic bracing components are installed as shown on approved submittals.
 - 2. Inspect bracing connections, deflection joints, and anchor attachments for compliance with seismic detailing.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
- 3. Tile backing panels.
- 4. Sound attenuation insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
- 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Gypsum wallboard.
 - 2. Gypsum ceiling board.
 - 3. Mold-resistant gypsum board.
 - 4. Exterior gypsum soffit board.
 - 5. Glass-mat, water-resistant backing board.
 - 6. Joint treatment materials.
 - 7. Sound-attenuation blankets.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.3 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for the following:
 - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
 - b. One finished room is required for approval
 - 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
 - 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.

4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Gypsum.
 - 2. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - 3. Continental Building Products, LLC.
 - 4. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - 5. National Gypsum Company.
 - 6. PABCO Gypsum.
 - 7. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

- Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Core: 1/2 inch, regular type.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc Tile Backer.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; eXP Tile Backer.
 - d. USG Corporation; USG Durock™ Glass-Mat Tile Backerboard.
 - Core: 1/2 inch, regular type.
 - Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - e. Expansion (control) joint.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.

- c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.
- C. Structural Corner Trim: ASTM D 1037.
 - 1. Material: High strength tapered copolymer core. Copolymer tapered plastic trim with paper face and joint tape backing; No-Coat Drywall Corner by CertainTeed Corporation.
 - a. Trim shall be engineered for fully bonded adhesive application with joint compound and without mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead: Use at all outside corners in public areas.
 - b. Copolymer Thickness: 0.060 inches.
 - c. Flange width: 2-1/8 inches.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL
 - A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
 - B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - C. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
 - D. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
 - E. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
 - F. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
 - G. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4-to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
 - H. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
 - I. Install trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - J. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings or according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
 - K. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.

- L. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- M. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- N. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
 - 3. Mold-Resistant Type:
 - a. Custodial Rooms.
 - b. Mechanical Rooms.
 - c. Wet areas and unconditioned spaces.
 - d. Other locations as indicated.
 - 4. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Locations indicated to receive wall tile.

B. Single-Layer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
- 3. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

- On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistancerated assembly.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
- 3. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.
 - 1. Install with 1/4-inch open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
 - 2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and texture finishes and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Porcelain floor tile.
- 2. Porcelain wall tile.
- 3. Uncoupling membrane.
- 4. Edge protection and transition profiles for floors.
- 5. Finishing and edge protection profiles for walls.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
 - 2. Uncoupling membrane.
 - 3. Edge protection profiles.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation, including metal edge strips.
 - 2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation, including metal edge strips.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. One restroom will need full tile installation for approval

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Provide the products indicated in the Finish Schedule on the drawings. Required products include the following:
 - 1. Porcelain floor tile.
 - a. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
 - b. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.

- 2. Porcelain wall tile.
- 3. Porcelain cove base with square top edge.
- 4. Grout Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 UNCOUPLING MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. The uncoupling membrane shall provide air space between the tile and the substrate to allow independent movement between the two and limit the transfer of stresses.
- B. Corrugated Polyethylene: Corrugated polyethylene with dovetail-shaped corrugations and with anchoring webbing on the underside; 1/8-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Systems L.P.; DITRA.
 - 2. This product shall be installed with unmodified dry-set mortar.
- C. Waterproofing Seaming Membrane: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.004-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Systems L.P.; KERDI-BAND Seams and Corners.
 - 2. Where a waterproof floor is indicated or required, all seams in the uncoupling membrane and floor/wall transitions must be sealed with waterproofing seaming membrane using unmodified thin-set mortar.

2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Unmodified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.1.
 - 1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following product:
 - a. Schluter Thin-set Mortar.
- B. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4; 450 psi bond strength, minimum.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
 - f. Schluter Systems L.P.
 - g. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.

- 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadienerubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
- 4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.

2.6 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
 - f. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - 2. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
 - 3. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Edge Protection Profiles: Profiles shown on the drawings, height to match tile, designed specifically for flooring and wall applications, in finish as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kuberit USA, LLC.
 - b. Schluter Systems L.P.
 - c. Or approved equal
 - 2. Refer to the drawings for metal edge strip types.
- C. Restroom Floor Drains: Manufacturer's floor drains with integrated bonding flange and adjustable grate assembly.
 - 1. Schluter Kerdi-Drain.
 - a. Grate Style: Pure 4-inch satin stainless steel.
 - b. Provide 3-inch drain outlet.
 - 1) Couplings are not required.
 - 2) Coordinate requirements for cast iron piping shown on the plumbing drawings.

- D. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; Grout and Tile Sealer.
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.; LATICRETE STONETECH® Stone, Tile & Grout Sealer.
 - c. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG; Grout Sealer.
 - d. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; SL-15, Invisible Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer. Grind high spots.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.

- 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 - 1. Wall Tile: As recommended by tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Floor Tile: As recommended by tile manufacturer.
- G. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- I. Install uncoupling membrane in accordance with manufacturer's written technical installation instructions included with packaged materials.
 - 1. Setting mortar shall be compatible with sheet membranes and approved by manufacturer.
- J. Edge Protection Profiles: Install at locations indicated.
- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to grout joints in tile floors according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.

- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F128; uncoupling membrane, with waterproofed joints, and thinset mortar.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Unmodified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.

3.7 INTERIOR WALL TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs, or Furring:
 - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W245 (bathrooms and locker rooms) or TCNA W248 (all non-bathroom and non-locker locations); thinset mortar on glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Acoustical panels.
- 2. Metal suspension system.
- 3. Metal edge moldings and trim.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Acoustical panels.
- 2. Metal suspension system.
- 3. Metal edge moldings and trim.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
 - 1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Seismic Compliance Submittal: Shop drawings and certification showing ceiling system, bracing, and suspension complies with applicable seismic requirements for Seismic Design Category D and Risk Category IV. Include attachment details for grid, fixtures, and bracing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
 - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 - 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Diffusers.
 - c. Grilles.
 - d. Speakers.
 - e. Sprinklers.

- f. Perimeter moldings.
- g. Reflected ceiling plans shall indicate all seismic bracing, perimeter angles, and seismic joint details per CISCA Guidelines and coordinated with all penetrations. Submittals shall be based on these coordinated drawings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
 - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
- B. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels in accordance with ASTM E1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL PANELS TYPE APC-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following product by Armstrong World Industries, Inc:
 - 1. Dune # 1774.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
 - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
 - 2. Pattern: CE (perforated, small holes and lightly textured).
- C. Color: White.
- D. LR: Not less than 0.83.
- E. NRC: Not less than 0.50.
- F. CAC: Not less than 35.
- G. Edge/Joint Detail: Angled tegular.
- H. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- I. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- J. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- K. Metal Suspension System: Type 1.

2.5 ACOUSTICAL PANELS TYPE APC-2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following product by Armstrong World Industries, Inc:
 - Clean Room VL # 868.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
 - 1. Type and Form: Type IV, mineral base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, water felted; with vinyl overlay on face.
 - 2. Pattern: E (lightly textured).
- C. Color: White.
- D. LR: Not less than 0.80.
- E. NRC: N/A.
- F. CAC: Not less than 40.
- G. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.
- H. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- I. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- J. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- K. Metal Suspension System: Type 2.

2.6 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C 635/C 635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.

2.7 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM TYPE 1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following products by Armstrong World Industries, Inc:
 - 1. 15/16-inch Prelude Plus.
- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G60 coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch- wide metal caps on flanges.

- 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
- 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) type.
- 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
- 4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel.
- 5. Cap Finish: Painted white.

2.8 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM TYPE 2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following products by Armstrong World Industries, Inc:
 - 1. 15/16-inch Prelude XL.
- B. Wide-Face, Aluminum-Capped, Double-Web, Hot-Dip Galvanized, G60, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; hot-dip galvanized, G60 coating designation; with prefinished, 15/16-inch- wide aluminum caps on flanges.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
 - 2. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 3. Cap Finish: Painted white.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
 - Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC 1 service condition.
 - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 2. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
 - 3. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
 - a. Note: In corrosive environments, use nickel-copper-alloy wire hangers.

- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- E. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.
- F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- G. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

2.10 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
 - 1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
 - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

2.11 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 - 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 - 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 - 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.

- 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
- 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
- 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
 - 1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
 - a. Install panels with pattern running in one direction parallel to long axis of space.
 - 2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Install hold-down, impact, and seismic clips in areas indicated; space in accordance with panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Seismic Installation Requirements:
 - 1.Install ceiling systems per ASTM C636, CISCA Guidelines for Seismic Zones (current edition), and manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Provide:
 - a. Perimeter closure angles securely attached to wall or bulkhead.
 - b. Splay wires and vertical hangers as required for bracing.
 - c. Seismic separation joints and ceiling penetrations (light fixtures, diffusers) with positive attachment. Coordinate seismic attachment of ceiling-mounted fixtures (lighting, diffusers, etc.) with respective trades. Provide final bracing method and seismic detailing in coordination drawings
 - d. Compression struts or bracing assemblies for ceilings over 1,000 sq. ft.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096400 - WOOD FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Field-finished wood flooring.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor assembly and accessory. Include plans, sections, and attachment details. Include expansion provisions and trim details.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, approximately 12 inches long and of same thickness and material indicated for the Work and showing the full range of normal color and texture variations expected.
- D. Provide field-applied stain and finish samples on installed flooring (minimum 24" x 24") showing full preparation, stain application, and finish coats. Submit for Architect's approval before full-scale finishing

1.3 MOCKUPS

A. Field-Finishing Mockup: Provide mockup of finished maple flooring in an area of no less than 16 sq. ft. showing sanding, stain application, and full finish system. Mockup shall be reviewed under final lighting conditions for acceptance of finish uniformity, color, and sheen.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver wood flooring materials in unopened cartons or bundles.
- B. Protect wood flooring from exposure to moisture. Do not deliver wood flooring until after concrete, masonry, plaster, ceramic tile, and similar wet-work is complete and dry.
- C. Store wood flooring materials in a dry, warm, ventilated, weathertight location.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Conditioning period begins not less than seven days before wood flooring installation, is continuous through installation, and continues not less than seven days after wood flooring installation.
 - 1. Environmental Conditioning: Maintain ambient temperature between 65 and 75 deg F and relative humidity planned for building occupants in spaces to receive wood flooring during the conditioning period.
 - 2. Wood Flooring Conditioning: Move wood flooring into spaces where it will be installed, no later than the beginning of the conditioning period.

- a. Do not install flooring until it adjusts to relative humidity of, and is at same temperature as, space where it is to be installed.
- b. Open sealed packages to allow wood flooring to acclimatize immediately on moving flooring into spaces in which it will be installed.
- B. After conditioning period, maintain relative humidity and ambient temperature planned for building occupants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maple Flooring: Comply with applicable MFMA grading rules for species, grade, and cut.
 - 1. Certification: Provide flooring that carries MFMA mark on each bundle or piece.

2.2 FIELD-FINISHED WOOD FLOORING

- A. Solid-Wood Flooring, Field-Finished: Kiln dried to 6 to 9 percent maximum moisture content; tongue and groove and end matched; with backs channeled.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acer Flooring.
 - b. Carlisle Wide Plank Floors.
 - c. Oregon Lumber Company.
 - d. WD Flooring, LLC.
 - 2. Grade and Species: MFMA-RL First Grade hard maple.
 - 3. Cut: Plain sawn.
 - 4. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
 - 5. Face Width: 2-1/4 inches.
 - 6. Lengths: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Urethane Finish System: Complete water-based system of compatible components that is recommended by finish manufacturer for application indicated.
 - 1. Stain: Penetrating and nonfading type.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Floor Sealer: Pliable, penetrating type.
 - 3. Finish Coats: Formulated for multicoat application on wood flooring.
- C. Stain Compatibility and Absorption Test: Before full staining, conduct a field-applied stain mockup on a prepared area of installed floor to confirm acceptable absorption, color uniformity, and finish appearance. Proceed only after Architect has reviewed and approved results.
- D. Do not apply stain or sealer over contaminants, improperly sanded areas, or wood exposed to excessive moisture. Resanding to correct defects must be performed uniformly across affected boards and approved by Architect before reapplication.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt-Saturated Felt: ASTM D4869/D4869M, Type II.
- B. Fasteners: As recommended by manufacturer, but not less than that recommended in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of wood flooring.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with flooring manufacturer's written installation instructions, but not less than applicable recommendations in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines."
- B. Wood Underlayment: Install according to requirements in Section 061600 "Sheathing."
- C. Provide expansion space at walls and other obstructions and terminations of flooring of not less than 3/4 inch.
- D. Solid-Wood Flooring: Blind nail or staple flooring to substrate.

3.3 FIELD FINISHING

- A. Machine-sand flooring to remove offsets, ridges, cups, and sanding-machine marks that are noticeable after finishing. Vacuum and tack with a clean cloth immediately before applying finish.
 - 1. Comply with applicable recommendations in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines."
- B. Fill and repair wood flooring defects.
- C. Apply floor-finish materials in number of coats recommended by finish manufacturer for application indicated, but not less than one coat of floor sealer and three finish coats.
 - 1. Apply stains to achieve an even color distribution matching approved Samples.
 - 2. For water-based finishes, use finishing methods recommended by finish manufacturer to minimize grain raise.
- D. Cover wood flooring before finishing.
- E. Do not cover wood flooring after finishing until finish reaches full cure, and not before seven days after applying last finish coat.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed wood flooring during remainder of construction period with covering of heavy kraft paper or other suitable material. Do not use plastic sheet or film that might cause condensation.
 - 1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over kraft-paper-covered wood flooring. Protect flooring with plywood or hardboard panels to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.

END OF SECTION 096400

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 PERMIT SET

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Thermoset-rubber base.
- 2. Rubber stair accessories.
- 3. Rubber molding accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products; a division of Burke Industries Inc.
 - 2. Flexco
 - 3. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 4. Roppe Corporation, USA.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Style B, Cove.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: As indicated on the drawings.
- E. Lengths: 4'lengths.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Preformed.
- H. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations in the Finish Legend.

2.2 RUBBER STAIR ACCESSORIES

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products; a division of Burke Industries Inc.
 - 2. Flexco; Roppe Holding Company.
 - 3. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 4. Nora Systems, Inc.
 - 5. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- C. Stair Treads: ASTM F2169.
 - 1. Type: TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset).
 - 2. Class: 2 (pattern; embossed, grooved, or ribbed).
 - 3. Group: 2 (with contrasting color for the visually impaired).

- 4. Nosing Style: Square.
- 5. Nosing Height: 1-1/2 inches.
- 6. Thickness: 1/4 inch and tapered to back edge.
- D. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations in the Finish Legend.

2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Roppe Corporation, USA.
 - 2. VPI Corporation.
- B. Description: Rubber carpet edge for glue-down applications, nosing for carpet, nosing for resilient floor covering, reducer strip for resilient floor covering, joiner for tile and carpet, and transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
 - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler and Adhesive: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours, and to adhere stair treads to existing metal nosing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.
- E. Substrate Responsibility: The General Contractor shall ensure that gypsum board and other wall substrates are finished smooth and true, with no visible irregularities telegraphing through the installed base. Coordinate with drywall contractor for necessary wall preparation.
- F. Pre-Installation Review: Prior to resilient base installation, verify wall conditions meet substrate preparation and flatness requirements. Do not proceed with installation over deficient substrates. Notify Architect of conditions requiring correction

3.2 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Factory Formed Corners:
 - 1. Provide factory-formed inside and outside corners matching specified base profile and color. Corners shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for tight fit and alignment.

3.3 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
 - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vinyl composition floor tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and pattern specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.

- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 VINYL COMPOSITION FLOOR TILE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 3. Or approved equal
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1066, Class 2, through pattern.
- C. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- D. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- E. Size: 12 by 12 inches.
- F. Colors and Patterns: As indicated in the Finish Legend on the drawings.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.2 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.

- 1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 096623 - RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Precast terrazzo logo.
- 2. Prefabricated metal band.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with terrazzo.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of recesses in concrete to receive prefabricated metal banding.
 - 1. The concrete slab for the logo shall be recessed as indicated on the structural drawings.
 - 2. Install metal band forming the circular logo at time of concrete placement.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to terrazzo including, but not limited to, the following:
 - Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - b. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - c. Review special terrazzo designs and patterns.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include terrazzo installation requirements. Include plans, sections, component details, and relationship to other work. Show layout of the following:
 - 1. Divider strips.
 - 2. Control-joint strips.
 - 3. Accessory strips.
 - 4. Precast terrazzo jointing and edge configurations.
 - 5. Provide an original AutoCAD file of floor seal based on drawings (Architect will not provide a vector file)

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type, material, color, and pattern of terrazzo and accessory required showing the full range of color, texture, and pattern variations expected. Label each terrazzo Sample to identify manufacturer's matrix color and aggregate types, sizes, and proportions. Prepare Samples of same thickness and from same material to be used for the Work, in sizes indicated below:
 - 1. Terrazzo: 6-inch- square Samples.
 - 2. Precast Terrazzo: 6-inch- square Samples.
 - 3. Accessories: 6-inch- long Samples of each exposed strip item required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of terrazzo material or product.
- C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that installers comply with requirements.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For terrazzo to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by terrazzo manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's products.
 - 2. Installer shall have completed epoxy terrazzo installation within five years of scale and complexity similar to the proposed installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NTMA Standards: Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo type indicated unless more stringent requirements are specified.

2.2 EPOXY-RESIN TERRAZZO

- A. Epoxy-Resin Terrazzo: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for matrix and aggregate proportions and mixing.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Key Resin Company.
 - b. Sherwin-Williams Company, General Polymers.

- c. Terrazzo & Marble Supply Companies.
- B. Mix Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 1. Logo Design: Owner to provide digital file.

C. Materials:

- 1. Moisture-Vapor-Emission-Control Membrane: Two-component, high-solids, high-density, low-odor, epoxy-based membrane-forming product produced by epoxy terrazzo manufacturer that reduces moisture emission from concrete substrate to not more than 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
- 2. Substrate-Crack-Suppression Membrane: Product of terrazzo-resin manufacturer, having minimum 120 percent elongation potential according to ASTM D 412.
 - a. Reinforcement: Fiberglass scrim.
- 3. Primer: Manufacturer's product recommended for substrate and use indicated.
- 4. Epoxy-Resin Matrix: Manufacturer's standard recommended for use indicated and in color required for mix indicated.
 - a. Physical Properties without Aggregates:
 - 1) Hardness: 60 to 85 per ASTM D 2240, Shore D.
 - 2) Minimum Tensile Strength: 3000 psi per ASTM D 638 for a 2-inch specimen made using a "C" die per ASTM D 412.
 - 3) Minimum Compressive Strength: 10,000 psi per ASTM D 695, Specimen B cylinder.
 - 4) Chemical Resistance: No deleterious effects by contaminants listed below after seven-day immersion at room temperature per ASTM D 1308.
 - a) Distilled water.
 - b) Mineral water.
 - c) Isopropanol.
 - d) Ethanol.
 - e) 0.025 percent detergent solution.
 - f) 1.0 percent soap solution.
 - g) 5 percent acetic acid.
 - h) 10 percent sodium hydroxide.
 - i) 10 percent hydrochloric acid.
 - i) 30 percent sulfuric acid.
 - b. Physical Properties with Aggregates: For terrazzo blended according to manufacturer's recommendations with one part epoxy resin with three parts marble aggregate consisting of 60 percent No. 1 chips and 40 percent No. 0 chips that is ground and grouted to a 1/4-inch nominal thickness, and cured for 7 days at 75 deg F plus or minus 2 deg F and at 50 percent plus or minus 2 percent relative humidity.
 - 1) Flammability: Self-extinguishing, maximum extent of burning 1/4 inch according to ASTM D 635.
 - 2) Thermal Coefficient of Linear Expansion: 0.0025 inch/inch per deg F according to ASTM C 531.

- 5. Aggregates: Comply with NTMA gradation standards for mix indicated and contain no deleterious or foreign matter.
 - Abrasion and Impact Resistance: Less than 40 percent loss per ASTM C 131/C 131M.
 - b. 24-Hour Absorption Rate: Less than 0.75 percent.
 - c. Dust Content: Less than 1.0 percent by weight.
- 6. Finishing Grout: Resin based.

2.3 PRECAST EPOXY-RESIN TERRAZZO

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Key Resin Company.
 - 2. Sherwin-Williams Company, General Polymers.
 - 3. Terrazzo & Marble Supply Companies.
- B. Precast Terrazzo Logo: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for fabricating precast units in sizes, thicknesses, and profiles as required for field grinding and polishing.
 - Logo Design: Owner to provide digital file.

2.4 UNDERBED MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type 1.
- B. Sand: ASTM C 33/C 33M.
- C. Epoxy resin as recommended by terrazzo manufacturer.

2.5 STRIP MATERIALS

- A. Thin-Set Divider Strips: L-type angle in depth required for topping thickness indicated.
 - 1. Material: White-zinc alloy.
 - 2. Top Width: 1/8 inch.
- B. Control-Joint Strips: Separate, double L-type angles, positioned back to back, that match material and color of divider strips and in depth required for topping thickness indicated.
- C. Accessory Strips: Match divider-strip width, material, and color unless otherwise indicated. Use the following types of accessory strips as required to provide a complete installation:
 - 1. Edge-bead strips for exposed edges of terrazzo.
- D. Metal Band: 1-inch wide by 1/4-inch thick by diameter shown on drawings.
 - 1. Zinc alloy band with anchor legs; fabricated in four pieces with joints at quarter points of circle. The metal band will be installed at the same time the concrete slab is poured.

- 2. Fabricate metal band to form the circumference of the circle shown on the drawings.
- 3. Provide anchoring devices and support legs as required for installation in concrete slab.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES

- A. Strip Adhesive: Epoxy-resin adhesive recommended by adhesive manufacturer for this use.
- B. Anchoring Devices:
 - 1. Strips: Provide mechanical anchoring devices or adhesives for strip materials as recommended by manufacturer and as required for secure attachment to substrate.
 - 2. Precast Terrazzo: Provide mechanical anchoring devices as recommended by fabricator for proper anchorage and support of units for conditions of installation and support.
- C. Patching and Fill Material: Terrazzo manufacturer's resinous product approved and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- D. Joint Compound: Terrazzo manufacturer's resinous product approved and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- E. Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Cleaner: Chemically neutral cleaner with pH factor between 7 and 10 that is biodegradable, phosphate free, and recommended by sealer manufacturer for use on terrazzo type indicated.
- F. Sealer: Slip- and stain-resistant, penetrating-type sealer that is chemically neutral; does not affect terrazzo color or physical properties; and is recommended by sealer manufacturer.
 - 1. Surface Friction: Not less than 0.6 according to ASTM D 2047.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions, including levelness tolerances, have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances, including oil, grease, and curing compounds, that might impair terrazzo bond. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for terrazzo application.
- B. Concrete Slabs:
 - 1. Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with terrazzo.

- a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
- b. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to terrazzo manufacturer's written instructions.
- c. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to terrazzo manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Preinstallation Moisture Testing:
 - 1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests.
 - 2. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Moisture-Vapor-Emission Test: Maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours when tested according to ASTM F 1869 using anhydrous calcium chloride.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Maximum 75 percent relative humidity measurement when tested according to ASTM F 2170 using in-situ probes.
 - Proceed with terrazzo installation only after concrete substrates pass moisture testing or after installation of moisture-vapor-emission-control membrane on substrate areas that fail testing.
- E. Moisture-Vapor-Emission-Control Membrane: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install concrete substrates that fail preinstallation moisture testing.
- F. Substrate-Crack-Suppression Membrane: Install to isolate and suppress substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Prepare and prefill substrate cracks with membrane material.
 - 2. Install membrane to produce full substrate coverage in areas to receive terrazzo.
 - 3. Reinforce membrane with fiberglass scrim.
- G. Protect other work from water and dust generated by grinding operations. Control water and dust to comply with environmental protection regulations.
 - 1. Erect and maintain temporary enclosures and other suitable methods to limit water damage and dust migration and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions during installation.

3.3 EPOXY-RESIN TERRAZZO INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo and accessory installation.
- B. Strip Materials:

- 1. Divider and Control-Joint Strips:
 - Locate divider strips in locations indicated.
 - b. Install control-joint strips in locations indicated.
 - c. Install control-joint strips with 1/4-inch gap between strips, and install sealant in gap.
 - d. Install strips in adhesive setting bed without voids below strips, or mechanically anchor strips as required to attach strips to substrate, as recommended by strip manufacturer.
- 2. Accessory Strips: Install as required to provide a complete installation.
- C. Apply primer to terrazzo substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Place, rough grind, grout, cure grout, fine grind, and finish terrazzo according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Installed Thickness: 3/8 inch nominal.
 - 2. Terrazzo Finishing: Ensure that matrix components and fluids from grinding operations do not stain terrazzo by reacting with divider and control-joint strips.
 - a. Rough Grinding: Grind with 24-grit or finer stones or with comparable diamond abrasives. Follow initial grind with 60/80-grit stones or with comparable diamond abrasives.
 - b. Grouting: Before grouting, clean terrazzo with water, rinse, and allow to dry. Apply and cure epoxy grout.
 - c. Fine Grinding/Polishing: Delay fine grinding until heavy trade work is complete and construction traffic through area is restricted. Grind with 120-grit stones or with comparable diamond abrasives until grout is removed from surface.
 - 3. Installation Tolerance: Limit variation in terrazzo surface from level to 1/4 inch in 10 feet; noncumulative.
- E. Install and finish poured-in-place terrazzo stairs at the same time the adjacent terrazzo flooring is installed.

3.4 PRECAST TERRAZZO INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast terrazzo units using method recommended in writing by NTMA and manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underbed:
 - 1. Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for underbed mix and installation.
 - 2. Bonded Epoxy-Resin Terrazzo:
 - a. Place underbed and screed to elevation indicated below finished floor elevation.
- C. Do not install units that are chipped, cracked, discolored, or improperly finished.
- D. Seal joints between units with joint sealant.

3.5 REPAIR

A. Cut out and replace terrazzo areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate. Cut out terrazzo areas in panels defined by strips and replace to match adjacent terrazzo, or repair panels according to NTMA's written recommendations, as approved by Architect.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Cleaning:

- 1. Remove grinding dust from installation and adjacent areas.
- 2. Wash surfaces with cleaner according to NTMA's written recommendations and manufacturer's written instructions; rinse surfaces with water and allow them to dry thoroughly.

B. Sealing:

- 1. Seal surfaces according to NTMA's written recommendations.
- 2. Apply sealer according to sealer manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure that terrazzo is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096623

SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Acoustic wall covering.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36-inch- long in size.
 - 1. Wall-Covering Sample: From same production run to be used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat. Mark top and face of fabric.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each wall covering, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Wall-Covering Materials: As indicated on the Finish Legend drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 15 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 85 or less.

2.2 ACOUSTIC WALL COVERING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. MDC Interior Solutions; Zintra Acoustics.
- B. Basis-of-Design: Provide Zintra Etch, VJ Board Narrow in sheets from same production run and complying with the following:
 - 1. Total Weight: 0.5 lbs/sq.ft.
 - 2. Width: 48 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 4. Backing: Fused polyester.
 - 5. Fiber: 100 percent recycled polyester.
 - 6. Sound Absorption: NRC 0.45 0.95, per ASTM C423.
 - 7. Pattern: Etched, 3mm deep V.
 - 8. Color: From full range of manufacturer colors.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099124 "Interior Painting (MPI Standards)" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 - 2. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
- D. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- E. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERING

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- D. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches from outside corners and 4 inches from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- E. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- F. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

SECTION 098433 - SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shop-fabricated, acoustical panel units tested for acoustical performance, including the following:
 - 1. Sound-absorbing wall panels.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For unit assembly and installation.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Units shall comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Comply with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested according to NFPA 265 Method B Protocol or NFPA 286.

2.2 SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

- A. Sound-Absorbing Wall Panel: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material stretched over front face of edge-framed core and bonded or attached to edges and back of frame.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MBI Products Company, Inc; Colorsonix Acoustical Wall Panels 1800F-2060-ZIN, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Acoustical Solutions.
 - b. Decoustics; CertainTeed Architectural Products; a Saint Gobain company.
 - 2. Mounting: Back mounted with manufacturer's standard metal clips or bar hangers, secured to substrate.
 - 3. Core: Glass-fiber board.
 - 4. Edge Construction: Manufacturer's standard chemically hardened core with no frame.
 - 5. Edge Profile: Square.
 - 6. Corner Detail in Elevation: Square with continuous edge profile indicated.
 - 7. Facing Material: As indicated in the Finish Legend on the drawings.
 - 8. Acoustical Performance: Sound absorption NRC of not less than 1.05 to 1.20 according to ASTM C 423 for Type A mounting according to ASTM E 795, and absorption coefficient of 0.93 at 125 Hz to 0.95 at 250 Hz.
 - 9. Nominal Overall Panel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Core Materials: Provide the following core materials as applicable to the type of fabric-wrapped wall panels:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Board: ASTM C612; of type standard with manufacturer; nominal density of 6 to 7 lb/cu. ft., unfaced, and dimensionally stable, molded rigid board; and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

- B. Facing Material: Fabric from same dye lot; color and pattern as indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Applied Treatments: Stain resistance.
- C. Mounting Devices: Concealed on back of unit, recommended by manufacturer to support weight of unit.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Standard Construction: Use manufacturer's standard construction unless otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
- B. Facing Material: Apply fabric facing fully covering visible surfaces of unit; with material stretched straight, on the grain, tight, square, and free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive, or other visible distortions or foreign matter.
 - 1. Fabrics with Directional or Repeating Patterns or Directional Weave: Mark fabric top and attach fabric in same direction so pattern or weave matches in adjacent units.
- C. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Units: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, install units with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align fabric pattern and grain with adjacent units.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 098433

SECTION 099114 - EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Surface preparation and application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - a. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
 - b. Miscellaneous steel.
 - c. Miscellaneous galvanized steel.
 - d. Hollow metal doors and frames.
 - e. Exterior gypsum board.
 - f. FRP fabrications.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for shop priming of metal surfaces with primers specified in this Section.
- 3. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for special-use coatings on exterior steel substrates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Exterior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 2 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. PPG Paints.
 - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

- 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- G. FRP Fabrications: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 3. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in the Exterior Painting Schedule may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- B. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

C. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates:
 - 1. High-Build Latex System MPI EXT 4.2K: Dry film thickness of not less than 20 mils.
 - a. Prime Coat: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4; two coats.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
 - c. Topcoat: High-build latex (exterior).
 - 1) PPG Paints; Perma-Crete 100% Acrylic Texture Coatings.
 - 2) Sherwin-Williams, Loxon XP Waterproofing System A24 Series.
 - 2. Other Materials: Crack fillers, block fillers, and related materials that are compatible with cementitious finish-coat materials and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Steel Substrates: Hollow metal doors, frames, and miscellaneous steel.
 - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.1D:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive for metal, MPI #79.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.
- C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Miscellaneous steel.
 - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.3B:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.
- D. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
- E. FRP Fabrications:
 - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 6.7A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

1) Sherwin-Williams Company; Duration Exterior Acrylic Latex.

END OF SECTION 099114

SECTION 099124 - INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
 - 1. Steel and iron.
 - 2. Gypsum board.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for shop priming of metal surfaces with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 099114 "Exterior Painting (MPI Standards)" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
- 3. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for high-performance and special-use coatings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

C. Product List: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 2 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Metal door and frame.
 - c. One finished room with preliminary paint color(s) is required for approval
 - d. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
- 2. PPG Paints.
- 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

- E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
 - 3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Exposed Piping: Fire Suppression, plumbing pipes, HVAC, etc.
 - 1. Alkyd System MPI INT 5.1E:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #47.
- B. Steel Doors and Frames:
 - 1. Alkyd System MPI INT 5.1E:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #47.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates (Ceilings):
 - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat, (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.
- D. Gypsum Board (Walls in general areas):
 - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #52.
- E. Gypsum Board Substrates (Walls indicated in Finish Schedule for semi-gloss finish):
 - 1. Alkyd over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2C:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #47.

END OF SECTION 099124

SECTION 099300 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood stains.
 - 2. Transparent finishes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required. Provide a minimum of 3 preliminary stain samples on actual wood to be used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. PPG Paints.
 - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Stain Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 WOOD STAINS

A. Stain, Interior, Semitransparent, for Interior Wood: Solvent-based, oil or oil/alkyd, semitransparent, pigmented stain for new interior wood surfaces that are to be finished with a clear varnish.

2.4 TRANSPARENT FINISHES

- A. Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Oil Modified, Satin: Solvent-based, one-component, oil-modified polyurethane clear satin varnish for new or previously varnished or stained interior wood surfaces.
 - 1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard low-sheen finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Maximum Moisture Content of Interior Wood Substrates: 13 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.
 - 1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- B. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR WOOD-FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates, Wood Trim, Architectural Woodwork:
 - 1. Polyurethane Varnish over Stain System:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, polyurethane, oil modified, satin.

END OF SECTION 099300

SECTION 099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Decorative steel fences and gates.
 - b. Steel bollards.
 - 2. Interior Substrates:
 - Concrete, horizontal surfaces.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099114 "Exterior Painting (MPI Standards)" for general field painting.
 - 2. Section 099124 "Interior Painting (MPI Standards)" for general field painting.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- B. Samples: For each type of coating system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Coatings: 2 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system.
 - a. Concrete Floor: Provide sample of at least 100 sq. ft.
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. PPG Paints.
 - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - 4. Tnemec Inc.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior High-Performance Coating Schedule for the coating category indicated.

2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
 - 3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- C. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
 - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
 - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
 - 3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
 - 4. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
 - 5. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.
- D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 1500 to 4000 psi at 6 to 12 inches
 - 2. Abrasive blast clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
- D. Exterior Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3; commercial blast cleaning.
- E. Shop-Primed Exterior Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Power tool to bare metal with a minimum of 1.5 mils of surface profile to all damaged areas feathering the edges smooth of the tightly adhered shop primer. Spot prime with primer recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates: Decorative steel fences and gates.
 - 1. Acrylic Polysiloxane over Epoxy System:
 - a. Prime Coat: One-component, multi-purpose epoxy.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; Amercoat One.
 - b. First Topcoat: High solids, single pack acrylic polysiloxane.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; PSX One.
 - c. Second Topcoat: High solids, single pack acrylic polysiloxane.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; PSX One.

B. Steel Bollards.

- 1. Acrylic Polysiloxane over Epoxy System:
 - a. Prime Coat: One-component, multi-purpose epoxy.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; Amercoat One.

- b. First Topcoat: High solids, single pack acrylic polysiloxane.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; PSX One.
- c. Second Topcoat: High solids, single pack acrylic polysiloxane.
 - 1) PPG Protective & Marine Coatings; PSX One.

3.7 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces: Concrete sealer.
 - 1. Clear (Two-Component) Polyurethane System MPI INT 3.2K:
 - a. Prime Coat: Clear penetrating epoxy primer sealer.
 - 1) PPG Amerlock Sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Two-component polyurethane, matching topcoat.
 - 1) PPG Pitthane Ultra Gloss Urethane Enamel 95-812 Series (95-8000).
 - c. Topcoat: Varnish, aliphatic polyurethane, two component (MPI Gloss Level 6 or MPI Gloss Level 7), MPI #78.
 - 1) PPG Pitthane Ultra Gloss Urethane Enamel 95-812 Series (95-8000).

END OF SECTION 099600

SECTION 101416 - PLAQUES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal plaques.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plaques.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show plaque mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each plaque at least half size.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of plaques that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PLAQUES

A. Cast Plaque: Cast-metal plaque with background texture, border, and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

PLAQUES 101416 - 1

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.R.K. Ramos.
 - b. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
 - c. Erie Landmark Company; a division of Paul W. Zimmerman Foundries.
 - d. Gemini Incorporated.
 - e. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
 - f. Metallic Arts.
 - g. Signs & Decal Corp.
 - h. Southwell Company (The).
- 2. Plaque Material: Cast bronze.
- 3. Plaque Thickness: 0.50 inch.
- Finishes:
 - a. Integral Metal Finish: Mill finish raised surface with dark oxidized background.
- 5. Background Texture: Stipple.
- 6. Integrally Cast Border Style: Square double line, polished.
- 7. Mounting: Concealed studs.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Bronze Castings: ASTM B584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze). One Piece Bronze Casting, no splicing.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of plaques, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish nonferrous-metal devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Plaque Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of plaque, screwed into back of plaque, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of plaque unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard plaques according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.

PLAQUES 101416 - 2

- 2. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
- 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
- 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match plaque finish.
- 5. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF METAL PLAQUES

- A. General: Install plaques using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install plaques level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with plaque surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Install plaques so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 - 3. Before installation, verify that plaque surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

B. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of plaque. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place plaque in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support plaque in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place plaque in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as plaques are installed.

END OF SECTION 101416

PLAQUES 101416 - 3

SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Cast dimensional characters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.4 General

1. Coordinate dimensional letter installation with canopy manufacturer to ensure mounting surfaces and structural supports are adequate for secure anchorage. Contractor shall provide all necessary blocking, reinforcements, or alternate fastener systems as required for safe and stable installation of characters on canopy surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cast Characters: Characters with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.R.K. Ramos.
 - b. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - c. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
 - d. Southwell Company (The).
 - 2. Character Material: Cast aluminum.
 - 3. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of character.
 - 5. Finishes:

- a. Integral Aluminum Finish: A nodized.
- 6. Mounting: Projecting studs.
- 7. Typeface: As indicated.

2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

B. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
- 2. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place spacers on studs, place sign in position with spacers pinched between sign and substrate and install washers and nuts on stud ends projecting

through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

- 3. Coordinate with canopy manufacturer to confirm panel and structural assembly details for secure sign anchorage. Where dimensional characters are mounted to prefinished aluminum canopies, provide:
 - a. Solid-backed letters (not hollow or open)
 - b. Reinforced canopy support or blocking as needed,
 - c. Stainless steel or aluminum fasteners compatible with canopy finish.
 - d. Confirm suitability of installation method with both sign and canopy manufacturers. Installer shall ensure that character mounting does not damage finish, deform panels or compromise canopy integrity.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101423.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the ABA standards of the Federal agency having jurisdiction and ICC A117.1.

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mohawk Sign Systems; Curved Frame Series.
 - 2. Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics.
 - a. Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign.
 - b. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
 - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
 - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.
 - 4. Frame: Vertical retainers to hold changeable sign panel.
 - a. Material: Aluminum.
 - b. Frame Depth: Convex-curved frame to receive removable face sheet and changeable subsurface graphics.
 - c. Profile: Rounded.
 - d. Corner Condition in Elevation: Rounded to radius indicated.
 - e. Finish and Color: Clear anodized.
 - 5. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors.
 - 6. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille. Typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

B. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- D. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.16

SECTION 102113.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments.
- 2. Urinal screens.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments:
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
- 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
- 3. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for each type of toilet compartment material indicated.
- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain plastic toilet compartments from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire Performance: Tested in accordance with, and pass the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 286.

- B. Structural Performance: Where grab bars are mounted on toilet compartments, design panels to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Panels are able to withstand a concentrated load on grab bar of at least 250 lbf applied at any direction and at any point, without deformation of panel.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

2.3 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - ASI Accurate Partitions.
 - 2. ASI Global Partitions.
 - 3. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
 - 4. Hadrian Inc.; Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 5. Partition Systems International of South Carolina (PSISC); Columbia Systems International of South Carolina LLC.
 - 6. Scranton Products.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced, privacy type.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, and with homogenous color throughout thickness of material.
 - Provide with no-sightline system consisting of door and pilaster lapped edges on strike side
 of door and door and pilaster lapped edges on hinge side of door (unless continuous hinge
 is used).
 - 2. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
 - 3. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
 - 4. Color and Pattern: One color and pattern in each room as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Urinal-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- F. Pilaster Shoes: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- G. Pilaster Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- H. Brackets (Fittings):
 - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; extruded aluminum.

2.4 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Door Hardware and Accessories, Heavy Duty: Manufacturer's heavy-duty institutional operating hardware and accessories.
 - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch- thick, stainless steel continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through bolts.
 - 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, surface-mounted, cast stainless steel latch unit, designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access.
 - a. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at toilet enclosures designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.
 - b. Occupancy Indicator Latch and Housing: Satin stainless-steel showing green and red occupancy indicators.
 - 3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, combination cast stainless steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through bolts.
 - 4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, rubber-tipped, cast stainless steel bumper at outswinging doors. Mount with through bolts.
 - 5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, cast stainless steel pull at outswinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at toilet enclosures designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters and walls to suit floor and wall conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Door Size and Swings: Provide sizes shown on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels or Screens: 1/2 inch.
 - b. Panels or Screens and Walls: 1 inch.
 - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls with full-height brackets.
 - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels and adjust, so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on inswinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on outswinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.19

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Public-use washroom accessories.
- 2. Underlavatory guards.
- 3. Custodial accessories.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 - 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

2.2 PUBLIC-WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ASI Group.
 - 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 3. Bradley Corporation.
 - 4. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
- B. Products: Refer to Toilet Accessory Schedule on the drawings.

2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Underlayatory Guard:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - Truebro by IPS Corporation.
 - 2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
 - 3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 1. ASI Group.
- 2. Bradley Corporation.
- 3. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.

B. Utility Shelf:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick; B-298.
- 2. Description: With exposed edges turned down not less than 1/2 inch and supported by two triangular brackets welded to shelf underside.
- 3. Size: 8-inches deep by length shown on drawings.
- 4. Material and Finish: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel, No. 4 finish.

C. Mop and Broom Holder:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: B-239.
- 2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
- 3. Length: 34 inches.
- 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- C. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for portable fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

1.2 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing semirecessed method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- F. Door Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- G. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
- J. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
 - 2) Application Process: Silk-screened.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

- a. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
- b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
- 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
 - Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 directional satin finish.
- L. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 - 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 - 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification: Apply decals at locations indicated.
- D. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS 104416 - 1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amerex Corporation.
 - b. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company.
 - c. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
 - d. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:80-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled container.
- C. Carbon Dioxide Type: UL-rated 10-B:C, 20-lb nominal capacity, with carbon dioxide in manufacturer's standard enameled-metal container.
 - 1. Install one carbon dioxide type fire extinguisher supported by wall-mounted bracket in each electrical room, mechanical room, telephone switchgear room, and other locations shown on the drawings, unless noted otherwise.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
 - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

a. Orientation: Vertical.

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS 104416 - 2

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 104416

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS 104416 - 3

SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Welded corridor lockers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal locker.
- B. Shop Drawings: For metal lockers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locker trim and accessories.
 - 3. Include locker identification system and numbering sequence.
- C. Samples: For each color specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Product Schedule: For lockers. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
 - 2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.

3. Warranty Period for Welded Metal Lockers: Lifetime from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain metal lockers and accessories from single source from single locker manufacturer.

2.2 PERSONAL STORAGE LOCKERS

- A. Basis of Design: Freestyle Personal Storage Locker by Spacesaver, measuring 18"W x 24"D x 72"H, with bottom drawer and sloped top. Receive approval prior to bid for approved equals.
- B. Doors: One piece; fabricated from 0.075-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
 - 1. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than 15 inches wide; welded to inner face of doors.
 - 2. Door Style: Vented panel as follows:
 - a. Louvered Vents: No fewer than six louver openings at top and bottom for single-tier lockers.
- C. Body: Assembled by welding body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
 - 1. Tops, Bottoms, and Sides: 0.060-inch nominal thickness.
 - 2. Backs: 0.048-inch nominal thickness.
 - 3. Shelves: 0.060-inch nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.
- D. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.
 - 1. Cross Frames between Tiers: Channel formed and fabricated from same material as main frames: welded to vertical main frames.
- E. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.

- 1. Knuckle Hinges: Steel, full loop, five or seven knuckles, tight pin; minimum 2 inches high. Provide no fewer than three hinges for each door more than 42 inches high.
- F. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Stainless steel cup with integral door pull, recessed so locking device does not protrude beyond door face; pry and vandal resistant.
 - 1. Multipoint Latching: Finger-lift latch control designed for use with built-in combination locks or padlocks; positive automatic latching and prelocking.
 - a. Latch Hooks: Equip doors 48 inches and higher with three latch hooks and doors less than 48 inches high with two latch hooks; fabricated from 0.120-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to full-height door strikes; with resilient silencer on each latch hook.
 - b. Latching Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard, rattle-free latching mechanism and moving components isolated to prevent metal-to-metal contact, and incorporating a prelocking device that allows locker door to be locked while door is open and then closed without unlocking or damaging lock or latching mechanism.
- G. Locks: Built-in combination locks.
- H. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch high.
- I. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- J. Legs: 6 inches high; formed by extending vertical frame members, or fabricated from 0.075-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to bottom of locker.
 - 1. Closed Front and End Bases: Fabricated from 0.036-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- K. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees.
 - 1. Closures: Vertical-end type.
- L. Filler Panels: Fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- M. Finished End Panels: Fabricated from 0.024-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet to cover unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers: finished to match lockers.
- N. Materials:
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
- O. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 LOCKS

A. Built-in Combination Lock: Key-controlled, three-number dialing combination locks; capable of at least five combination changes made automatically with a control key.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
 - Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments.
- C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:
 - 1. Single-Tier Units: Shelf, one double-prong ceiling hook, and two single-prong wall hooks.
- D. Welded Construction: Factory preassemble metal lockers by welding all joints, seams, and connections; with no bolts, nuts, screws, or rivets used in assembly of main locker groups. Factory weld main locker groups into one-piece structures. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush.
- E. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.
 - 1. Sloping-top corner fillers, mitered.
- F. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.
- G. Finished End Panels: Fabricated to conceal unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
 - 1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls, and elsewhere as indicated, for corrosion resistance.
 - 2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
 - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
 - 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers.
- B. Welded Lockers: Connect groups together with manufacturer's standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.

C. Equipment:

- 1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
- 2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
- 3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
 - Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two aluminum rivets.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect metal lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- B. Touch up marred finishes or replace metal lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 105113

SECTION 113300 - RETRACTABLE STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes manual disappearing stairs.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Indicate rough opening dimensions for ceiling openings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A14.9 Safety Requirements for Ceiling Mounted Disappearing Climbing Systems.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

RETRACTABLE STAIRS 113300 - 1

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Super Simplex Disappearing Stairway as manufactured by Precision Ladders LLC.
- B. Performance Standard: Comply with ANSI A14.9, Commercial Type.
 - 1. Stairway Capacity: Rated at 500 lbs.
 - 2. Door Panel Fire Rating: 1 hour.

2.2 MANUAL DISAPPEARING STAIRWAY

- A. Standard Model: 2000.
 - 1. Provide additional treads from ceiling opening to top of attic floor.
 - 2. Size: 30 by 54 inches.

2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Door Panel: 0.032 inch steel door attached to frame with continuous piano hinge, flush with the bottom of the frame when in the closed position.
- B. Frame: 1/8 inch steel formed channel, custom depth to fill the distance from finished ceiling below to finished floor above.
 - 1. Frame shall have stationary, built-in steps to continue the climb at the same angle as the folding portion of the stair.
- C. Stairway Stringers: 6005-T5 extruded aluminum channel; 5 by 1 by 1/8 inches.
 - 1. Trifold design with steel blade type hinges, adjustable foot with plastic mar-resistant guards.
 - 2. Pitch: 63 degrees.
- D. Treads: 6005-T5 extruded aluminum channel, 5-3/16 by 1-1/4 by 1/8 inches; deeply serrated top surface.
 - 1. Length: 21-1/4 inches.
 - 2. Depth: 5-3/16 inches.
 - 3. Riser Height: 9-1/2 inches.
- E. Railing: Aluminum bar handrail riveted to stringers and upper section.
- F. Hardware: Steel operating arms, double acting steel springs, and cable on both sides.
- G. Accessories:

RETRACTABLE STAIRS 113300 - 2

- 1. Steel pole to aid in opening and closing stairway. Equip pole with hook on one end and rubber bicycle grip on the other.
- 2. Keyed lock for door panel.

H. Finishes:

- 1. Mill finish on aluminum stairway components and handrail.
- 2. Prime coat on door panel and frame.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Completely fabricate stairway ready for installation before shipment to the site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until rough opening and structural support have been properly prepared.
- B. Examine materials upon arrival at site. Notify the carrier and manufacturer of any damage.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- C. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 113300

RETRACTABLE STAIRS 113300 - 3

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Manually operated, single-roller shades.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 10 inches long.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED, SINGLE-ROLLER SHADES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Draper, Inc.
 - 2. Hunter Douglas, Inc.
 - 3. MechoShade Systems, LLC.
 - 4. Silent Gliss Inc.; Silent Gliss International Ltd.
 - 5. Springs Window Fashions; SWFcontract.
- B. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
 - 1. Bead Chains: Manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Clip, jamb mount.
 - 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
 - a. Provide for shadebands that weigh more than 10 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.
- C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idleend assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
 - 1. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back of roller.
 - 2. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- E. Shadebands:
 - 1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 - 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.
 - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

F. Installation Accessories:

- 1. Exposed Headbox: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure including front fascia, top and back covers, endcaps, and removable bottom closure.
 - a. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than 4 inches.
- 2. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 - 1. Source: Roller-shade manufacturer.
 - 2. Type: PVC-coated fiberglass.
 - 3. Product: As indicated in the Finish Legend on the drawings.
 - 4. Openness Factor: 1 percent.
 - 5. Color: As indicated in the Finish Legend on the drawings.

2.4 ROLLER-SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible except as follows:
 - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROLLER-SHADE INSTALLATION

A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Roller Shade Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller-shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid surface material countertops.
- 2. Solid surface material backsplashes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
- C. Samples: For each type of material exposed to view.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces.
 - b. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.
 - c. Formica Corporation.
 - d. Swan Corporation (The).
 - 2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 - 3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, Group 6.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made without urea formaldehyde.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
 - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
- C. Countertops:
 - 1. 3/4-inch- thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 3/4-inch- thick, solid surface material.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- G. Cutouts and Holes:
 - 1. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
- F. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Return all backsplash along wall to the face of surface top.

END OF SECTION 123661.16

NEW CITY OF LINCOLN POLICE DEPARTMENT LINCOLN, ALABMA

WHORTON ENGINEERING, INC.

CONSULTING ENGINEERS

RANDALL WHORTON, P.E., C.E.M.

PH: (256)820-9897 FAX: (256)820-9896

25 SUMMERALL GATE ROAD ANNISTON, ALABAMA 38205



SECTION 220510 - BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and the other sections of Division 22.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements for mechanical installations. The following administrative and procedural requirements are included in this Section to expand the requirements specified in Division 1:
 - 1. Submittals.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Record documents.
 - 4. Maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Rough-ins.
 - 6. Mechanical installations.
 - 7. Cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS," for materials and methods common to the remainder of Division 22, plus general related specifications including:
 - a. Access to mechanical installations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Follow the procedures specified in Division 1 Section "SUBMITTALS."
- B. Increase, by the quantity listed below, the number of mechanical related shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted, to allow for required distribution plus two copies of each submittal required, which will be retained by the Mechanical Consulting Engineer.
 - 1. Shop Drawings Initial Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.
 - 2. Shop Drawings Final Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.
 - 3. Product Data: 1 additional copy of each item.
 - 4. Samples: 1 addition as set.
- C. Additional copies may be required by individual sections of these Specifications.

1.4 RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, indicate the following installed conditions:

- 1. Equipment locations (exposed and concealed), dimensioned from prominent building lines.
- 2. Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, and actual equipment and materials installed.
- 3. Contract Modifications, actual equipment and materials installed.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for equipment items:
 - Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
 - 2. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures to include start-up, break-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions; and summer and winter operating instructions.
 - 3. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.
 - 4. Servicing instructions and lubrication charts and schedules.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.

1.7 WARRANTIES

A. Warranties shall begin at date of final completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROUGH-IN

A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.

3.2 MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS

A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of mechanical systems,

materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:

- 1. Coordinate mechanical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
- 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
- 3. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
- 4. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- 5. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
- 6. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
- 7. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
- 8. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
- 9. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "ACCESS DOORS" and Division 22 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS."
- 11. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

3.3 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Section "CUTTING AND PATCHING." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- B. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of mechanical equipment and materials required to:
 - 1. Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.

- 2. Remove and replace defective Work.
- 3. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
- 4. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.
- 5. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
- 6. Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect/Engineer observation of concealed Work.
- C. Cut, remove and legally dispose of selected mechanical equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of mechanical piping, heating units, plumbing fixtures and trim, and other mechanical items made obsolete by the new Work.
- D. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
- E. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
 - 1. Patch existing finished surfaces and building components using new materials matching existing materials and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
 - 2. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.

END OF SECTION 220510

SECTION 220511 - BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and the Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following basic mechanical materials and methods to complement other Division 22 Sections.
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Concrete equipment base construction requirements.
 - 3. Equipment nameplate data requirements.
 - 4. Labeling and identifying mechanical systems and equipment is specified in Division 22.
 - 5. Nonshrink grout for equipment installations.
 - 6. Field-fabricated metal and wood equipment supports.
 - 7. Installation requirements common to equipment specification Sections.
 - 8. Mechanical demolition.
 - 9. Cutting and patching.
 - 10. Touchup painting and finishing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Pipe, pipe fittings, and piping include tube, tube fittings, and tubing.
- B. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below the roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawl spaces, and tunnels.
- C. Exposed Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- D. Exposed Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors, or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- E. Concealed Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.

F. Concealed Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants, but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end-caps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. When stored inside, do not exceed structural capacity of the floor.
- C. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- D. Coordinate connection of electrical services.
- E. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- F. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

1.6 WARRANTIES

A. Warranties shall begin at date of substantial completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS

- Refer to individual piping system specification Sections for pipe and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual piping system specification Sections in Division 22 for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Solder Filler Metal: ASTM B 32.
 - 1. Alloy Sn95 or Alloy Sn94: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and silver (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent lead content.
 - 2. Alloy E: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and copper (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 3. Alloy HA: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-zinc, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 4. Alloy HB: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-nickel, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
 - 1. BCuP Series: Copper-phosphorus alloys.
 - 2. BAg1: Silver alloy.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Solvent Cements: Manufacturer's standard solvents complying with the following:
 - 1. Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC): ASTM F 493.
 - 2. Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC): ASTM D 2564.
- F. Plastic Pipe Seals: ASTM F 477, elastomeric gasket.
- G. Couplings: Iron body sleeve assembly, fabricated to match outside diameters of plain-end pressure pipes.
 - 1. Sleeve: ASTM A 126, Class B, gray iron.
 - 2. Followers: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M), Grade 32510 or ASTM A 536 ductile iron.
 - 3. Gaskets: Rubber.
 - 4. Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
 - 5. Finish: Enamel paint.

2.3 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division 22 Sections. Where more than one type is specified for listed application, selection is Installer's option, but provide single selection for each product category.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal nameplate with operational data engraved or stamped, permanently fastened to equipment.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and similar essential data.

- 2. Location: An accessible and visible location.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared for required applications with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1 for piping and similar applications, but not less than 1-1/4-inch (30mm) -high letters for ductwork and not less than 3/4-inch (19mm) -high letters for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Standard exterior type stenciling enamel; black, except as otherwise indicated; either brushing grade or pressurized spray-can form and grade.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Standard identification enamel of colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated for piping systems, comply with ASME A13.1 for colors.
- D. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification, with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, lettering, and wording indicated for proper identification and operation/maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.50MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory-packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install piping as described below, except where system Sections specify otherwise. Individual piping system specification Sections in Division 22 specify piping installation requirements unique to the piping system.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans, schematics, and diagrams) indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- C. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping in concealed interior and exterior locations, except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- F. Install exposed interior and exterior piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, except where indicated.
- G. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements. Allow

sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.

- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation plus 1-inch (25mm) clearance around insulation.
- I. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install couplings according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- L. Sleeves are not required for core drilled holes.
- M. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by PE plastic (removable) sleeves.
- N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, concrete floor and roof slabs, and where indicated.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring where specified.
 - 2. Install large enough sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 3. Except for below-grade wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using elastomeric joint sealants specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- O. Above Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch (25mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installation of mechanical seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 2. Install cast-iron wall pipes for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger.
 - 3. Assemble and install mechanical seals according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- P. Below Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Install ductile-iron wall penetration system sleeves according to manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- Q. Fire Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping sealant material. Firestopping materials are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing in.
- S. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping system Sections.
 - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Soldering Manual," Chapter 22 "The

Soldering of Pipe and Tube."

- 4. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Brazing Manual" in the "Pipe and Tube" chapter.
- 5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Note the internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
 - b. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified).
 - c. Align threads at point of assembly.
 - d. Tighten joint with wrench. Apply wrench to valve end into which pipe is being threaded.
 - e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings having threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- T. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below.
 - 1. Install unions in piping 2 inches (50 mm) and smaller adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having a 2-inch (50mm) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
 - 2. Wet Piping Systems (Water and Steam): Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom where mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Refer conflicts to the Architect.
- C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, except where otherwise indicated.
- D. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- E. Install equipment giving right-of-way to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.

- 1. Stenciled Markers: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of mechanical equipment.
 - Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4-inch (6mm) -high lettering for name of unit where viewing distance is less than 2 feet (0.6 m), 1/2-inch (13mm) -high for distances up to 6 feet (1.8 m), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering 2/3 to 3/4 of size of principal lettering.
 - 2. Text of Signs: Provide text to distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to name of identified unit.
- C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices which become visually blocked by work of this Division or other Divisions.

3.4 PAINTING AND FINISHING

A. Damage and Touch Up: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.5 DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove work specified under Division 22 and as indicated.
- B. Where pipe, ductwork, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged or disturbed, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity and quality.
- C. Accessible Work: Remove indicated exposed pipe and ductwork in its entirety.
- D. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried pipe abandoned in place, 2 inches (50 mm) beyond the face of adjacent construction. Cap and patch surface to match existing finish.
- E. Removal: Remove indicated equipment from the Project site.
- F. Temporary Disconnection: Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational equipment indicated for relocation.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces necessary for mechanical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of the trades involved.
- B. Repair cut surfaces to match adjacent surfaces.

3.7 GROUTING

A. Install nonmetallic nonshrink grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms for placement of grout, as required.
- D. Avoid air entrapment when placing grout.
- E. Place grout to completely fill equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide a smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

END OF SECTION 220511

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 3. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.

- 2. Split phase.
- 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
- 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.
 - Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.

- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description:

- 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
- 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
- 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- 4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
- 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Use silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
 - 2. Dearborn Brass.
 - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
 - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).
 - 5. Mid-America Fittings, Inc.
 - 6. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.

2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.

- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.3 FLOOR PLATES

A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
- 2. Filled-system thermometers.
- 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
- 4. Light-activated thermometers.
- 5. Thermowells.
- 6. Dial-type pressure gages.
- 7. Gage attachments.
- 8. Test plugs.
- 9. Test-plug kits.
- 10. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
- 2. Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.
- 3. Section 22 15 13 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for compressed air gages.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
 - 2. Nanmac Corporation.
 - 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 4. WATTS.
 - 5. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 6. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle rigid, back and rigid, bottom, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40,200.
 - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.

- 5. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
- 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 8. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 9. Ring: Metal Stainless steel.
- 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device rigid, back and rigid, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 9. Ring: Metal or plastic.
 - Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device rigid, back and rigid, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

- 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
- 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
- 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
- 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 8. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 9. Ring: Metal Stainless steel.
- 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Cast aluminum: 6-inch nominal size.
 - 3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. WATTS.
 - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - d. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Plastic: 6-inch nominal size.
 - 4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.

- 7. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle Straight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Marsh Bellofram.
 - b. WATTS.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - e. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40,200.
 - 3. Case: Plastic; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 7. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 8. Stem: Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

2.5 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
- 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
- 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
- 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
- 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.6 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ametek U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - e. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - f. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 3. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel: 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
 - 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 9. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 10. Ring: Metal Stainless steel.
 - 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.7 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.8 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.9 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one] thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- B. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- C. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- D. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.10 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
 - 5.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Brass ball valves.
 - 2. Bronze ball valves.
 - 3. Steel ball valves.
 - 4. Iron ball valves.
 - 5. CPVC ball valves.
 - 6. PVC ball valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61and NSF 372.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
 - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
 - 2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Brass Ball Valves, One-Piece:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.

- i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS SP-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.
- C. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Press Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS SP-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.
- D. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS SP-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.
- E. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Press Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS SP-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.

- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- g. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.
- k. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.
- F. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Brass Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Regular.
- G. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Regular.
- H. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Three piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - C. Ends. Thicaded at
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.
- I. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.c. Body Design: Three piece.d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Bronze Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.

- D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim, Press Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or RTPFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze or brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. O-Ring Seal: EPDM or Buna-N.
- E. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.
- F. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Regular.
- G. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.

- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Regular.
- H. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Three piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.
- I. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Three piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.
- J. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Three piece
 - d. Body Material: Bronze
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Regular.
- K. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Three piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.

- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Regular.
- L. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece, Safety-Exhaust:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze, ASTM B584, Alloy C844.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass, with exhaust vent opening for pneumatic applications.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.4 STEEL BALL VALVES

- A. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.
- B. Steel Ball Valves with Regular Port, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Uni-body.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Regular.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Iron Ball Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.c. Body Design: Split body.

d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.

e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.

f. Seats: PTFE.

g. Stem: Stainless steel.h. Ball: Stainless steel.

i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

B. Select valves with the following end connections:

- 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valveend option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
- 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
- 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
- 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
- 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
- 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.4 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

- Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- 2. Brass ball valves, one piece.
- 3. Bronze ball valves, one piece with bronze trim.
- 4. Brass ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 5. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 6. Brass ball valves, three-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 7. Bronze ball valve, three-piece with full port and bronze or brass trim.
- 8. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and bronze trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
- 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150 with full port.
- 3. Iron ball valves. Class 150.

3.5 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

- 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- 2. Brass ball valve.
- 3. Bronze ball valve, one piece with stainless steel trim.
- 4. Brass ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 5. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 6. Brass ball valves, three-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 7. Bronze ball valves, three-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 8. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and stainless steel trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
- 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150 with full port.

3. Iron ball valves, Class 150.

3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

- 1. Brass ball valve, one piece. Provide with threaded or solder-joint ends.
- 2. Bronze ball valve, one piece with bronze trim. Provide with threaded or solder-joint ends.
- 3. Brass ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded, solder or press connection-joint ends.
- 4. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded, solder or press connection-joint ends.
- 5. Brass ball valves, three-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 6. Bronze ball valves, three-piece with full port and stainless steel trim.
- 7. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and stainless-steel trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
- 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150 with full port.
- 3. Iron ball valves, Class 150.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze lift check valves.
- 2. Bronze swing check valves.
- 3. Bronze swing check valves, press ends.
- 4. Iron swing check valves.
- 5. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
- 6. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
- 7. Iron, center-guided check valves.
- 8. Iron, plate-type check valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.

- 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Drinking Water System Components Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
- f. Disc: NBR, PTFE.

2.3 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.
- C. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- D. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.
- E. Bronze Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:
 - 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
- b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B584, bronze.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum 200 psig
- g. Disc: Brass or bronze.

2.4 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- 2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL
 - A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control, Class 125:

- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed exterior lever and weight.
- B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed exterior lever and weight.
- 2.6 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES
 - A. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves, 300 CWP:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - b. Body Material: ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - c. Seal: EPDM.
 - d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
- 2.7 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED, SPRING-LOADED CHECK VALVES
 - A. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: Bronze.
 - B. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: Bronze.
- F. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- G. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 300:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
- e. Seat: Bronze.
- H. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 300:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- I. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- K. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- L. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.

- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- M. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- N. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 300:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- O. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 300:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring; or iron, center-guided, metal-seat or resilient-seat check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded or soldered or press-ends.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
 - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Grooved.

3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

- 1. Vertical, Upflow Applications Only: Bronze lift check valves with bronze nonmetallic disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
- 2. Horizontal and Vertical Applications: Bronze swing check valves with bronze nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with soldered or threaded end connections.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 1. Iron swing check valves with metalseats, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
- 2. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
- Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal resilient seat, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
- 4. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.

3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 1. Iron swing check valves with nonmetallic-to-metal seats, Class 250, with threaded or flanged end connections.
- 2. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.

END OF SECTION 220523.14

SECTION 220523.15 - GATE VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze gate valves.
 - 2. Iron gate valves.
 - 3. CPVC gate valves.
 - 4. PVC gate valves.
 - 5. Chainwheels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.

- 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSP 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. RS Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Bronze Gate Valves, NRS, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- B. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Bronze Gate Valves, NRS, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

E. Bronze Gate Valves, Press Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
- b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Press.
- e. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- f. Stem: Brass or bronze rising.
- g. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- h. Packing: Graphite.
- i. Port: Full.
- j. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 IRON GATE VALVES

- A. Iron Gate Valves, NRS, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Iron Gate Valves, NRS, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- D. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Use gate valves for shutoff service only.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

- 3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG OR LESS)
 - A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, NRS, Class 150 with threaded ends.
 - B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron gate valves, NRS, Class 150 with flanged ends.
- 3.6 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG
 - A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze gate valves NRS, Class 150 with threaded ends.
 - B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron gate valves, NRS, Class 250 with flanged ends.
- 3.7 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE
 - A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze gate valves, NRS, Class 150 with threaded ends.
 - 2. Bronze gate valves, press ends.
 - B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron gate valves, NRS, Class 125 with flanged ends.

END OF SECTION 220523.15

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
- 4. Metal framing systems.
- 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
- 6. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
- 7. Fastener systems.
- 8. Pipe stands.
- 9. Pipe-positioning systems.
- 10. Equipment supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
 - 4. Pipe stands.
 - 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 - 2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.

- 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
- 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.4 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
 - 4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
- 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
- 3. Vertical Members: Two galvanized-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch rods.
- 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized-steel pipe support channels.
- 5. Pipe Supports: Strut clamps, Clevis hanger, Swivel hanger.
- 6. Hardware: Galvanized steel.
- 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
- 8. Height: 12 inches above roof.

D. High-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Single base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- 2. Base: Single vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
- 3. Vertical Members: Two galvanized-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch rods.
- 4. Horizontal Member: One adjustable-height, galvanized- or stainless-steel, pipe-support slotted channel or plate.
- 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Clevis hanger, Swivel hanger.
- 6. Hardware: Galvanized OR Stainless steel.
- 7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch, continuous-thread, galvanized-steel rod, 1/2-inch, continuous-thread, stainless-steel rod.
- 8. Height: 36 inches above roof.

E. High-Profile, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- 2. Bases: Two or more: vulcanized rubber.
- 3. Vertical Members: Two or more, galvanized or stainless-steel channels.
- 4. Horizontal Members: One or more, adjustable-height, galvanized or stainless-steel pipe support.
- 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Strut clamps, Clevis hanger or Swivel hanger.
- 6. Hardware: Galvanized or Stainless steel.
- 7. Accessories: Protection pads. 1/2-inch. continuous-thread rod.
- 8. Height: 36 inches above roof.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.9 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout: suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:

- 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Pipe Stand Installation:

- 1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- H. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

P. Insulated Piping:

- 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

- a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.

- 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
- 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
- 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
- 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
- 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
- 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
- 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
- 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
- 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
- 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
- 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

- 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
- 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
- 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.

- 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
- 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
- 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
- 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
- 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Isolation pads.
 - 2. Isolation mounts.
 - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
 - Housed spring mounts.
 - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 7. Spring hangers.
 - 8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
 - 9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
 - 10. Resilient pipe guides.
 - 11. Seismic snubbers.
 - 12. Restraining braces and cables.
 - 13. Steel and inertia vibration isolation equipment bases.
- B. This Section is applicable to storm shelter/safe room. All requirements of ICC 500 shall apply.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Component Importance Factor: 1.25
 - 2. Component Response Modification Factor: 2
 - 3. Component Amplification Factor: 1
 - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): .304.
 - 5. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: .151.
 - 6. Reference Sheet S1.01 Storm Shelter Notes for additional information and requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

- Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
- 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
- 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproved by ICC-ES, or preapproved by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
 - 2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 3. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 - 5. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 6. Mason Industries.

- 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
- 8. Vibration Isolation.
- 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- E. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
 - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- F. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
 - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- G. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
 - 1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - 6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- H. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
 - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 - 2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.

- 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- I. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
 - 1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
 - 2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
 - 3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- J. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- K. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 - 7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- L. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
 - 7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 - 8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- M. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.

N. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 - 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - Mason Industries.
 - 6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 - 7. Vibration Isolation.
 - 8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
 - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- E. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
 - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 4. Hilti, Inc.
 - 5. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 6. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
 - 7. Mason Industries.
 - 8. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
 - 9. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.
 - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- E. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
 - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.
- F. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- G. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- H. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.

- I. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- J. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- K. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- L. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- M. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
 - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
 - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
 - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
 - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application.

- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Restraints:

- 1. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
- 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inches.
- 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using approved methods.

B. Piping Restraints:

- 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
- 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
- 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.
- E. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- G. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

H. Drilled-in Anchors:

- Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
- 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
- 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
- 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole

- and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
- 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
- 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of sprint isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 220548

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.
- 2. Warning signs and labels.
- 3. Pipe labels.
- 4. Stencils.
- 5. Valve tags.
- 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch, stainless steel, 0.025-inch aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: White.
- 3. Background Color: Black.
- 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

- 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: Black.
- 3. Background Color: White.
- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

- 1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
- 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

- 1. Near each valve and control device.
- 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
- 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
- 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
- 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 - 2. High-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 - 3. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Safety green.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 - 4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Safety black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.

- 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
- 3. Letter Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: White.b. Hot Water: White.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White.d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: White.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
 - 5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 07 16 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" for equipment insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

- 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
- 2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
- 3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
- 4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 1, without jacket.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket with factory-applied ASJ.
 - 2. 850 deg F.

- 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
- 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 - 1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
- F. ASJ Adhesive and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements, with supplier listing on DOD QPD Qualified Products Database.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

- 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
- 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
- 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on belowambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White or gray.
- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

- Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- 2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

- 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 - 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 - 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 - Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 - 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 - 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 - 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
- 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
- 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
- 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

- 1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
- 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
- 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.12 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.15 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
 - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- 2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Stormwater and Overflow:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- F. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- G. Hot Service Drains:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- H. Hot Service Vents:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.
- B. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

3.17 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- Piping, Concealed: Only exposed piping shall include field applied jacket.
 - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed: Exposed piping insulated with flexible elastomeric does not require jacket. Jackets will be required for exposed piping on other pipe insulation materials.
 - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 3. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.

3.18 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 3. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.
 - 2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 3. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.016 inch thick.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

3.19 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper tube and fittings.
- 2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
- 3. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
- 4. Stainless steel piping and fittings.
- 5. CPVC piping.
- 6. PEX tube and fittings.
- 7. PEX-AL-PEX tube and fittings.
- 8. PEX-AL-HDPE tube and fittings.
- 9. PVC pipe and fittings.
- 10. PP-R pipe and fittings.
- 11. Piping joining materials.
- 12. Encasement for piping.
- 13. Transition fittings.
- 14. Dielectric fittings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- 1. Pipe and tube.
- 2. Fittings.
- 3. Joining materials.
- 4. Transition fittings.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
- 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

- 3. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
- 4. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
- 5. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Architect's written permission.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Polypropylene Piping (PP-R) Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace PP-R pipe and fittings that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Warranty is to cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system due to defects in materials or manufacturing.
 - 2. Warranty is to be in effect only upon submission by the Contractor to the manufacturer of valid pressure/leak documentation indicating that the system was tested and passed the manufacturer's pressure/leak test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K and ASTM B88, Type M.

- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- H. Copper-Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube in accordance with ASTM F2014.
- I. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper Tube Appurtenances:
 - 1. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B75 copper tube or ASTM B584 bronze castings.
 - 2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting, EPDM-rubber gasket, UL classified per NSF 61 and NSF 372, and rated for minimum 180 deg F, for use with ferrous housing and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psigminimum CWP pressure rating.
- J. Copper Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze, or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 - 2. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- K. Copper-Tube, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
 - b. Stainless steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

- 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
- 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
 - 2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
- E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10. ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.
- H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
 - 2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
 - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 14 to NPS 18: 250 psig.
 - 2) NPS 20 to NPS 46: 150 psig.

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 - 1. ASTM A53/A53M, Type E,, Standard Weight.
 - 2. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M or ASTM A106/A106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions:
 - 1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
 - 2. Hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.

- 4. Threaded ends.
- E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 - 1. ASTM Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A106/A106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 2. AWWA Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.

2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493.
 - 1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
 - 1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
 - 2. < Double click to insert sustainable design text for adhesive primer.>
 - 3. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of

Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- 4. Verify adhesive primer complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - Description:
 - a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
 - b. Brass or stainless steel threaded end.
 - c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
 - d. Rubber O-ring.
 - e. Union nut.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

- 1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
- 2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F1545.
- 3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K; joints.

- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 2. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper or annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 4. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- J. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 - 2. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install valves according to the following:
 - 1. Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 3. Section 22 05 23.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 4. Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- H. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- P. Install PEX tubing with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 22 11 23 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- T. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.

- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Square cut groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 - PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- N. Joints for PEX Tubing, ASTM: Join according to ASTM F1807 for metal insert and copper crimp ring fittings and ASTM F1960 for cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
- O. Joints for PEX Tubing, ASSE: Join according to ASSE 1061 for push-fit fittings.
- P. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for copper, ductile iron, galvanized steel, and stainless steel tubing and piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper, ductile iron, galvanized steel, and stainless steel tubing and piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Vacuum breakers.
- 2. Backflow preventers.
- 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
- 4. Automatic water shutoff valve systems.
- 5. Balancing valves.
- 6. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- 7. Strainers for domestic water piping.
- 8. Outlet boxes.
- 9. Hose stations.
- 10. Hose bibbs.
- 11. Wall hydrants.
- 12. Ground hydrants.
- 13. Post hydrants.
- 14. Roof hydrants.
- 15. Drain valves.
- 16. Water-hammer arresters.
- 17. Trap-seal primer device.
- 18. Trap-seal primer systems.
- 19. Flexible connectors.
- 20. Water meters.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 21 11 00 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for fire water-service backflow prevention devices.
- 2. Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gauges, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
- 3. Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
- 4. Section 22 32 00 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
- 5. Section 22 43 00 "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
- 6. Section 22 45 00 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
- 7. Section 22 47 16 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
- 8. Section 22 47 23 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

9. Section 23 09 23.18 "Leak Detection Instruments" for leak detection devices related to HVAC applications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AMI: Advanced Metering Infrastructure.
- B. AMR: Automatic Meter Reading.
- C. FKM: A family of fluroelastomer materials defined by ASTM D1418.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Test and inspection reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 3. Body: Bronze.
 - 4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 5. Finish: Rough bronze or Chrome plated.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 - 2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 - 3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 - 4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1020.
 - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1012.
 - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/2.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
 - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
 - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 3. Pressure Loss: 8 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
 - 4. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
- C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1015.
 - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- D. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1024.
- 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.

E. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1052.
- 2. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
- 3. Inlet Size: NPS 3/4.
- 4. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 5. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

F. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gauges, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

- A. Water Regulators Insert drawing designation if any:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme, A Division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
 - 4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; bronze or cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
 - 5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded or solder for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged or solder for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

B. Water-Control Valves:

- 1. Description: Pilot-operated, diaphragm-type, single-seated, main water-control valve.
- 2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
- 3. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless steel body.
 - a. Pattern: Angle or Globe-valve design.
 - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
- 4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
 - 2. Body: Brass or bronze.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
 - 4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Automatic Flow Control Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Flow Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent over 95 percent of the working range.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
 - 3. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
 - 4. Body: Stainless steel or brass.
 - 5. Flow Cartridge: Stainless steel or antiscale polymer.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded or solder joint.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

- A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Cash Acme, A Division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - d. Leonard Valve Company.
 - e. POWERS: A WATTS Brand.
 - f. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - g. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
 - h. WATTS.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1070.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
 - 5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
 - 6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
 - Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperaturecontrol handle.
 - 8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 deg F.
 - 9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
- B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - b. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

- 2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
- 5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
- 6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
- 7. Finish: Chrome plated.
- 8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 deg-F.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.9 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

- 1. Mounting: Recessed. Fire rated.
- 2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel, Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic, Plastic, Stainless steel box and faceplate.
- 3. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
- 4. Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1-1/2.
- 5. Accessory: Water hammer arresters.
- 6. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
- 7. Drain: NPS 1-1/2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
- 8. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber, household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
- 9. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber, household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

- 1. Mounting: Recessed.
- 2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel, Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic, Plastic, Stainless steel box and faceplate.
- 3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
- 4. Accessory: Water hammer arrestor.
- 5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.10 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. WATTS.
 - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
- 3. Body Material: Bronze.
- 4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
- 5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
- 6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
- 9. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
- 10. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
- 11. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
- 12. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
- 13. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
- 14. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
- 15. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
- 16. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.11 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
- Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 3. Operation: Loose key.
- 4. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
- 5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
- Outlet, Concealed: With integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
- 8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 9. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 10. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

B. Nonfreeze, Hot- and Cold-Water Wall Hydrants Insert drawing designation if any:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.

- b. Josam Company.
- c. MIFAB, Inc.
- d. Prier Products, Inc.
- e. WATTS.
- f. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
- g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Operation: Loose key.
- 5. Casing and Operating Rods: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamps.
- 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
- 7. Outlet: Concealed.
- 8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
- 9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 10. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
- 11. Operating Key(s): Two with each wall hydrant.
- C. Nonfreeze Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Prier Products, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
 - 4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 6. Operation: Loose key or wheel handle.
 - 7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
 - 8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
 - 9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.12 GROUND HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze Ground Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
- b. Josam Company.
- c. MIFAB, Inc.
- d. Prier Products, Inc.
- e. WATTS.
- f. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
- g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
- 3. Type: Nonfreeze, concealed-outlet ground hydrant with box.
- 4. Operation: Loose key.
- 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
- 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
- 7. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 8. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
- 9. Box: Standard pattern with cover.
- 10. Box and Cover Finish: Rough bronze.
- 11. Operating Key(s): Two with each ground hydrant.
- 12. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1011.

2.13 POST HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries. LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
 - 3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
 - 4. Operation: Loose key.
 - 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
 - 6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
 - 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 - 9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
 - 10. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
 - 11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

2.14 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Josam Company.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. WATTS.
 - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
- 3. Type: Metal bellows or Piston.
- 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.15 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

- A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. WATTS.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - Standard: ASSE 1018.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
 - 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
 - 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.
- B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Precision Plumbing Products.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 minimum, trap makeup connection.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
 - 4. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

2.16 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- B. Stainless Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless steel tubing with stainless steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.17 WATER METERS

- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
 - Standard: AWWA C700.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - 3. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
 - 4. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
 - 1) System shall be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.
 - 5. Case: Bronze.
 - End Connections: Threaded or flanged.
- B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Standard: AWWA C701.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig working pressure.
 - 3. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
 - 4. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
 - System shall be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.
 - 5. Case: Bronze.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded or flanged.
- C. Compound-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Standard: AWWA C702.

- 2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
- 3. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
- 4. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
 - 1) System shall be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.
- 5. Case: Bronze.
- 6. End Connections: Flanged.

D. Ultrasonic-Type Water Meters:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - b. Master Meter, Inc.
 - c. Neptune Technology Group Inc.
- 2. Standard: Applicable portions of AWWA C700.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig working pressure.
- 4. Body Design: Ultrasonic open flow tube; totalization meter.
- 5. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
 - 1) System shall be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.
- 6. Case: Bronze.
- 7. End Connections: Threaded or flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Backflow Preventers: Install in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

- B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- C. Water Control Valves: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- D. Automatic Water Shutoff Valves: Test for signal strength before valve installation. Install automatic shutoff valve downstream from main domestic water shutoff valve. Install valve controller in an accessible location with sensors in areas where water is likely to accumulate.
- E. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design flow rates.
- F. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each control valve] water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- H. Outlet Boxes: Install boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 1-1/2-by-3-1/2-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Hose Stations: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 - Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 1-1/2-by-3-1/2-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Ground Hydrants: Install with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- K. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants: Install with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- L. Nonfreeze, Nondraining-Type Post Hydrants: Set in concrete or pavement.
- M. Nonfreeze, Sanitary Yard Hydrants: Set with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- N. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Roof Hydrants: Install with drain connection piped to nearest floor drain or to the exterior.
- O. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.
- P. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

- Q. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- R. Trap-Seal Primer Systems: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Automatic water shutoff valve systems.
 - 5. Balancing valves.
 - 6. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
 - 7. Outlet boxes.
 - 8. Hose stations.
 - 9. Wall hydrants.
 - 10. Ground hydrants.
 - 11. Post hydrants.
 - 12. Roof hydrants.
 - 13. Trap-seal primer device.
 - 14. Trap-seal primer systems.
 - 15. Water meters.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- D. Adjust each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections.
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
- 2. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
- 3. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
- 4. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For pump controls.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Detail pumps and adjacent equipment. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which pumps will be attached.
 - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for inline, domestic-water pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- C. Drinking Water System Components Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- D. Seismic Performance: Inline, domestic-water pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

B. Pump Construction:

- 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
- 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
- 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
- 4. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
- 5. Impeller: stainless steel.
- 6. Motor: Single speed.

2.3 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, SEPARATELY COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontal.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing:

- Radially split bronze with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
- b. Built to permit servicing of pump internals without disturbing the casing or the suction and discharge piping.
- c. Gauge port tappings at suction and discharge nozzles.
- 2. Impeller: Bronze or stainless steel, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
- 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
- 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
- 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
- 6. Bearings: permanently lubricated ball type.
- 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
- 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.4 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing:

- a. Radially split bronze brass or cast iron with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
- b. Built to permit servicing of pump internals without disturbing the casing or the suction and discharge piping.
- c. Gauge port tappings at suction and discharge nozzles.
- 2. Impeller: Bronze or brass, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
- 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
- 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.

- 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
- 6. Bearings: permanently lubricated ball type.
- 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
- 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.5 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.

B. Pump Construction:

- 1. Casing: Radially split bronze cast or ductile iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base.
- 2. Impeller: Bronze brass or stainless steel, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
- 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel or stainless-steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
- 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
- 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
- 6. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
- 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
- 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.6 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following:
 - 1. Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 3. Section 22 05 23.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 5. Install pressure gauge and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gauge and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tappings where provided or install pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.
- C. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set thermostats, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

SECTION 221123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
- 2. Piping specialties.
- 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
- 4. Manual gas shutoff valves.
- 5. Motorized gas valves.
- 6. Pressure regulators.
- 7. Service meters.
- 8. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
 - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
 - 5. Service meters. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities. Include bypass fittings and meter bars supports.
 - 6. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
 - 2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for pressure regulator assembly.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators and service meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
 - Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Owner's written permission.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 08 31 13 "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 65 psig.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

- a. Material Group: 1.1.
- b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
- c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
- d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
- e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
- 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
- 6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
 - 1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
 - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
 - 3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
 - 5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
 - 6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B88, Type K.
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 - 2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
 - a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
 - 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.

- D. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B88, Type K.
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 - 2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
 - a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
 - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
 - c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
- E. Tin-Lined Copper Tube: ASTM B280, seamless, annealed, with interior tin-plated lining.
 - 1. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
 - a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
 - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
 - c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
- F. PE Pipe: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
 - 1. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
 - 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet.
 - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
 - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
 - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 - 4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
 - b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
 - d. Factory-connected anode.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 - 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.

- a. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
- b. Buna-nitrile seals.
- c. Acetal collets.
- d. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
- 6. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - a. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
 - b. PE body tube.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Acetal collets.
 - e. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- 7. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - d. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
 - 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
 - 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
 - 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
 - 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
 - 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches
- B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
 - 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
 - 2. Nitrile seals.
 - 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
 - 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
 - 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.
- C. Y-Pattern Strainers:
 - 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 - 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
 - 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- D. Basket Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

E. T-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
- 2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.
- F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.5 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

- 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
- 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
- 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 2. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 3. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 4. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
 - 5. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 6. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - 2. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 3. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 4. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 - 5. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 6. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - 3. Stem: Bronze: blowout proof.
 - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
 - 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 - 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- G. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze.
 - 3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.

- 6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 7. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- H. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 - 1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 - 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 - 4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 - 5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- I. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 - 1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 - 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 - 4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 - 5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- J. Valve Boxes:
 - 1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
 - 2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
 - 3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
 - 5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.6 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

- A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.
 - 1. Body: Brass or aluminum.
 - 2. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 - 3. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Normally closed.
 - 5. Visual position indicator.
 - 6. Electrical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.
- B. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.

- 1. Pilot operated.
- 2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
- 3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
- 4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
- 5. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
- 6. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
- 7. Normally closed.
- 8. Visual position indicator.

2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

- 1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
- 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
- 3. Elevation compensator.
- 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

- 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
- 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
- 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
- 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
- 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
- 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
- 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
- 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.

C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

- 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
- 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
- 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
- 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
- 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
- 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
- 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
- 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 10 psig.

- D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
 - 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
 - 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 - 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 - 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 - 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 - 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
 - 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Install pressure gage downstream from each service regulator.

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of

- 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
- 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
- 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

5. Prohibited Locations:

- Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
- b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.5 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground, on concrete bases.
- B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
- C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.
- D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
- E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.

- F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
- G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

- 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
- 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
- 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
- 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
- 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

- 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
- 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

- H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified.
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping and copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for corrugated stainless-steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- F. Support vertical runs of steel piping and copper tubing to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- G. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless-steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in specifications and plans for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.11 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
 - c. Color: Gray.
 - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.12 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be:
 - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
 - 2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
 - 3. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 - 4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
 - 5. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:

- 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- 3.17 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG
 - A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
 - 2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
 - 3. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 - 4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
 - 5. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 - C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
 - E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- 3.18 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 5 PSIG
 - A. Aboveground Piping: Maximum operating pressure more than 5 psig.
 - B. Aboveground, Branch Piping: Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.

- C. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- D. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- E. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- F. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.19 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
- B. Underground:
 - PE valves.
 - 2. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valves.

3.20 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Bronze plug valve.
 - 2. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Bronze plug valve.
 - 2. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

- 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
- 2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- 3. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
- 4. Copper tube and fittings.
- 5. PVC pipe and fittings.
- 6. Specialty pipe fittings.
- 7. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 13 13 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Caulking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
 - 2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.5 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
- B. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
- C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping: AWWA C151/A21.51, with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
- D. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-End Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
 - 2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

- 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.
- G. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.
 - 1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify solvent cement complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 - Verify adhesive primer complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 - 1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.

2.8 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 2. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.

- 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
- 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- 3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 4. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 - 2. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.
- 2.9 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING
 - A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
 - B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
 - C. Form: Sheet or tube.
 - D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- M. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- O. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- P. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- Q. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

R. Plumbing Specialties:

- 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- 3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 - 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - 5. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install hangers for cast-iron, steel and copper soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of cast iron, steel, stainless-steel and copper soil piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 6. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.

- a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
- b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
- c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
- d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
- 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
- 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.

- 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Extra Heavy Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed calking materials; and calked joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 3. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- F. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Extra Heavy Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed calking materials; and calked joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
 - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Floor drains.
 - 2. Floor sinks.
 - 3. Trench drains.
 - 4. Channel drainage systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- D. PE: Polyethylene.
- E. PP: Polypropylene.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

SANITARY DRAINS 221319.13-1

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. REFERENCE PLUMBING PLANS

2.3 FLOOR SINKS

A. REFERENCE PLUMBING PLANS

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. REFERENCE PLUMBING PLANS

2.5 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. REFERENCE PLUMBING PLANS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 - 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1inch total depression.
 - 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
 - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
 - 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASME A112.3.1 for installation of stainless-steel channel drainage systems.
 - 1. Install on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

SANITARY DRAINS 221319.13-2

- D. Install FRP channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- E. Install plastic channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- F. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

SANITARY DRAINS 221319.13-3

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - Backwater valves.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Air-admittance valves.
 - 4. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 13 23 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for metal and concrete interceptors outside the building, grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, and solids interceptors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

- Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
- 2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
- 5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Stainless Steel Exposed Cleanouts:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
- 2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 3. Body Material: Stainless steel tee with side cleanout as required to match connected piping.
- 4. Closure: Stainless steel plug with seal.

C. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

- Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
- 2. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 3. Type: Adjustable housing Threaded, adjustable housing.
- 4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 5. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
- 6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
- 7. Adjustable Housing Material: `Plastic with threads.
- 8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
- 9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
- 10. Top-Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
- 11. Riser: ASTM A74, Extra-Heavy Service Class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

D. Stainless Steel Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Standards: ASME A112.3.1; NSF listed.
- 2. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 3. Housing: Type 304 stainless steel.
- 4. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
- 5. Riser: ASTM A74, Extra-Heavy Service Class, drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
- 6. Body or Ferrule: Stainless steel.

- 7. Outlet Connection: Inside caulk.
- 8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron or Plastic with threads.
- 9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Stainless steel.
- 10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
- 11. Top-Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Light Medium Duty.
- E. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts Insert drawing designation, if any:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 - 3. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 - 4. Closure Plug:
 - a. Brass.
 - b. Countersunk or raised head.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
 - 5. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel cover plate with screw.
 - 6. Wall Access, Frame and Cover: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.3 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

- A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
 - 2. Housing: Plastic.
 - 3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.
- B. Stack Air-Admittance Valves:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1050 for vent stacks.
 - 2. Housing: Plastic.
 - 3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
 - Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- C. Wall Box for Air-Admittance Valves:
 - 1. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation. Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
 - 2. Size: Approximately 6 inches wide by 6 inches high by 4 inches deep.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

- 1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A74, Service Class, hub-and-spigot, castiron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C564 rubber gaskets.
- 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

- 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
- 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings Insert drawing designation, if any:
 - 1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

D. Floor-Drain, Inline Trap Seal:

- 1. Description: Inline floor drain trap seal, forming a physical barrier to slow trap evaporation while not impeding flow from drain.
- 2. Material: Polymer.
- 3. Standard: Tested and certified in accordance with ASSE 1072.
- 4. Listing: ICC-ES or IAPMO listed.
- 5. Size: Same as floor drain outlet or strainer throat.

E. Air-Gap Fittings:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
- 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
- 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
- 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
- 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

F. Sleeve Flashing Device:

- 1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
- 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

G. Stack Flashing Fittings:

- 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
- 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

H. Vent Caps:

- 1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
- 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

I. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:

- 1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
- 2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.

J. Expansion Joints:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
- 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
- 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
- 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping.
 - 1. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- F. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.
- G. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- H. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

- J. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- M. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- N. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Commercial, electric, domestic-water booster heaters.
- 2. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 3. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
- 4. Residential, small-capacity, electric, domestic-water heaters.
- 5. Residential, collector-to-tank, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters.
- 6. Residential, collector-to-tank-coil, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters.
- 7. Residential, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 8. Flow-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
- 9. Thermostat-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
- 10. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Product Data for water heater compliance with ASHRAE's "Advanced Energy Design Guides."
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Booster Heaters:
 - 1) Controls and Other Components: Five years.
 - b. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Five years.
 - c. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
 - d. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: 10 years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
 - e. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Five year(s).
 - f. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.

- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Booster Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Hatco Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water booster heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 1453.
 - 4. Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal or steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - d. Jacket: Rectangular shaped, with stainless steel front panel, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
 - 1) Option: Booster heaters with total of 9 kW or less may have one, two, or three elements.
 - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat, to setting of at least 180 deg F.
 - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - h. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - i. Gauges: Combination temperature-and-pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gauge.

- B. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Precision Boilers.
 - e. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - f. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - g. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 1453.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges, and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
 - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-andpressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than workingpressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
- C. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Standard: UL 174.
 - 3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.

- a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
- 4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2.3 RESIDENTIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Residential, Small-Capacity, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. STATE.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 174.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal or steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection if tank has drain outlet. Provide hose-end drain valve in piping for domestic-water heaters without drain outlet. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - b. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - c. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - d. Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type.

- e. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- f. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
- g. Power Supply Cord: 24 to 72 inches with plug.
- h. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 174.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel, cylindrical, with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2.4 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Flow-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.

- b. Bradley Corporation.
- c. Chronomite Laboratories, Inc; a division of Morris Group International.
- d. Eemax, Inc.
- e. Stiebel Eltron, Inc.
- Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water-heater) heating appliance.
- 4. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
 - d. Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
 - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
- 5. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
- B. Thermostat-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chronomite Laboratories, Inc; a division of Morris Group International.
 - d. Stiebel Eltron, Inc.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water-heater) heating appliance.
 - 4. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
 - d. Temperature Control: Thermostat.
 - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
 - 5. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.5 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.

- b. AMTROL, Inc.
- c. State Industries.
- d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
- 4. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water-heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.
 - Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig-maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- H. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater.
- I. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

- K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Residential, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential, electric, domestic-water heaters on water-heater stand on floor or on domestic-water heater mounting bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

- C. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- D. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Retain first paragraph below if domestic-water heaters are required to withstand seismic design loads. Insert special requirements for seismic restraints here or detail on Drawings.
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- G. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple electric, domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each electric, domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each electric, domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- K. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of 25 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-

reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

- L. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- M. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- N. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- O. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and tankless, electric, domestic-water heaters. Training shall be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Commercial, power-burner, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 2. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 3. Commercial, direct-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heater.
- 4. Commercial, gas-fired, high-efficiency, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 5. Commercial, coil-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters.
- 6. Commercial, grid-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters.
- 7. Gas-fired, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
- 8. Residential, direct-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 9. Residential, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 10. Commercial, gas- and oil-fired, domestic-water heaters.
- 11. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Product Data for water heater compliance with ASHRAE's "Advanced Energy Design Guides."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).
 - b. Commercial, Finned-Tube, Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).
 - 3) Separate Hot-Water Storage Tanks: Five years.
 - c. Gas-Fired, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
 - d. Residential, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
 - e. Commercial, Gas- and Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Burner: Two year(s).

- 3) Controls and Other Components: Two years.
- f. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Atmospheric, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - e. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - f. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.

- 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potablewater tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- c. Lining: Cement, Glass, Nickel plate, Phenolic coating, Sheet copper, complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner: For use with atmospheric, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Ignition: Standing pilot or ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
- 7. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- B. Commercial, Power-Burner, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Precision Boilers.
 - c. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.

- 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potablewater tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- c. Lining: Cement, Glass, Nickel plate, Phenolic coating, Sheet copper, complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner: UL 795 for power-burner, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 6. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- C. Commercial, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - d. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.

- 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner: For use with power-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
- 7. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.
- D. Commercial, Direct-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - c. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.

- g. Burner: For use with direct-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
- h. Ignition: Standing pilot or ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
- i. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 6. Direct-Vent System: Through-wall or roof, coaxial- or double-channel vent assembly with domestic-water heater manufacturers' outside intake/exhaust screen.
- E. Commercial, Gas-Fired, High-Efficiency, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 4. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 95 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for gas-fired, high-efficiency, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - h. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - i. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 6. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- 2.3 COMMERCIAL, FINNED-TUBE, GAS-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
 - A. Commercial, Coil-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Laars Heating Systems Company; a subsidiary of Bradford White Corporation.
 - d. Raypac.
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.13/CSA 4.9 for hot-water-supply boilers.
- 4. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, separate hot-water storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.
- 5. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig working-pressure rating for hot-water-supply boiler, domestic-water heater.
 - a. Heat Exchanger: Helix or spiral, finned-copper-tube coils with bronze headers.
 - b. Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

6. Boiler Appurtenances:

- a. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
- b. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
- c. Burner: For use with coil-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
- d. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, intermittent electronicignition system.
- e. Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage-tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
- f. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
- 7. Support: Steel base or skids.
- 8. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- 9. Hot-Water Storage Tank: Connected with piping to circulating pump and domestic-water heater.
 - a. Construction: In accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
 - b. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

- c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 10. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - e. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 11. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F continuous-water-temperature rating.
- 12. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.
- 13. Mounting: Domestic-water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.
- B. Commercial, Grid-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Laars Heating Systems Company; a subsidiary of Bradford White Corporation.
 - d. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - e. Raypak.
 - f. RBI.
 - g. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.13/CSA 4.9 for hot-water-supply boilers.
 - 4. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.
 - 5. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig working-pressure rating for hot-water-boiler-type, domestic-water heater.
 - a. Heat Exchanger: Horizontal, straight, finned-copper tubes with bronze headers.
 - b. Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - 6. Boiler Appurtenances:

- a. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
- b. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
- c. Burner: For use with grid-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
- d. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, intermittent electronicignition system.
- e. Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage-tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
- f. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
- 7. Support: Steel base or skids.
- 8. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- 9. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - e. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 10. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F continuous-water-temperature rating.
- 11. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.
- 12. Mounting: Domestic-water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.

2.4 GAS-FIRED, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - 2. Bradford White Corporation.
 - 3. Laars Heating Systems Company: a subsidiary of Bradford White Corporation.
 - 4. NORITZ America Corp.
 - 5. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - 6. Rinnai Corporation.
 - 7. State Industries.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 for gas-fired, instantaneous, domestic-water heaters for indoor application.
- D. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - 1. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

- 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 3. Heat Exchanger: Copper tubing or Stainless steel.
- 4. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- 5. Jacket: Metal, with enameled finish, or plastic.
- 6. Burner: For use with tankless, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
- 7. Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
- 8. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- E. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.5 RESIDENTIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Residential, Atmospheric, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Burner: For use with atmospheric, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and naturalgas fuel.
 - h. Ignition: Standing pilot or ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - i. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 6. Draft Hood: Low-profile-type draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.

- B. Residential, Direct-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Burner: For use with direct-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - h. Ignition: Standing pilot or ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - i. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 6. Direct-Vent System: Through-wall or roof, coaxial- or double-channel vent assembly with domestic-water heater manufacturers' outside intake/exhaust screen.
- C. Residential, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
 - 3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

- a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
- b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
- c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
- d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
- f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
- g. Burner: For use with power-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
- h. Ignition: Standing pilot or ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 60730-2-5, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
- i. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 5. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.

2.6 COMMERCIAL, GAS- AND OIL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 or UL 732 requirements appropriate for dual-fuel, gas- and oil-fired, domestic-water heaters.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - 2. Precision Boilers.
 - 3. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - 4. State Industries.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
 - 1. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- E. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - 1. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - 2. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - 3. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - 4. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - 5. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - 6. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - 7. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as

heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domesticwater heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

F. Fuel Burner:

- 1. Standards: Combination gas-and-oil burner assembly, complying with appropriate requirements of UL 795; or comply with UL 296 for oil burners for No. 2 fuel oil and UL 795 for natural-gas fuel.
- 2. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
- 3. Vent Connection: In accordance with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for dualfuel, domestic-water heaters.

2.7 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. AMTROL, Inc.
 - c. State Industries.
 - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 4. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potablewater tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.
 - c. Air Precharge Pressure: 20 psig.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

- E. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 1. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include 1/2-psig pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
- H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- I. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
 - 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
- J. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domesticwater heater.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
 - 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
- K. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- M. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Residential, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential domestic-water heaters on water-heater stand on floor or domestic-water heater mounting bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- D. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters in accordance with NFPA 54.

- 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
- 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
- 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
- 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 23 11 23 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- F. Install oil-fired, domestic-water heaters in accordance with NFPA 31.
 - Install shutoff valves on fuel-oil supply piping to oil-fired water-heater burners without shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 23 11 13 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- G. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- H. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- I. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- J. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- K. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- L. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- M. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- N. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- O. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Section 23 11 13 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- C. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 23 11 23 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, gas-fired, tankless commercial, gas- and oil-fired, domestic-water heaters. Training shall be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Floor-mounted, bottom-outlet water closets.
- 2. Wall-mounted water closets.
- Flushometer valves.
- 4. Toilet seats.
- 5. Supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Effective Flush Volume: Average of two reduced flushes and one full flush per fixture.
- B. Remote Water Closet: Located more than 30 feet from other drain line connections or fixture and where less than 1.5 drainage fixture units are upstream of the drain line connection.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Provide the following:
 - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
 - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets, Floor Mounted, Bottom Outlet, Top Spud:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
 - g. Sloan Valve Company.
 - h. TOTO USA, INC.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 - i. Color: White.
 - 3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
- B. Water Closets, Floor Mounted, Bottom Outlet, Close-Coupled Flushometer Tank:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASSE/ASME 1037/CSA B125.37.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.

- d. Style: Pressure assisted.
- e. Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
- g. Water Consumption: Maximum 1.1 gal per flush.
- h. Color: White.
- 3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
- 4. Flushometer Tank: Pressure assisted.

2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 7. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - 8. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
 - 9. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- B. Battery-Powered, Solenoid-Actuator, Piston Flushometer Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Moen Incorporated.
 - d. Sloan Valve Company.
 - e. TOTO USA, INC.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 7. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 8. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 9. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
- 10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
- 11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Church Seats; Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. Olsonite Seat Co.
 - f. TOTO USA, INC.
 - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
- 3. Material: Plastic.
- 4. Type: Commercial (Standard).
- 5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
- 6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
- 7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
- 8. Seat Cover: Not required.
- 9. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Water-Closet Installation:

- 1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.

B. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

- 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
- 4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- 5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- C. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
 - 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 - 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
 - Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

- 1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
- 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
- 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

New Lincoln Police Department Lincoln, Alabama

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

END OF SECTION 224213.13

SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wall-hung urinals.
 - 2. Urinal flushometer valves.
 - 3. Supports.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Provide the following:
 - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
 - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

- A. Urinals Wall Hung, Back Outlet, Blowout: .
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn.

2. Fixture:

- Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15.
- b. Material: Vitreous china.
- c. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
- d. Water Consumption: 0.125 gpf.
- e. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/4; top.
- f. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2; back.
- g. Color: White.
- 3. Waste Fitting:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
 - b. Size: NPS 2.
- 4. Support: Type I urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture.
- 5. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.
- B. Urinals Wall Hung, Back Outlet, Siphon Jet: Accessible.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet with extended shields.
 - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
 - e. Water Consumption: 0.125 gpf.

- f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4; top.g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2; back.
- h. Color: White.
- 3. Waste Fitting:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
 - b. Size: NPS 2.
- 4. Support: Type I urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture.
- 5. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves: .
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037/ASME 112.1037/CSA B125.37.
 - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 7. Style: Exposed.
 - 8. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
 - 9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 10. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.
- B. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves: .
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037/ASME 112.1037/CSA B125.37.
 - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 7. Style: Exposed.
 - 8. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
 - 9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.

- 10. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.
- C. Battery-Powered, Solenoid-Actuator, Piston Flushometer Valves: .
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037/ASME 112.1037/CSA B125.37.
 - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 - 8. Style: Exposed.
 - 9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
 - 10. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
 - 11. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
 - 12. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.

2.3 SUPPORTS

- A. Type I Urinal Carrier:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Wade Drains.
 - e. WATTS.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
- B. Type II Urinal Carrier:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.

- d. Wade Drains.
- e. WATTS.
- f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

- 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to rough-in drawings.
- 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
- 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC A117.1.
- 4. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

B. Support Installation:

- 1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
- 2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
- 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
- 4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

- 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations
- 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

- 1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
- 2. Match sealant color to urinal color.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Enameled, cast-iron, counter-mounted lavatories.
- 2. Vitreous-china, counter-mounted lavatories.
- 3. Enameled, cast-iron, wall-mounted lavatories.
- 4. Vitreous-china, wall-mounted lavatories.
- 5. Precast GFRC, wall-mounted lavatories.
- 6. Precast GFRC, freestanding lavatories.
- 7. Lavatory systems.
- 8. Manually operated lavatory faucets.
- 9. Automatically operated lavatory faucets.
- 10. Supply fittings.
- 11. Waste fittings.
- 12. Lavatory supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Provide the following:
 - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
 - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory Self-Rimming, Vitreous China, Counter Mounted:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Sloan Valve Company.
 - e. TOTO USA, INC.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
- b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
- c. Color: White.
- d. Mounting Material: Sealant.
- 3. Faucet: Insert lavatory faucet designation from "Manually Operated Lavatory Faucets" or "Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.
- B. Lavatory Vitreous China, Undercounter Mounted:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.

- b. Kohler Co.
- c. Sloan Valve Company.
- d. TOTO USA, INC.
- e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
- b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
- c. Color: White.
- d. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory Vitreous China, Wall Mounted, with Back:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Color: White.
 - d. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 - 3. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier...
 - Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- B. Lavatory Ledge Back, Vitreous China, Wall Mounted:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Color: White.
 - d. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 - 3. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier.

- 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- C. Lavatory Wheelchair, Vitreous China, Wall Mounted:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Slab or wheelchair.
 - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 27 by 20 inches.
 - d. Color: White.
 - e. Mounting: For concealed-arm carrier.
 - 3. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier..
 - 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- D. Lavatory Corner Type, Vitreous China, Wall Mounted:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Three-sided-front apron with three-sided back.
 - c. Nominal Size: Corner, 16 by 16 inches.
 - d. Color: White.
 - e. Mounting Materials: Wall brackets.
 - 3. Support: Type III lavatory carrier with two hanger plates made for corner lavatories...
 - 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- 2.3 PRECAST GFRC, WALL-MOUNTED, SINGLE-BASIN, MULTI-STATION LAVATORY
 - A. Lavatory Precast GFRC, Two-Station, Wall-Mounted, Rectangular Countertop Deck with Single Integral Ramp Basin:
 - 1. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: CSA B45.8/IAPMO Z403 and ICC A117.1.
 - b. Type: Straight front and side aprons with straight back.

- c. Drain Type: Slot drain.d. Color: White linen.
- e. Mounting Material: Concrete wall brackets.
- 2. Waste Fittings:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
 - b. Type: 1-1/2-inch slip joint connection.
 - c. Finish: Polished chrome.
- 3. Support: Manufacturer's standard product.
- 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- B. Lavatory Precast GFRC, Three-Station, Wall-Mounted, Rectangular Countertop Deck with a Single Integral Ramp Basin:
 - 1. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: CSA B45.8/IAPMO Z403 and ICC A117.1.
 - b. Type: Straight front and side aprons with straight back.
 - c. Drain Type: Slot drain.
 - d. Color: White linen.
 - e. Mounting Material: Concrete wall brackets.
 - 2. Waste Fittings:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
 - b. Type: 1-1/2-inch slip joint connection.
 - c. Finish: Polished chrome.
 - 3. Support: Manufacturer's standard product.
 - 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly in accordance with ICC A117.1.

2.4 MANUALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Lavatory Faucets Manual Type: Single-Control Mixing, Commercial:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - 2. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 - 3. Body Type: Centerset.
 - 4. Body Material: Commercial, solid-brass, or die-cast housing with brazed copper and brass waterway.
 - 5. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - 6. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.

2.5 AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Lavatory Faucets Automatic Type: Battery Powered Electronic Sensor Operated, Mixing,:
 - 1. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
 - 2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 - 4. Body Type: Single hole.
 - 5. Body Material: Commercial, solid-brass, or die-cast housing with brazed copper and brass waterway.
 - 6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - 7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
 - 8. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.6 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Wheel handle.
- F. Risers:
 - 1. NPS 3/8.
 - 2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper-pipe and brass straight or offset tailpieces ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless steel, flexible hose riser.

2.7 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:

- 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
- Material:
 - a. Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
 - b. Stainless steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch thick stainless steel tube to wall, and stainless steel wall flange.

2.8 LAVATORY SUPPORTS

- A. Lavatory Carrier:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildewresistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Service sinks.
- 2. Kitchen/utility sinks.
- 3. Handwash sinks.
- 4. Manually operated sink faucets.
- 5. Automatically operated sink faucets.
- 6. Supply fittings.
- 7. Waste fittings.
- 8. Sink supports.
- 9. Grout.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 11 40 00 "Foodservice Equipment" for NSF-compliant foodservice and handwash sinks.
- 2. Section 22 41 00 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" for residential sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Provide the following:
 - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
 - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted sinks.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sinks and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments for automatic faucets.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE SINKS

- A. Service Sinks Molded Stone, Floor Mounted: .
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sinks from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
 - b. Shape: Square.
 - c. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 inches.
 - d. Height: 10 inches.
 - e. Rim Guard: On all top surfaces.
 - f. Color: Not applicable.
 - g. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
 - 3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
- B. Service Sinks Enameled Cast Iron, Trap Standard Mounted: .
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sinks from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
 - b. Type: Service sink with back.

- c. Back: Two faucet holes.
- d. Nominal Size: 22 by 18 inches.
- e. Color: White.
- f. Mounting: NPS 3 P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
- g. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
- C. Service Sinks Enameled Cast Iron, Floor Mounted: .
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sinks from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
 - b. Style: With front apron and raised back.
 - c. Nominal Size: 28 by 28 inches.
 - d. Color: White.
 - e. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
 - f. Rim Guard: Coated wire.

2.2 HANDWASH SINKS

- A. Handwash Sinks Stainless Steel:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sinks from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standards:
 - 1) ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
 - 2) NSF 61.
 - b. Type: Wall-mounted stainless steel basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
 - c. Overall Dimensions: 17 by 16 by 5 inches.
 - d. Material: 18 gauge, Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 3. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
 - 4. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.

2.3 MANUALLY OPERATED SINK FAUCETS

- A. Sink faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Commercial Sink Faucets Manual Type: Single-control mixing,.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sink faucets from single source from single manufacturer.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

- 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
- 4. Body Type: Centerset.
- 5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass, or die-cast housing with brazed copper and brass waterway.
- 6. Finish: Chrome plated.
- 7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.0 to 1.28 gpm.
- 8. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed or Back/wall, exposed.
- 9. Valve Handle(s): Lever 4-inch wrist blade.
- 10. Spout Type: Swivel gooseneck.
- 11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
- 12. Spout Outlet: Hose thread in accordance with ASME B1.20.7.
- 13. Pre-Rinse Unit:
 - a. Style: Flexible hose.
 - b. Riser: 18-inch rigid riser.
 - c. Hose: 44-inch flexible stainless steel with heat-resistant handle.
 - d. Wall bracket.
- C. Commercial Service Sink Faucets Manual Type: .
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sink faucets from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: Wall/back mounted, brass body, with integral service stops, checks, spout with bucket/pail hook, 3/4-inch hose thread end, integral vacuum breaker, inlets 8 inches o.c., and two-handle mixing.
 - Faucet:
 - a. Standards:
 - 1) ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - 2) NSF 61 and NSF 372.
 - 3) ICC A117.1.
 - 4) ASSE 1001 (VB).
 - b. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
 - c. Handles: Lever 6-inch wrist blade.
 - d. Cartridges: One-fourth turn compression Ceramic.
 - e. Brace: Adjustable top brace.

2.4 AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED SINK FAUCETS

- A. Sink faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Commercial Sink Faucets Automatic Type: Battery-powered, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sink faucets from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.

- 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
- 5. Body Type: Centerset.
- 6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass, or die-cast housing with brazed copper and brass waterway.
- 7. Finish: Chrome plated.
- 8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
- 9. Mounting Type: Deck.
- 10. Spout Type: Swivel, gooseneck.
- 11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
- 12. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Below deck, adjustable temperature manual side handle, with hot/cold water indicators, with check valves.
- 13. Control Module: Below deck, water-resistant module with internal flow setting switches.

2.5 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Wheel handle.
- F. Risers:
 - 1. NPS 1/2.
 - 2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe.

2.6 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
 - Material:
 - a. Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 17-gauge brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

2.7 SINK SUPPORTS

A. Sink Carrier:

- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain sink supports from single source from single manufacturer.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

2.8 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply piping and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb in accordance with rough-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install wall-mounted sinks at accessible mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildewresistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

SECTION 224223 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Individual shower receptors.
 - 2. Shower faucets.
 - 3. Shower basins.
 - 4. Group showers.
 - 5. Outdoor showers.
 - 6. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for showers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Provide the following:
 - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
 - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For shower faucets to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS

A. Individual FRP Showers, SH-1:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aquarius Bathware; a Praxis Company.
 - b. LASCO Bathware.
 - c. MAAX.
 - d. Sterling.
 - e. Swan Corporation (The).
- 2. General: FRP shower enclosure with faucet and receptor
- 3. Standard: ANSI Z124.1.2.
- 4. Type: Sectional unit without top.
- 5. Faucet: As shown on the Plumbing Schedule.
- 6. Nominal Size and Shape 36 by 36 inches square
- 7. Color:White
- 8. Bathing Surface: Slip resistant according to ASTM F462.
- 9. Outlet: Drain with NPS 2 outlet.

2.2 SHOWER FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Shower Faucets (Reference Plumbing Schedule):
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - b. American Standard.
 - c. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
 - d. Delta.
 - e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - g. Leonard Valve Company.
 - h. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Description: Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head.
 - Faucet:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
 - b. Body Material: Solid brass.
 - c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - d. Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: 2.0 gpm
 - e. EPA WaterSense: Required.
 - f. Operation: Single-handle, push-pull or twist or rotate control.
 - g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
 - h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
 - 4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.
 - 5. Shower Head:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- b. Type: Ball joint with arm and flange.
- c. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
- d. Integral Volume Control: Required.
- e. Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: 2.0 gpm.
- 6. FRP Shower Basins:

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 22 05 23.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- E. Set shower receptors and shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

G. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildewresistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of showers and basins, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean showers and basins, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of showers and basins for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224223

SECTION 230510 - BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and the other sections of Division 23.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements for mechanical installations. The following administrative and procedural requirements are included in this Section to expand the requirements specified in Division 1:
 - 1. Submittals.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Record documents.
 - 4. Maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Rough-ins.
 - 6. Mechanical installations.
 - 7. Cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS," for materials and methods common to the remainder of Division 23, plus general related specifications including:
 - a. Access to mechanical installations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Follow the procedures specified in Division 1 Section "SUBMITTALS."
- B. Increase, by the quantity listed below, the number of mechanical related shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted, to allow for required distribution plus two copies of each submittal required, which will be retained by the Mechanical Consulting Engineer.
 - 1. Shop Drawings Initial Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.
 - 2. Shop Drawings Final Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.
 - 3. Product Data: 1 additional copy of each item.
 - 4. Samples: 1 addition as set.
- C. Additional copies may be required by individual sections of these Specifications.

1.4 RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, indicate the following installed conditions:

- 1. Equipment locations (exposed and concealed), dimensioned from prominent building lines.
- 2. Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, and actual equipment and materials installed.
- 3. Contract Modifications, actual equipment and materials installed.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for equipment items:
 - Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
 - 2. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures to include start-up, break-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions; and summer and winter operating instructions.
 - 3. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.
 - 4. Servicing instructions and lubrication charts and schedules.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.

1.7 WARRANTIES

A. Warranties shall begin at date of final completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROUGH-IN

A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.

3.2 MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of mechanical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Coordinate mechanical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
 - 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
 - 3. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 - 4. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
 - 5. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
 - 6. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
 - 7. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
 - 8. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
 - Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of
 equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting,
 with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible
 location.
 - Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "ACCESS DOORS" and Division 23 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS."
 - 11. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

3.3 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Section "CUTTING AND PATCHING." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- B. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of mechanical equipment and materials required to:
 - 1. Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.

- 2. Remove and replace defective Work.
- 3. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
- 4. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.
- 5. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
- 6. Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect/Engineer observation of concealed Work.
- C. Cut, remove and legally dispose of selected mechanical equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of mechanical piping, heating units, plumbing fixtures and trim, and other mechanical items made obsolete by the new Work.
- D. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
- E. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
 - Patch existing finished surfaces and building components using new materials matching existing materials and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
 - 2. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.

END OF SECTION 230510

SECTION 230511 - BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and the Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following basic mechanical materials and methods to complement other Division 23 Sections.
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Concrete equipment base construction requirements.
 - 3. Equipment nameplate data requirements.
 - 4. Labeling and identifying mechanical systems and equipment is specified in Division 23.
 - 5. Nonshrink grout for equipment installations.
 - 6. Field-fabricated metal and wood equipment supports.
 - 7. Installation requirements common to equipment specification Sections.
 - 8. Mechanical demolition.
 - 9. Cutting and patching.
 - 10. Touchup painting and finishing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Pipe, pipe fittings, and piping include tube, tube fittings, and tubing.
- B. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below the roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawl spaces, and tunnels.
- C. Exposed Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- D. Exposed Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors, or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- E. Concealed Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.

F. Concealed Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants, but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end-caps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. When stored inside, do not exceed structural capacity of the floor.
- C. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- D. Coordinate connection of electrical services.
- E. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- F. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

1.6 WARRANTIES

A. Warranties shall begin at date of substantial completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS

- Refer to individual piping system specification Sections for pipe and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual piping system specification Sections in Division 23 for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Solder Filler Metal: ASTM B 32.
 - 1. Alloy Sn95 or Alloy Sn94: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and silver (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent lead content.
 - 2. Alloy E: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and copper (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 3. Alloy HA: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-zinc, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 4. Alloy HB: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-nickel, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
 - 1. BCuP Series: Copper-phosphorus alloys.
 - 2. BAg1: Silver alloy.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Solvent Cements: Manufacturer's standard solvents complying with the following:
 - 1. Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC): ASTM F 493.
 - 2. Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC): ASTM D 2564.
- F. Plastic Pipe Seals: ASTM F 477, elastomeric gasket.
- G. Couplings: Iron body sleeve assembly, fabricated to match outside diameters of plain-end pressure pipes.
 - 1. Sleeve: ASTM A 126, Class B, gray iron.
 - 2. Followers: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M), Grade 32510 or ASTM A 536 ductile iron.
 - 3. Gaskets: Rubber.
 - 4. Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
 - 5. Finish: Enamel paint.

2.3 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division 23 Sections. Where more than one type is specified for listed application, selection is Installer's option, but provide single selection for each product category.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal nameplate with operational data engraved or stamped, permanently fastened to equipment.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and similar essential data.

- 2. Location: An accessible and visible location.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared for required applications with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1 for piping and similar applications, but not less than 1-1/4-inch (30mm) -high letters for ductwork and not less than 3/4-inch (19mm) -high letters for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Standard exterior type stenciling enamel; black, except as otherwise indicated; either brushing grade or pressurized spray-can form and grade.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Standard identification enamel of colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated for piping systems, comply with ASME A13.1 for colors.
- D. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification, with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, lettering, and wording indicated for proper identification and operation/maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.50MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory-packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install piping as described below, except where system Sections specify otherwise. Individual piping system specification Sections in Division 23 specify piping installation requirements unique to the piping system.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans, schematics, and diagrams) indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- C. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping in concealed interior and exterior locations, except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- F. Install exposed interior and exterior piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, except where indicated.
- G. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements. Allow

sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.

- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation plus 1-inch (25mm) clearance around insulation.
- I. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install couplings according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- L. Sleeves are not required for core drilled holes.
- M. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by PE plastic (removable) sleeves.
- N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, concrete floor and roof slabs, and where indicated.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring where specified.
 - 2. Install large enough sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 3. Except for below-grade wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using elastomeric joint sealants specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- O. Above Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch (25mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installation of mechanical seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 2. Install cast-iron wall pipes for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger.
 - 3. Assemble and install mechanical seals according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- P. Below Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Install ductile-iron wall penetration system sleeves according to manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- Q. Fire Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping sealant material. Firestopping materials are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing in.
- S. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping system Sections.
 - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Soldering Manual," Chapter 22 "The

Soldering of Pipe and Tube."

- 4. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Brazing Manual" in the "Pipe and Tube" chapter.
- 5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Note the internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
 - b. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified).
 - c. Align threads at point of assembly.
 - d. Tighten joint with wrench. Apply wrench to valve end into which pipe is being threaded.
 - e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings having threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- T. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below.
 - 1. Install unions in piping 2 inches (50 mm) and smaller adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having a 2-inch (50mm) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
 - 2. Wet Piping Systems (Water and Steam): Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom where mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Refer conflicts to the Architect.
- C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, except where otherwise indicated.
- D. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- E. Install equipment giving right-of-way to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.

- 1. Stenciled Markers: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of mechanical equipment.
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4-inch (6mm) -high lettering for name of unit where viewing distance is less than 2 feet (0.6 m), 1/2-inch (13mm) -high for distances up to 6 feet (1.8 m), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering 2/3 to 3/4 of size of principal lettering.
 - 2. Text of Signs: Provide text to distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to name of identified unit.
- Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices which become visually blocked by work of this Division or other Divisions.

3.4 PAINTING AND FINISHING

A. Damage and Touch Up: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.5 DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove work specified under Division 23 and as indicated.
- B. Where pipe, ductwork, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged or disturbed, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity and quality.
- C. Accessible Work: Remove indicated exposed pipe and ductwork in its entirety.
- D. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried pipe abandoned in place, 2 inches (50 mm) beyond the face of adjacent construction. Cap and patch surface to match existing finish.
- E. Removal: Remove indicated equipment from the Project site.
- F. Temporary Disconnection: Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational equipment indicated for relocation.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces necessary for mechanical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of the trades involved.
- B. Repair cut surfaces to match adjacent surfaces.

3.7 GROUTING

A. Install nonmetallic nonshrink grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms for placement of grout, as required.
- D. Avoid air entrapment when placing grout.
- E. Place grout to completely fill equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide a smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

END OF SECTION 230511

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- Sleeves.
- 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
- 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
- 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
- 5. Grout.
- Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fireresistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description:

- 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
- 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
- 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
- 4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
- 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description:

- 1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- 2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
 - 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 - 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
 - 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.

B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves, Molded-PE or -PP sleeves, or Molded-PVC sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves, Stack-sleeve fittings.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel, cast brass or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - I. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - m. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
- 4. Metal framing systems.
- 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
- 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
- 7. Fastener systems.
- 8. Pipe stands.
- 9. Equipment stands.
- 10. Equipment supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
 - 2. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.

2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
- 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
- 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
- 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.

2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.8 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - a. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than percent.
- 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
- 4. Accessories: Protection pads.

C. Low-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
- 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - a. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than Insert value percent.
- 3. Vertical Members: Two, galvanized-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
- 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized-steel pipe support channels.
- 5. Pipe Supports: Roller.
- 6. Hardware: Galvanized steel.
- 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
- 8. Height: 12 inches above roof.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT STANDS

- A. Description: Individual foot supports with elevated adjustable channel cross bars and clamps/fasteners/bolts for ground or roof supported outdoor equipment components, without roof membrane penetration, in a pre-fabricated system that can be modularly-assembled on site.
- B. Foot Material: Rubber or polypropylene.
- C. Rails Material: Hot dip galvanized carbon steel.
- D. Wind/Sliding Load Resistance: Up to 150 MPH minimum.

2.11 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.

- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use

- operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

- 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:

- 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

- a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and Section 09 96 00 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.

- 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
- 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
- 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
- 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
- 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
- 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
- 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
- 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
- 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

- 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
- 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
- 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.

- 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
- 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
- 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
- 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
- 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Isolation pads.
 - Isolation mounts.
 - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
 - 5. Housed spring mounts.
 - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 7. Spring hangers.
 - 8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
 - 9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
 - 10. Resilient pipe guides.
 - 11. Freestanding and restrained air-mounting system.
 - 12. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails.
 - 13. Seismic snubbers.
 - 14. Restraining braces and cables.
 - 15. Steel and inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.
- B. This Section is applicable to storm shelter/safe room. All requirements of ICC 500 shall apply.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 250 mph.
 - 2. Building Category: enclosed; exposure category C.
 - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
 - 4. Reference Sheet S1.01 Storm Shelter Notes for additional information and requirements.

B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

- 1. Component Importance Factor: 1.25
- 2. Component Response Modification Factor: 2
- 3. Component Amplification Factor: 1
- 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): .304.
- 5. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: .151.
- 6. Reference Sheet S1.01 Storm Shelter Notes for additional information and requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
- 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
- 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
 - 2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 3. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 - Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 6. Mason Industries.
 - 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 - 8. Vibration Isolation.
 - 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- E. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
 - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- F. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
 - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- G. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
 - 1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - 6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- H. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.

- 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
- 2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
- 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- I. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
 - 1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
 - 2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
 - 3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- J. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- K. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 - 7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- L. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.

- 7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
- 8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- M. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.
- N. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.2 AIR-MOUNTING SYSTEMS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 2. Firestone Industrial Products Company.
 - 3. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - Mason Industries.
 - 5. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
- D. Air Mounts: Freestanding, single or multiple, compressed-air bellows.
 - 1. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows.
 - 2. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
 - 3. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig.
 - 4. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
 - 5. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- E. Restrained Air Mounts: Housed compressed-air bellows.
 - 1. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows and spring, with angle-iron frame having vertical-limit stops and channel-section top with leveling adjustment and attachment screws.
 - 2. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
 - 3. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig.

- 4. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
- 5. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch.

2.3 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 - 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 5. Mason Industries.
 - 6. Thybar Corporation.
 - 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 - Vibration Isolation.
 - 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. General Requirements for Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- E. Lower Support Assembly: Formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
- F. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
 - Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
 - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
 - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

- 2. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
 - a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant standard neoprene.
- G. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- H. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

2.4 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 - 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 5. Mason Industries.
 - 6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 - 7. Vibration Isolation.
 - 8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
 - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- E. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
 - Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

- 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
- 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 4. Hilti, Inc.
 - Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 6. Loos & Co.: Cableware Division.
 - 7. Mason Industries.
 - 8. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
 - 9. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.
 - Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- E. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
 - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.
- F. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- G. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

- H. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- I. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- J. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- K. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- L. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- M. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
 - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
 - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
 - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
 - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Equipment Restraints:

- 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
- 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
- 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using approved methods.

C. Piping Restraints:

- 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
- 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
- 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

I. Drilled-in Anchors:

 Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

- 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
- 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
- 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
- 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
- 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust air-spring leveling mechanism.
- D. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- E. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-mounting systems. Refer to Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.
- 2. Warning signs and labels.
- 3. Pipe labels.
- 4. Duct labels.
- 5. Stencils.
- 6. Valve tags.
- 7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: Black.
- 3. Background Color: White.

- 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch Insert dimension thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: Black.
- 3. Background Color: Black.
- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch Insert dimension thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

- 1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
- 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

B. Stencils for Ducts:

- 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
- 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- C. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.

- 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
- 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
- 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
- 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - 2. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
 - 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 - 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Colors:

- a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
- b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
- c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
- d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
- e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
- f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

B. Related Sections

- General requirements for testing agencies are specified in the Division-1 Section Quality Control Services.
- 2. Other Division-23 Sections specify balancing devices and their installation, and materials and installations of mechanical systems.
- 3. Individual Division-23 system sections specify leak testing requirements and procedures.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies the requirements and procedures total mechanical systems testing, adjusting, and balancing. Requirements include measurement and establishment of the fluid quantities of the mechanical systems as required to meet design specifications, and recording and reporting the results.
- B. Test, adjust, and balance the following mechanical systems
 - 1. Supply air systems, all pressure ranges; including variable volume and double duct systems.
 - 2. Return air systems.
 - 3. Exhaust air systems.
 - 4. Verify temperature control system operation.
- C. Test systems for proper sound and vibration levels.
- D. This Section does not include:
 - 1. Testing boilers and pressure vessels for compliance with safety codes;
 - 2. Specifications for materials for patching mechanical systems;
 - 3. Specifications for materials and installation of adjusting and balancing devices. If devices must be added to achieve proper adjusting and balancing, refer to the respective system sections for materials and installation requirements.
 - 4. Requirements and procedures for piping and ductwork systems leakage tests.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Systems testing, adjusting, and balancing is the process of checking and adjusting all the building environmental systems to produce the design objectives. It includes:
 - 1. The balance of air and water distribution;
 - 2. Adjustment of total system to provide design quantities;
 - 3. Electrical measurement;
 - 4. Verification of performance of all equipment and automatic controls;
 - 5. Sound and vibration measurement.
- B. Test: To determine quantitative performance of equipment.
- C. Adjust: To regulate the specified fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment (e.g., reduce fan speed, throttling).
- D. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system (submains, branches, and terminals) according to specified design quantities.
- E. Procedure: Standardized approach and execution of sequence of work operations to yield reproducible results.
- F. Report forms: Test data sheets arranged for collecting test data in logical order for submission and review. These data should also form the permanent record to be used as the basis for required future testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Terminal: The point where the controlled fluid enters or leaves the distribution system. These are supply inlets on water terminals, supply outlets on air terminals, return outlets on water terminals, and exhaust or return inlets on air terminals such as registers, grilles, diffusers, louvers, and hoods.
- H. Main: Duct or pipe containing the system's major or entire fluid flow.
- I. Submain: Duct or pipe containing part of the systems' capacity and serving two or more branch mains.
- J. Branch main: Duct or pipe serving two or more terminals.
- K. Branch: Duct or pipe serving a single terminal.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Agency Data
 - 1. Submit proof that the proposed testing, adjusting, and balancing agency meets the qualifications specified below.
- B. Engineer and Technicians Data:
 - 1. Submit proof that the Test and Balance Engineer assigned to supervise the procedures, and the technicians proposed to perform the procedures meet the qualifications specified below.
- C. Procedures and Agenda: Submit a synopsis of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures and agenda proposed to be used for this project.
- D. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance and operating data that include how to test, adjust, and

balance the building systems. Include this information in maintenance data specified in Division 1 and mechanical specifications.

- E. Sample Forms: Submit sample forms, if other than those standard forms prepared by the AABC are proposed.
- F. Certified Reports: Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing reports bearing the seal and signature of the Test and Balance Engineer. The reports shall be certified proof that the systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced in accordance with the referenced standards; are an accurate representation of how the systems have been installed; are a true representation of how the systems are operating at the completion of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures; and are an accurate record of all final quantities measured, to establish normal operating values of the systems. Follow the procedures and format specified below:
 - Draft reports: Upon completion of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures, prepare draft reports on the approved forms. Draft reports may be hand written, but must be complete, factual, accurate, and legible. Organize and format draft reports in the same manner specified for the final reports. Submit 2 complete sets of draft reports. Only 1 complete set of draft reports will be returned.
 - 2. Final Report: Upon verification and approval of draft reports, prepare final reports, type written, and organized and formatted as specified below. Submit 2 complete sets of final reports.
 - 3. Report Format: Report forms shall be those standard forms prepared by the referenced standard for each respective item and system to be tested, adjusted, and balanced. Bind report forms complete with schematic systems diagrams and other data in reinforced, vinyl, three-ring binders. Provide binding edge labels with the project identification and a title descriptive of the contents. Divide the contents of the binder into the below listed divisions, separated by divider tabs:
 - a. General Information and Summary
 - b. Air Systems
 - c. Hydronic Systems
 - d. Temperature Control Systems
 - e. Special Systems
 - f. Sound and Vibration Systems
 - 4. Report Contents: Provide the following minimum information, forms and data:
 - a. General Information and Summary: Inside cover sheet to identify testing, adjusting, and balancing agency, Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineer, and Project. Include addresses, and contact names and telephone numbers. Also include a certification sheet containing the seal and name address, telephone number, and signature of the Certified Test and Balance Engineer. Include in this division a listing of the instrumentations used for the procedures along with the proof of calibration.
 - b. The remainder of the report shall contain the appropriate forms containing as a minimum, the information indicated on the standard report forms prepared by the AABC and NEBB, for each respective item and system. Prepare a schematic diagram for each item of equipment and system to accompany each respective report form.
- G. Calibration Reports: Submit proof that all required instrumentation has been calibrated to tolerances specified in the referenced standards, within a period of six months prior to starting the project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. PRE-QUALIFIED CONTRACTORS FOR THIS ROLE.

 Superior Test & Balance, Inc. (AABC) 1545 Gulf Shores Parkway, PMB #294 Gulf Shores, AL 36542 Tel: 251.317.3088

 Systems Analysis, Inc. (AABC & NEBB) 217 Oxmoor Circle Birmingham, AL 35209 Tel: 205.802.7850

 National True-Test, Inc. (NEBB) 5757 Carrington Lake Parkway Trussville, AL 35173 Tel: 205.681.9050

 Environmental Testing Service, Inc. (NEBB) 150 Highway 216 Montevallo, AL 35115 Tel: (205) 476-8640

- B. Any Test & Balance Contractors not listed above must be requested and approved in writing ten (10) days prior to the bid.
- C. Agency Qualifications
 - Employ the services of an independent testing, adjusting, and balancing agency meeting the
 qualifications specified below, to be the single source of responsibility to test, adjust, and balance
 the building mechanical systems identified above, to produce the design objectives. Services
 shall include checking installations for conformity to design, measurement and establishment of
 the fluid quantities of the mechanical systems as required to meet design specifications, and
 recording and reporting the results.
 - 2. An independent testing, adjusting, and balancing agency certified by Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) in those testing and balancing disciplines required for this project, and having at least one Professional Engineer registered in the State in which the services are to be performed, certified by AABC as a Test and Balance Engineer.

D. Codes and Standards:

- 1. NEBB: "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."
- 2. AABC: "National Standards For Total System Balance".
- 3. ASHRAE: ASHRAE Handbook, 1984 Systems Volume, Chapter 37, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing.
- E. Pre-Balancing Conference: Prior to beginning of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures, schedule and conduct a conference with the Architect/Engineer and representatives of installers of the mechanical systems. The objective of the conference is final coordination and verification of system operation and readiness for testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Systems Operation: Systems shall be fully operational prior to beginning procedures.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Test, adjust and balance air conditioning systems during summer season and heating systems during winter season, including at least a period of operation at outside conditions within 5 deg. F wet bulb temperature of maximum summer design condition, and within 10 deg. F dry bulb temperature of minimum winter design condition. Take final temperature readings during seasonal operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PRELIMINARY PROCEDURES FOR AIR SYSTEM BALANCING

- A. Before operating the system, perform these steps:
 - Obtain design drawings and specifications and become thoroughly acquainted with the design intent.
 - 2. Obtain copies of approved shop drawings of all air handling equipment, outlets (supply, return, and exhaust) and temperature control diagrams.
 - 3. Compare design to installed equipment and field installations.
 - 4. Walk the system from the system air handling equipment to terminal units to determine variations of installation from design.
 - 5. Check filters for cleanliness.
 - 6. Check dampers (both volume and fire) for correct and locked position, and temperature control for completeness of installation before starting fans.
 - 7. Prepare report test sheets for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended procedures for testing. Prepare a summation of required outlet volumes to permit a crosscheck with required fan volumes.
 - 8. Determine best locations in main and branch ductwork for most accurate duct traverses.
 - 9. Place outlet dampers in the full open position.
 - 10. Prepare schematic diagrams of system "as-built" ductwork and piping layouts to facilitate reporting.
 - 11. Lubricate all motors and bearings.
 - 12. Check fan belt tension.
 - 13. Check fan rotation.

3.2 MEASUREMENTS

- A. Provide all required instrumentation to obtain proper measurements, calibrated to the tolerances specified in the referenced standards. Instruments shall be properly maintained and protected against damage.
- B. Provide instruments meeting the specifications of the referenced standards.
- C. Use only those instruments which have the maximum field measuring accuracy and are best suited to the function being measured.
- D. Apply instrument as recommended by the manufacturer.
- E. Use instruments with minimum scale and maximum subdivisions and with scale ranges proper for the value being measured.
- F. When averaging values, take a sufficient quantity of readings which will result in a repeatability error of less than 5 percent. When measuring a single point, repeat readings until 2 consecutive identical values are obtained.
- G. Take all reading with the eye at the level of the indicated value to prevent parallax.
- H. Use pulsation dampeners where necessary to eliminate error involved in estimating average of rapidly fluctuation readings.
- I. Take measurements in the system where best suited to the task.

3.3 PERFORMING TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system identified, in accordance with the detailed procedures outlined in the referenced standards.
- B. Cut insulation, ductwork, and piping for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures.
- C. Patch insulation, ductwork, and housings, using materials identical to those removed.
- D. Seal ducts and piping, and test for and repair leaks.
- E. Seal insulation to re-establish integrity of the vapor barrier.
- F. Mark equipment settings, including damper control positions, valve indicators, fan speed control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings. Mark with paint or other suitable, permanent identification materials.
- G. Retest, adjust, and balance systems subsequent to significant system modifications, and resubmit test results.

3.4 TESTING FOR SOUND AND VIBRATION

A. Test and adjust mechanical systems for sound and vibration in accordance with the detailed instructions of the referenced standards.

3.5 RECORD AND REPORT DATA

- A. Record all data obtained during testing, adjusting, and balancing in accordance with, and on the forms recommended by the referenced standards, and as approved on the sample report forms.
- B. Prepare report of recommendations for correcting unsatisfactory mechanical performances when system cannot be successfully balanced.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Training

- 1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel on troubleshooting procedures and testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures. Review with the Owner's personnel, the information contained in the Operating and Maintenance Data specified in Division 1 and mechanical specifications.
- 2. Schedule training with Owner through the Architect/Engineer with at least 7 days prior notice.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 3. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 5. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 6. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
- 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
- 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
- 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 - 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket, Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide

insulation with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534 or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Verify fiberglass adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Verify adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Verify adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. VOC Content: 300 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Verify mastic coatings comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Aluminum.
 - 5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 - 6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.
 - 5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 - 6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

- 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
- 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
- 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
- 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White.

D. Metal Jacket:

- Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- 2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

- 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

- 1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- 2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
- 3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- 4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- 5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
- 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

- 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

- 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
- 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with ioint sealant.
- 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
- 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

- 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vaporbarrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
- 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
- c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
- d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
- e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vaporbarrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be

limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
 - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
 - 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 - 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Vibration-control devices.
 - 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

- 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- I. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- J. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- K. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

- 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- L. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- M. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- Q. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- R. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- S. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

- 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- T. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- U. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- V. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- W. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- X. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- Y. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu, ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- Z. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

- 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
- J. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- L. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- M. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.024 inch thick.
- E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 - 1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth, with: 0.020 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.

5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate: Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C533, Type I.
 - 1. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Type II, Class 1, without jacket.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Jacket: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket.
 - 2. 850 dea F.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

- 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C1393.
 - 1. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
 - 2. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more.
 - 3. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sg. ft. x deg F or less.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Phenolic: Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C1126.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
 - 2. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- L. Polyisocyanurate: Preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C591.
 - 1. Preformed insulation, without factory-applied jacket.
 - 2. Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
 - 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less, and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thicknesses of up to 1 inch as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 4. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- M. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1, for tubular materials and with Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials.
- N. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

- 1. Adhesive: As recommended by calcium silicate manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by cellular glass manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by phenolic and polyisocyanate manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by flexible elastomeric and polyolefin manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 4. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 - 5. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 - Color: Black.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by polystyrene manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- H. ASJ Adhesive and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- I. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by Adhesive PVC Jacket manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - Verify mastics comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

- 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
- 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
- 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on belowambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Verify adhesive is as recommended by insulation manufacturer and has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
 - b. Color: White or gray.
 - 2. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 - 3. <u>Verify sealant complies with the</u> testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of

Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- Color: Aluminum.
- 4. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- 5. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 3. Color: White
- 4. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- 5. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Cloth: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sg. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

- Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- Stainless Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

- 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
- G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 10 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 2 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 120 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 20 psi in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 55 psi in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

- 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

- 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
- 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

- 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
- 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
- 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular

- surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
- 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive
- 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
- 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
- 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
- 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
- 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 - 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 - 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe

- insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
- 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
- 3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.
- 4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- 3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

- 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
- 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
- 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
- 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
- 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
- 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
- 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
- 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available
- 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
- 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

- 1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
- 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
- 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.

- 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and same thickness as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
- 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
 - 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness that of as pipe insulation.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.14 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

- 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
- 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
- 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
- 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
- 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 - Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections, with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 - 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 - 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
 - 5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.15 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Underground piping.
 - 2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.18 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

The first eight feet of boiler supply piping shall be insulated with 2" flexible elastomeric insulation.

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
- e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
- f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- B. Chilled Water and Brine, 40 Deg F and below:
 - 1. NPS 3 Insert pipe size and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. NPS 4 to NPS 12: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
- C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
 - 1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- E. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
- F. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

3.19 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

The first eight feet of boiler supply piping shall be insulated with 2" flexible elastomeric insulation. Exterior hydronic piping shall be insulated as noted for paragraph 3.19A, Condenser Water Supply and Return. Exterior Piping shall include aluminum jacket installed per specifications. PVC jacket will not be accepted. Exterior piping shall be heat traced.

- A. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
- C. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- D. Heat-Recovery Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches thick.

3.20 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND, PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condenser-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.
 - 1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
 - 2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.

3.21 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

3.22 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

3.23 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 3. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
- 4. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
- 5. Sheet metal materials.
- 6. Duct liner.
- 7. Sealants and gaskets.
- 8. Hangers and supports.
- 9. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
- 2. Section 23 31 16 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
- 3. Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
- 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- 3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
- 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

5. Laboratory Test Reports: For antimicrobial coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
- 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
- 4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
- 5. Dimensions of main all duct runs from building grid lines.
- 6. Fittings.
- 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
- 8. Seam and joint construction.
- 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
- 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
- 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
- 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel," for hangers and supports.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 - 3. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 "Construction and System Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

D. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
 - 3. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for clear internal dimensions of the inner duct.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct outer duct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.

- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
 - 3. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.4 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

- 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams
 - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

2.5 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Round: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
 - 1. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. For ducts exposed to weather, construct outer duct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
 - Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
 - Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - 4. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and

Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- B. Inner Duct: solid galvanized sheet steel.
- C. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.6 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
- Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A1008/A1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

H. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.7 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the
 interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating.
 Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the
 EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Fiberglass-Free Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
 - Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; certified by an NRTL.
 - 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

D. Insulation Pins and Washers:

- 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
- 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick aluminum; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
 - 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 - 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 - 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure buttededge overlapping.
 - 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 - 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpmor greater.
 - 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 - 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 - 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 - 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.8 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

- 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
- 2. Tape Width: 6 inches.
- 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
- 4. Water resistant.
- 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
- 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
- 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
- 10. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
- 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
- 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
- 4. Water resistant.
- 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
- 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
- 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
- 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
- 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
- 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
- 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
- 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
- 6. Water resistant.
- 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- 10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.

- 12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
 - 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.9 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.10 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service.
 - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A603, galvanized or ASTM A492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire, combination fire/smoke, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.
- 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 1 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operation"; SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and

Flexible"; and SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines" unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Install all ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- C. All joints shall be welded and shall be telescoping, bell, or flange joint as per NFPA 96.
- D. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EXHAUST DUCTS SERVING COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS AND OTHER HIGH-HUMIDITY LOCATIONS

- A. Install dishwasher exhaust ducts and other exhaust ducts from wet, high-humidity locations without dips and traps that may hold water. Slope ducts a minimum of 2 percent back to dishwasher or toward drain.
- B. Provide a drain pocket at each low point and at the base of each riser with a 1-inchtrapped copper drain from each drain pocket to open site floor drain.
- C. Minimize number of transverse seams.
- D. Do not locate longitudinal seams on bottom of duct.

3.5 DUCTWORK EXPOSED TO WEATHER

- A. All external joints are to be welded have secure watertight mechanical connections. Seal all openings to provide weatherproof construction.
- B. Construct ductwork to resist external loads of wind, snow, ice, and other effects of weather. Provide necessary supporting structures.
- C. Single Wall:
 - 1. Ductwork shall be Type 304 stainless steel.
 - a. If duct outer surface is uninsulated, protect outer surface with suitable paint. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting."
 - Where ducts have external insulation, provide weatherproof aluminum jacket. See Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation."

D. Double Wall:

1. Ductwork shall comply with requirements in "Double-Wall Rectangular Ducts and Fittings" or "Double-Wall Round Ducts and Fittings" Article.

- 2. Ductwork outer wall shall be Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- 3. Provide interstitial insulation.

3.6 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
 - Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
 - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.9 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - e. Outdoor-Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.

- 4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
- 5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
- 6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
- 7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

- 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
- 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 23 01 30.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."
- C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.
- D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

- 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
- 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).

- 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
- 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
- 4. Coils and related components.
- 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
- 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
- 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

- 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
- 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
- 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
- 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
- 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
- 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
- 7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.12 STARTUP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.13 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.

B. Supply Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

- 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

C. Return Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units Insert equipment:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
 - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
 - c. Welded seams and joints.
 - d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - e. Airtight/watertight.
- 4. Ducts Connected to Dishwashers, Dishwasher Hoods, and Other High-Humidity Locations:
 - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
 - d. Welded longitudinal seams; welded or flanged transverse joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
 - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - f. Airtight/watertight.
- 5. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Fume Hood, Laboratory, and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and Class 4) Air:
 - a. Type 316, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
 - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
 - c. Welded seams and joints.
 - d. Airtight/watertight.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- PVC-Coated Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
- 3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
- 4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.
- G. Liner:
 - 1. Supply-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
 - 2. Return-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
 - 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, inch(es thick.
 - 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch(es thick.
 - 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 2 inches thick.
 - 6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
- H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
 - 1. Supply-Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 2. Return-Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.
- I. Elbow Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:

- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
- 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.
- J. Branch Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
 - 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume control dampers.
 - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
 - 4. Actuators.
 - 5. Duct silencers.
 - 6. Turning vanes.
 - 7. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
 - 8. Flexible connectors.
 - 9. Flexible ducts.
 - 10. Accessories hardware.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Outlets and Inlets" for diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data including details for materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes for the following items:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume control dampers.
 - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
 - 4. Duct-mounted access panels and doors.
 - 5. Flexible ducts.
- C. Shop drawings from manufacturer detailing assemblies. Include dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Detail the following:
 - 1. Special fittings and volume control damper installation (both manual and automatic) details.
 - 2. Fire and smoke damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounted access door and panel installations.
- D. Product Certification: Submit certified test data on dynamic insertion loss; self-noise power levels;

DUCT ACCESSORIES 233300-1

and airflow performance data, static pressure loss, and dimensions and weights.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with the following NFPA Standards:
 - 1. NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
 - 2. NFPA 90B, "Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUAL VOLUME CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. General: Provide factory-fabricated volume-control dampers, complete with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades to provide stability under operating conditions. Provide locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class. Extend axles full length of damper blades. Provide bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- B. Standard Volume Control Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside of air stream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, minimum of 16 gage, and with mitered and welded corners. Provide frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls. Provide flangeless frames where indicated for installation in ducts.
 - Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 16-gage galvanized steel.
 - 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.2 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. General: UL labeled according to UL Standard 555 "Standard for Fire Dampers." Refer to Fire Damper Schedule at the end of this Section.
- B. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 or 3 hours, as indicated.
- C. Frame: Type B; fabricated with roll-formed, 21-gage, galvanized-steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed or field-installed galvanized steel.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.056-inch (16-gage) or 0.138-inch (10-gage) thick as indicated, and length to suit application.
 - 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of the wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame meets sleeve requirements.

- E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- F. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 21-gage galvanized steel. In place of interlocking blades, provide full-length, 21-gage, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- G. Horizontal Dampers: Include a blade lock and stainless steel negator closure spring.
- H. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.3 CEILING FIRE DAMPERS

- A. General: UL listed and labeled; comply with the construction details for the tested floor/roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in the UL Fire Resistance Directory.
- B. Frame: 20-gage, rectangular or round, galvanized steel; style to suit ceiling construction.
- C. Blades: 22-gage galvanized steel with nonasbestos refractory insulation.
- D. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.4 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate of 1-1/2-inch-wide, curved blades set at 3/4 inch on center, support with bars perpendicular to blades set at 2 inches on center, and set into side strips suitable for mounting in ducts.

2.5 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

- A. General: Refer to the Access Door Materials Schedule at the end of this Section for frame and door thickness, number of hinges and locks, and location of locks. Provide construction and airtightness suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel. Provide with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- C. Door: Double-wall, galvanized sheet metal construction with insulation fill and thickness, number of hinges and locks as indicated for duct pressure class. Provide vision panel where indicated. Provide 1-inch by 1-inch butt hinge or piano hinge and cam latches.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber seals.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch thick fiber glass or polystyrene foam board.

2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. General: Flame-retarded or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL Standard 181, Class 1.
- B. Standard Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory-fabricated with a strip of fabric 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 24-gage, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-gage aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with connected duct system. Fold and crimp metal edge strips onto

fabric as illustrated in SMACNA HVAC Duct Standard, 1st Edition, Figure 2-19.

- C. Conventional, Indoor System Flexible Connectors Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with polychloroprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz. per sq yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lb per inch in the warp and 360 lb per inch in the filling.
- F. Conventional, Outdoor System Flexible Connectors Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with Du Pont's HYPALON or other synthetic-rubber weatherproof coating resistant to the sun's ultraviolet rays and ozone environment.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz. per sq yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lb per inch in the warp and 440 lb per inch in the filling.

2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Flexible Ducts Insulated: Factory-fabricated, insulated, round duct, with an outer jacket enclosing 1-1/2-inch-thick, glass fiber insulation around a continuous inner liner.
 - 1. Reinforcement: Steel-wire helix encapsulated in the inner liner.
 - 2. Outer Jacket: Polyethylene film.
 - 3. Inner Liner: Polyethylene film.

2.8 ACCESSORIES HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket and a flat mounting gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and provide in length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of duct accessories. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to manufacturer's installation instructions and applicable portions of details of construction as shown in SMACNA standards.
- B. Install volume control dampers in lined duct with methods to avoid damage to liner and to avoid erosion of duct liner.

C. Provide test holes at fan inlet and outlet and elsewhere as indicated.

- D. Install fire and smoke dampers according to the manufacturer's UL-approved printed instructions.
- E. Install fusible links in fire dampers.
- F. Label access doors according to Division 23.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

ACCESS DOOR MATERIALS SCHEDULE

DUCT PRESSURE CLASS	DOOR SIZE INCHES	NUMBER OF <u>HINGES</u>	NUMBER LOCKS	METAL GA	AGE DOOR	BACK
2 INCHES & LESS	12X12 16x20 24X24	2 2 3	1-S 2-S 2-S	24 22 22	26 24 22	26 26 26

S: SIDE T: TOP B: BOTTOM

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233713 - AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of air outlets and inlets work is indicated by drawings and schedules, and by requirements of this section.
- B. Types of outlets and inlets required for project include the following:
 - 1. Ceiling air diffusers.
 - 2. Wall registers and grilles.
 - 3. Louvers.
- C. Refer to other Division-23 sections for ductwork and duct accessories required in conjunction with air outlets and inlets; not work of this section.
- D. Refer to other Division-23 sections for balancing of air outlets and inlets; not work of this section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of air outlets and inlets of types and capacities required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.

B. Codes and Standards:

- ARI Compliance: Test and rate air outlets and inlets in accordance with ARI 650 "Standard for Air Outlets and Inlets".
- 2. AMCA Compliance: Test and rate louvers in accordance with AMCA 500 "Test Method for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters".
- 3. AMCA Seal: Provide louvers bearing AMCA Certified Rating Seal.
- 4. NFPA Compliance: Install air outlets and inlets in accordance with NFPA 90A "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems".

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data for air outlets and inlets including the following:
 - 1. Schedule of air outlets and inlets indicating drawing designation, room location, number

furnished, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

- 2. Data sheet for each type of air outlet and inlet, and accessory furnished; indicating construction, finish, and mounting details.
- 3. Performance data for each type of air outlet and inlet furnished, including aspiration ability, temperature and velocity traverses; throw and drop; and noise criteria ratings. Indicate selections on data.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's assembly-type shop drawing for each type of air outlet and inlet, indicating materials and methods of assembly of components.
- C. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data, including cleaning instructions for finishes, and spare parts lists. Include this data, product data, and shop drawings in maintenance manuals; in accordance with requirements of Division 1.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver air outlets and inlets wrapped in factory-fabricated fiber-board type containers. Identify on outside of container type of outlet or inlet and location to be installed. Avoid crushing or bending and prevent dirt and debris from entering and settling in devices.
- B. Store air outlets and inlets in original cartons and protect from weather and construction work traffic. Where possible, store indoors; when necessary to store outdoors, store above grade and enclose with waterproof wrapping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING AIR DIFFUSERS

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard ceiling air diffusers where shown; of size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.
- B. Performance: Provide ceiling air diffusers that have, as minimum, temperature and velocity traverses, throw and drop, and noise criteria ratings for each size device as listed in manufacturer's current data.
- C. Ceiling Compatibility: Provide diffusers with border styles that are compatible with adjacent ceiling systems, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into ceiling module with accurate fit and adequate support. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of ceiling systems which will contain each type of ceiling air diffuser.
- D. Types: Provide ceiling diffusers of type, capacity, and with accessories and finishes as listed on diffuser schedule. The following requirements shall apply to nomenclature indicated on schedule.

1. Diffuser Faces:

- a. Round (RD): Round housing, core of concentric rings, round duct connection.
- b. Square: Square housing, core of square concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.

- c. Rectangular: Rectangular housing, core of rectangular concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.
- d. Panel: Square or rectangular housing extended to form a panel to fit in ceiling system module, core of square or rectangular concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.
- e. Perforated: Round, square, or rectangular housing covered with removable perforated panel in frame. Conceal air pattern devices above panel.
- f. Linear: Extruded aluminum continuous slot, single or multiple.

2. Diffuser Mountings:

- a. Stepped-Down: Diffuser housing below ceiling with perimeter flange and gasket to seal against ceiling construction.
- b. Flush: Diffuser housing above ceiling surface with flush perimeter flange and gasket to seal against ceiling.
- c. Lay-In: Diffuser housing sized to fit between ceiling exposed suspension tee bars and rest on top surface of tee bar.

Diffuser Patterns:

- a. Fixed (FX): Fixed position core with concentric rings or louvers for radial air flow around entire perimeter of diffuser.
- b. 2 Position (2-P): Manual 2-position core with concentric rings or louvers, upper position for horizontal air flow, lower position for vertical air flow.
- c. Adjustable (ADJ): Manual adjustable core with concentric rings or louvers, fully adjustable for horizontal to vertical air flow.
- d. 1 Way (1-W): Fixed louver face for 1-direction air flow, direction indicated on drawings.
- e. 2 Way (2-W): Fixed louver face for 2-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.
- f. 3 Way (3-W): Fixed louver face for 3-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.
- g. 4 Way (4-W): Fixed louver face for 4-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.

4. Diffuser Dampers:

- a. Opposed Blade (O-B): Adjustable opposed blade damper assembly, key operated from face of diffuser.
- b. Butterfly (BTFY): Two semicircular flaps connected to linkage adjustable from face of diffuser with key, and with straightening grid.
- c. Supply and Return (S & R): For supply and return diffusers, butterfly type damper in return neck, annular adjustable dampers in supply duct.
- d. Fire Damper (F-D): Combination adjustable opposed blade damper and fusable link fire damper with UL approved link and assembly designed to meet requirements of NFPA 90A.

5. Diffuser Accessories:

- a. Equalizing Deflectors (E-D): Adjustable parallel blades in frame for straightening air flow.
- b. Smudge Ring (S-R): Extension perimeter frame around diffuser, sized so induced air impinges on frame and not on ceiling.
- c. Plaster Ring (P-R): Perimeter ring designed to act as a plaster stop and diffuser anchor.
- d. Extractor (EXTR): Curved blades mounted on adjustable frame to produce air scooping action in duct at diffuser take-off.

6. Diffuser Finishes:

- a. White Enamel (W-E): Semi-gloss white enamel prime finish.
- E. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering diffusers which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products Div.; Dymanics Corp. of America.
 - 2. Cranes Co.; Div. of Wehr Corp.
 - 3. Krueger Mfg. Co.
 - 4. Titus Products Div.; Philips Industries, Inc.
 - 5. Tuttle & Bailey; Div. of Interpace Corp.

2.2 WALL REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard wall registers and grilles where shown; of size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.
- B. Performance: Provide wall registers and grilles that have, as minimum, temperature and velocity traverses, throw and drop, and noise criteria ratings for each size device and listed in manufacturer's current data.
- C. Wall Compatibility: Provide registers and grilles with border styles that are compatible with adjacent wall systems, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into wall construction with accurate fit and adequate support. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of wall construction which will contain each type of wall register and grille.
- D. Types: Provide wall registers and grilles of type, capacity, and with accessories and finishes as listed on register and grille schedule.
- E. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering registers and grilles which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products Div.; Dynamics Corp. of America.
 - 2. Carnes Co.; Div. of Wehr Corp.
 - 3. Titus Products Div.; Philips Industries, Inc.

2.3 LOUVERS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard louvers where shown; of

size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.

- B. Performance: Provide louvers that have minimum free area, and maximum pressure drop of each type as listed in manufacturer's current data, complying with louver schedule.
- C. Substrate Compatibility: Provide louvers with frame and sill styles that are compatible with adjacent substrate, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into construction openings with accurate fit and adequate support, for weatherproof installation. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of substrate which will contain each type of louver.
- D. Materials: Construct of aluminum extrusions, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T52. Weld units or use stainless steel fasteners.
- E. Louver Screens: On inside face of exterior louvers, provide 1/2" square mesh anodized aluminum wire bird screens mounted in removable extruded aluminum frames.
- F. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering louvers which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Airline Products Co.
 - 2. Airolite Co.
 - 3. American Warming & Ventilating Inc.
 - 4. Arrow United Industries, Inc.
 - 5. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - 6. Dowco Corp.
 - 7. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
 - 8. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.
 - 9. Penn Ventilator Co., Inc.
 - 10. Ruskin Mfg. Co.
 - 11. Safe-Air Inc.
 - 12. Snyder (E.G.) Co., Inc.
 - 13. Vent Products Co., Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas and conditions under which air outlets and inlets are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install air outlets and inlets in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and in accordance with recognized industry practices to insure that products serve intended function.
- B. Coordinate with other work, including ductwork and duct accessories, as necessary to interface installation of air outlets and inlets with other work.
- C. Locate ceiling air diffusers, registers, and grilles, as indicated on general construction "Reflected Ceiling Plans". Unless otherwise indicated, locate units in center of acoustical ceiling module.

March 31, 2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

3.3 SPARE PARTS

A. Furnish to Owner, with receipt, 3 operating keys for each type of air outlet and inlet that require them.

SECTION 311000 - SITE PREPARATION, GENERAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Prior to starting construction operations, the Contractor shall remove all vegetative growth, debris, and other objectionable matter standing or lying on the surface within the limits of the areas to be excavated or filled, and shall demolish and remove there from such buildings and other structures as are specifically designated on the drawings for removal.
- B. Any damage to natural terrain or to vegetation or objects designated to remain shall be repaired, replaced, or otherwise compensated for, as determined by the Owner's Representative, at the Contractor's expense.
- C. Contractor shall remove all trees including the stump, root system, etc. from the construction area except those trees that are designated in the field by the Owner to remain intact.

SECTION 311100 - CLEARING AND GRUBBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. The Engineer will designate the areas to be cleared and grubbed and will indicate all trees, shrubs, plants, and other items to remain. Any damage to natural terrain or to vegetation or objects designated to remain shall be repaired, replaced, or otherwise compensated for as determined by the Engineer at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. Where required, the Contractor shall post with the Owner any performance bond or liability insurance which may be required to guarantee the satisfactory replacement or repair of materials, structures or landscaping within the work area.
- C. Ornamental trees, cultivated shrubs and similar growths which occupy streets, alleys, or other public rights-of-way or easements but which lie outside the limits of excavation shall remain undisturbed and shall be carefully preserved and protected by the Contractor throughout all stages of the construction work.
- D. All cut or scarred surfaces of trees or shrubs shall be treated with an asphaltum base paint especially prepared for tree surgery.
- E. The Contractor shall not enter upon private property for any purpose without first obtaining permission from its Owner and he shall be responsible for the preservation of, and shall use every precaution necessary to prevent damage to all trees, shrubbery, fences, culverts, bridges, pavement, driveways, sidewalks, etc., and to all water, sewer, gas, telephone, and electric lines thereof, and to all other public or private property along or adjacent to the work.

1.2 CLEARING

A. The area within the construction limits shall be cleared of all surface objects, and all trees, stumps, roots and other objectionable obstructions resting on or protruding to the surface of the original ground except those designated to be retained.

1.3 GRUBBING

- A. All areas within the construction limits shall be grubbed of all objectionable matter on or projecting to the ground surface.
- B. All fill areas shall be grubbed to a depth of at least one foot below the natural ground.

1.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING LIMITS

- A. Clear and grub within grading limits shown by sections, grade elevations, and/or new contours shown on the drawings.
- B. Clear and grub within the limits of building and paving lines and to a point five (5) feet beyond building lines.
- C. Clearing and grubbing limits for utilities, where not specifically indicated on the drawings, will be determined by the area necessary to complete the work.
- D. In no case shall the clearing and grubbing limits extend beyond property and/or easement lines established by the Owner, unless the Contractor obtains permission from the adjoining owner or owners.

1.5 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

- A. The Contractor shall submit a plan for the satisfactory disposal of materials and debris from the clearing and grubbing operations for approval by the Architect.
- B. The Contractor must comply with all local, state, and federal laws and ordinances pertaining to the type material being disposed of and secure and submit written permission from any applicable agencies regarding the method of disposal.

SECTION 312200 - EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents:

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General, Supplemental, and Special Conditions.
- B. Geotechnical Report dated April 25, 2024; Terracon Project Number E1245042.

1.2 Summary:

- A. This specification section covers stripping, excavation, borrow, fill placement, undercutting, and other items incidental to earthwork operations required to complete the work.
- B. For purposes of earthwork construction, all soils shall be classified using the Unified Soil Classification System.
- C. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the disposal of all excess materials resulting from excavation or other earthwork operations.
- D. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for furnishing, delivering, and placing all fill material necessary to achieve the finish grades indicated in the contract documents.
- E. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for location, construction, maintenance, and removal of all haul roads. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining all rights-of-way necessary for the completion of the work and not indicated in the Contract Documents.
- F. Specifications for excavation and embankment shall follow the most recent edition of the ALDOT Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.
- G. The Contractor shall be responsible for the prevention of erosion, runoff control, and for the protection of existing streams. Hay bales, silt fencing, and sheeting exposed areas shall be utilized to minimize sediment transport from cut areas, temporary spoil piles, and other exposed areas.
- H. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining stormwater and runoff permits, if required.
- I. Where excavations are made adjacent to existing buildings, other structures or utilities or in paved streets or alleys, the Contractor shall take particular care to sheet, shore and brace the sides of the excavation adequately so as to prevent any undermining of or settlement beneath such structures, utilities or pavements. Where necessary, the Contractor shall be responsible for underpinning or bracing existing structures, utilities or pavement to prevent settlement or other damage. Where necessary, the Contractor shall be responsible for temporarily relocating existing utilities. All such relocations shall be coordinated with the Owner of the utility.
- J. Sheeting, shoring, and bracing materials shall not be left in place unless shown in the contract documents or approved in writing by the Engineer. Such materials shall be removed in such manner as to protect the work, workmen, the Owner's facilities, adjacent property and the general public.
- K. The Contractor shall take all due precautions for the safety of the work, the workmen, the Owner's facilities and the general public.
- L. The Contractor shall comply with federal, state, and local ordinances, laws, guidelines and regulations related to earthwork and excavation.
- M. In all cases, where materials are deposited around open excavations, they shall be placed so that, in the event of rain, no damage will result to the work or adjacent property.

1.3 Unit Prices:

- All excavation to be unclassified.
- B. However, all stabilization and undercut & replacement will be handled with a quantity allowance with unit price being provided on the bid proposal form to be included in the base bid. The bid proposal form will have unit prices for the undercutting of unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill. The quantity allowance breakdown is as follows:

Base Bid

Unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill: 3,200 CY

Pavement

Unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill: 3,600 CY

Granular/stone fill: 6,700 Tons

Geosynthetic: 7,200 SQ. Yds.

Alternate (Courtroom Addition)

Unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill: 750 CY

The unit price for "undercutting" shall include all cost associated with removing unsuitable soil from below the established subgrade elevation, off-site disposal and replacing with off-site material conforming to the project specifications and compacted to project requirement. Unsuitable material refers to material that is not suitable for building or pavement support for reasons associated with material properties, such as highly plastic soils, "fat" clays, and old fill. Material, which is otherwise suitable, but above the optimum moisture and requires moisture conditioning prior to use as engineered fill shall not be considered as "unsuitable". Note the unit prices are being provided for the addition to and deletion from the contract base bid as required by changing field conditions during construction.

C. The measurement process for unsuitable soil amounts shall be the initial responsibility of the contractor. The basis for measurement will be based on a before and after cross section survey of the area in question performed by a licensed surveyor. No truck counts will be allowed. Measurements will be verified by the Owner's on-site Geotechnical Engineer.

1.4 Submittals:

- A. The Contractor shall submit laboratory test data for each type of compacted fill material indicating the following:
 - 1. Supplier or borrow location.
 - 2. Maximum Standard Proctor Density-ASTM D698.
 - 3. Optimum Moisture Content.
 - 4. Liquid Limit.
 - 5. Plasticity Index.

1.5 Quality Assurance:

- A. The Owner will secure geotechnical services to perform in-place density testing as directed by the Engineer.
- B. The Contractor shall employ whatever means necessary to provide excavations and fill embankments that properly drain and are reasonably smooth and uniform. Final subgrade elevations shall be within reasonably close proximity to the design elevations specified in the contract documents. In areas to receive pavements or buildings, the final subgrade elevations shall be within 1" of the specified elevation. In other areas, the final subgrade elevations shall be within 1.25" of the specified elevation.

1.6 Definitions:

- A. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Layer placed between the subbase course and asphalt paving.
- Bedding Course: Layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Cut line: Elevations, lines, and final cut subgrades in cut over excavated areas.
- F. Drainage Course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.
- G. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.
 - Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or "cut line" as directed by Architect. Additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavations more than 10 feet in width and pits more than 30 feet in either length or width.
 - Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or "cut line" or beyond indicated dimensions without direction by Geotechnical engineer and Architect.
 Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Geotechnical Engineer and Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- H. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Layer placed between the subgrade and base course for asphalt paving, or layer placed between the subgrade and a concrete pavement or walk.
- K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- L. Unsuitable material:
 - Fills: Topsoil; Frozen materials; construction materials; clods of clay and stones larger than 4" (unless otherwise specified); organic material, including silts; and inorganic material including silts which are to wet to be stable, or other materials identified by the Geotechnical Engineer.
 - Existing subgrade: Same materials as listed in paragraph 1 above that are not capable of direct support of slabs, pavement and similar items with the possible exception of improvement by compaction, proof rolling, or similar methods as directed and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.
 - 3. Unsuitable materials identified by the geotechnical report and drawings shall be anticipated and included in the base bid. See 1.3B Unit Prices for additional information.
- M. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Soil Materials:

 General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Topsoil:

- Materials considered useful for topsoil by the Architect/Geotechnical shall be stockpiled at his direction at locations shown on the Drawings or as directed in the field. Topsoil shall be kept free from sub-soil, clay lumps, brush, objectionable weeds, litter, stones larger than 1/2 inches in diameter, stumps, roots, and other materials that would interfere with planting and maintenance operations.
- 2. All topsoil shall be stored on the site by Contractor in a location approved by the Architect. The Contractor shall use such topsoil for the purpose of fulfilling the topsoil requirements specified in this Contract. Protect stockpile by immediately compacting, dressing down and seeding with annual rye for temporary cover. Provide a silt fence around the base of topsoil pile, after completing storage, to control erosion.
- Use topsoil stockpiles on site as necessary to complete landscape work indicated on Drawings and in accordance with specifications for landscaping.
- C. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GW, GP, GC, SC, SW, SP, SM, ML, and CL, or a combination of these group symbols; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter. Soils that exhibit a liquid limit less than 55 and a plasticity index of less than 30.
- D. Unsatisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups CH, OL, OH, and PT, or a combination of these group symbols.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- E. Backfill and Fill: Satisfactory soil materials.
- F. Subbase: At least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Base: ASTM D2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

- J. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2- inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- K. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, minimum 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Preparation

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.
- C. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
 - 1. Erosion control is the responsibility of the Contractor. Items shown on the Drawings are considered the minimum acceptable; however, as site conditions change, additional measures may be required to control sediment.
 - 2. The Contractor shall indemnity and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Engineer, Owner's representatives, and their agents and employees from any claim from their work.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

312200 - EARTHWORK 5 of 3

- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
 - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. No explosives will be allowed.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. All excavation on this project is unclassified regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered, including rock, soil materials, and obstructions.
- B. Material encountered in grading operation that, in the opinion of the Geotechnical Engineer or Owner, is unsuitable or undesirable shall be as follows:
 - 1. The removal of unsuitable material will be directed by the Geotechnical Engineer or his field representative. All unsuitable material that is removed by the Contractor shall become the property of the Contractor and be disposed of off site or in a manner satisfactory to the Owner at no additional cost. All undercut shall be included in the Base Bid. See section 1.3 B. unit prices for quantity allowances.
 - 2. Back fill for these areas will be with material approved by the Geotechnical Engineer, with layers of acceptable material compacted to the requirements set forth in these specifications.
- C. Undercutting and replacement of unsuitable soils may be required to the underlying stiff soils. All undercut and replacement shall be handled in accordance with 1.3B Unit Prices above.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.1 feet. Extend excavations a minimum of 10' in distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
- B. Where unsuitable soils are encountered, the soils shall be completely removed to underlying stiff material per 1.3B Unit Prices above.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENT

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated cross sections, elevations, and grades, to a distance of 8' beyond the edge of these walks and pavements.

312200 - EARTHWORK 6 of 3

B. Where unsuitable soils are encountered, the soils shall be completely removed to underlying stiff material per 1.3B Unit Prices above.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Clearance: 12 inches on each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 - 1. For pipe sizes 30" and below, the "cut line" shall be 4" below the bottom of the pipe and material replaced with 4" No. 57 stone bedding unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. For pipe sizes larger than 30", the "cut line" shall be 6" below the bottom of the pipe and material replaced with 6" no. 57 stone bedding unless otherwise noted.

3.8 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof roll subgrade with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof roll wet or saturated subgrades.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used when approved by Architect.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow materials and satisfactory excavated soil materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

312200 - EARTHWORK 7 of 3

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, damp-proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
 - 3. Inspecting and testing underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- B. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings; fill with lean concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.
- C. Provide 4-inch-thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- D. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
 - 1. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
- E. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Fill voids with approved backfill materials while shoring and bracing, and as sheeting is removed.
- G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.
- H. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.13 FILL

- A. Preparation: Remove vegetation, topsoil, debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface before placing fills.
- B. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- C. Off-site borrow materials may be used as fill within the building and pavement areas provided that their plasticity index (PI) less than 30. Material shall have a minimum dry density of 100 pcf.

312200 - EARTHWORK 8 of 3

- D. High plasticity (fat clays) soils should not be used as engineered fill.
- E. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

3.14 MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air-dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.15 COMPACTION OF BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure. Fill to extend 5' outside of the proposed building footprint.
- C. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (standard proctor).
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.
 - 2. Under walkways, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.
 - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.

3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 0.17 ft.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 0.10 ft.

312200 - EARTHWORK 9 of 3

- 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 0.10 ft.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 0.08 ft. when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.17 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Drainage Piping: Drainage pipe is specified in Division 2 Section "Foundation Drainage Systems."
 - B. Subsurface Drain: Place a layer of drainage fabric around perimeter of drainage trench as indicated. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on drainage fabric to support drainage pipe. Encase drainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material and wrap in drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each course of filter material to 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
 - C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each course of filter material to 98 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.
 - 2. Place and compact impervious fill material over drainage backfill to final subgrade.

3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Under slabs-on-grade, place drainage course on prepared subgrade and as follows:
 - Compact drainage course to required cross sections and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
 - 2. When compacted thickness of drainage course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.
 - 3. When compacted thickness of drainage course exceeds 6 inches, place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick when compacted.

3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

312200 - EARTHWORK 10 of 3

- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 1000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
- 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
- 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for each 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312200

312200 - EARTHWORK 11 of 3

SECTION 312205 - PREPARATION OF SUBGRADE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Work Included

- A. All dikes and structural fill areas that will receive fill material shall be cleared of trees, stumps, roots, brush and other vegetation, debris, existing foundations, pavements, utility lines, structures, fences and other items that would interfere with construction operations. Stumps, logs, roots, and other organic matter will be completely removed.
- B. Unsatisfactory material in surfaces to receive fill or in excavated areas shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory materials, refer to Section 312200 for undercutting. The surface shall be scarified to a depth of 6 inches before the fill is started.
- C. Sub-grade shall be free from any standing water and within the allowable moisture limits, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, prior to placement of any fill material.
- D. All temporary stones for roadways, construction accesses, sidewalks, drives, etc. shall be completely removed at the end of the project. It is the General Contractor's sole responsibility to fully remove these temporary materials as the project is completed. This applies to all materials, equipment, etc. the Contractor transports to the project site, no exceptions. There shall be no wasting of stone on-site. Claims such as the wasted material or temporary stone was a particular subcontractor's to address and it was not noted in their work/trade section to address is irrelevant and final responsibility shall be the General Contractor's as noted above.
- E. All prepared subgrades shall be 80% stone free. Subgrade that contains more than 20% in any 12" x 12" area shall be removed and replaced by General Contractor with acceptable subgrade material to be approved by the Landscape Architect.
- F. The Contractor shall install all underground utilities and sleeves prior to base installation. If base is installed, compacted, tested, etc., and utilities are later installed, then the base shall be considered contaminated and shall be removed/reinstalled, recompacted, and retested at the Contractor's expense, no exceptions. Final base is NOT considered temporary stone; therefore, contamination shall not be allowed. Contaminated base shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.
- G. When proofrolling is required by the Geotechnical Engineer, it shall be proofrolled per the Geotechnical Report.

SECTION 312250 - TRENCHING, BACKFILL AND COMPACTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section of Specifications deals with the requirements for Trenching, Backfill, and Compaction for utility lines placed in roadways, lawns or unimproved property or any other area.

1.2 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings
- B. Gate Valves
- C. Check Valves
- D. Backflow Preventer
- E. Valve Boxes and Vaults
- F. HDPE Water Pipe
- G. Fire Hydrants
- H. HDPE Pipe for Gravity Sewers
- I. PVC Pipe for Force Main Sewers
- J. Reinforced Concrete Pipe for Storm Sewers

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312200 Earthwork
- B. Section 332433 Storm Sewers
- C. Section 332660 Water System

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration.
- B. State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements:
 - 1. The Contractor shall maintain all drainage ways, gutters, etc., at all times. The Contractor at his own expense shall remove any eroded or washed material that enters pipes, ditches, or streams.
 - 2. The Contractor shall provide erosion control as required to protect from damage surrounding areas.
 - 3. All areas damaged as a result of erosion shall be repaired to a condition equal or better than the condition prior to construction, as determined by the Owner's Representative.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Select Backfill:

 Select backfill where specified or required shall be crushed limestone. Crushed stone shall meet or exceed the requirements of the Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 801, No. 57 Stone.

B. Standard Backfill:

1. Standard backfill shall consist of native soils free of large rocks, boulders and other deleterious substances unless otherwise noted on the plans. If stone backfill is to be used in all locations as directed by the Construction Plans, then native soils, etc. shall not be the standard backfill.

C. Bedding:

 Class "1" Bedding shall be Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 801, as follows:

Gravity Pipe (ALL materials) - No. 57 crushed limestone

Pressure Pipe (material NOT PLASTIC) - No. 57 crushed limestone

Pressure Pipe (PLASTIC material) - No. 8910 crushed limestone

*Unless otherwise shown on the utility trench details

- 2. Class "2" Bedding shall be reinforced concrete 3000 psi design mix.
- 3. Unless specified on the drawings or required by the Engineer, pipe shall be bedded in native soil (Class "3").

D. Trench Foundation

 Trench foundation material shall be Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 801, No. 57 crushed limestone, unless otherwise directed by the Owner's Representative. This material shall only be used when approved in advance by the Owner's Representative.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall supply gradation analysis for each type of crushed stone used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION OF CONDITIONS

A. The Contractor shall examine the area to be trenched and verify his requirements for trenching.

3.2 PROTECTION AND REMOVALS

A. Fences:

1. All fences in conflict with the proposed construction shall be removed in a neat and workmanlike manner and then replaced immediately following construction operations. Where materials removed are not suitable for reuse, they shall be replaced with new material of equal or better quality and construction. All fences shall be rebuilt to line, with posts well set, wires fastened with new staples or ties and well stretched. All corner and end posts shall be well braced and set a minimum of 30 inches in the ground.

B. Utility Poles, Guy Wires, Miscellaneous Poles, Etc.:

- All utility poles, guy wires, sign posts and similar private obstructions which are indicated on the plans or
 existing on the ground shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor at his own expense. In the event
 street signposts or signs are damaged or destroyed by the Contractor's operations, they may be replaced
 by the Owner at the Contractor's expense.
- When it is necessary to remove or adjust any utilities, representatives of the utilities involved shall be notified to decide the method and nature of work to be done. The Contractor shall make satisfactory arrangements with other utilities for the required removal or adjustments at the Contractor's expense, unless otherwise specified.
- The Contractor shall be held liable for damage, including negligent or willful damage to any other utility and shall pay for the cost of all necessary repairs and any damages resulting to public or private property resulting there from.
- 4. The Contractor shall take whatever means necessary to support sewer mains to their true line and grade when they are encountered during excavation. The pipe shall be supported so that no leakage will occur and under no circumstances will the Contractor be allowed to bypass raw sewage or allow raw sewage to leak into the trench. If a repair becomes necessary the contractor shall use materials of the same type and class of pipe. At a minimum, PVC pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM D3034, SDR 26. All couplings to existing pipe shall be manufactured couplings and all metal parts shall be stainless steel.

C. Ornamental Shrubs and Trees:

1. Ornamental shrubs and trees shall not be removed unless directed by the Owner's Representative. When

ornamental shrubs and/or trees are to be removed and replaced, the following steps shall be followed:

- a. Remove all trees, shrubs or plants, which interfere with construction intact with root system and protect from drying during construction period.
- b. Replace plant to original location as soon as possible, taking care to ensure that hole is large enough, and no damage is done to root system.
- c. Fill hole with good topsoil and tamp lightly and firmly into place and water plant.
- 2. Contractor shall replace with like kind and size if any plant, tree, or shrub which is disturbed by construction and dies within 1 year, at no cost to the Owner.
 - a. Adjacent Property:
 - The Contractor shall confine his operations to the rights-of-ways and/or easements designated. The Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner shall repair any damage to adjacent property.
 - D. Private Drives and Sidewalks:
 - 1. The Contractor shall keep all private drives and sidewalks open and accessible at all times.
 - 2. All streets and public roads shall be kept open and accessible to emergency vehicles at all times.
 - E. Existing Underground Utilities:
 - 1. The Contractor shall protect all existing utilities during the trenching operation. The Contractor shall cooperate fully with the utility's requests for temporary and permanent supports during the trenching operation and shall furnish and install supports at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - 2. Storm sewers in conflict with the proposed trench may be carefully dislodged and stockpiled. The pipes shall be cleaned and replaced immediately after new construction is clear. Storm sewers damaged by the Contractor shall be replaced with new pipe at no additional cost to the Owner. All storm sewers removed shall be re-laid to proper grade on a firm bedding so that settlement will not occur.

3.3 TRENCH PREPARATION

- A. Clearing and Grubbing:
 - Where clearing or partial clearing of the right-of-way or easements is necessary, such work shall be completed prior to trench excavation. Projecting materials such as trees, logs, brush, hedges, etc., shall be cut as near to the surface of the ground as possible, and all stumps and roots shall be grubbed out unless specifically stated otherwise. All materials so cleared and grubbed shall be removed from the site. In no case shall excavated materials be allowed to cover brush or trees prior to disposal. Clearing and grubbing costs shall be included in the unit price bid for the related pipe unless a specific line item for clearing and grubbing is included in the bid schedule.
 - The Contractor shall bear all costs of disposing of all cleared and grubbed materials. Unless otherwise specified, all merchantable timber cut from the area designated to be cleared shall become the property of the Contractor.
 - 3. Burning will be permitted, provided the Contractor obtains permits and meets the requirements of the proper fire authorities and any other state, county or local ordinances. Burning on private property will not be permitted without written permission of the Owner of the property. The authority to burn shall in no way relieve the Contractor from damages, which may result from his operations.
 - 4. In no case shall any materials from clearing and grubbing operations be left on the project, or be pushed onto abutting private properties, or be buried in embankments or trenches on the project.
 - 5. On public property, existing trees or limbs over 2 inches in diameter shall not be cut unless they are within 7 feet of pipe centerline or specific permission is received from the Engineer. On private easements or in lawns, no trees or brush shall be cleared or cut without prior approval of the Engineer or Inspector. The Contractor shall be required to remove trees, shrubs or plants on private property intact, and to ball the roots, keep watered as required, and replant in their original location upon completion of pipe laying operations, unless written permission is obtained from the Engineer, or unless otherwise specified. The Contractor shall replace, at his own expense, any trees, shrubs, or plants which shall be damaged as a result of his operations, or which shall die within 1 year of the time it was disturbed or damaged.

B. Saw Cutting:

1. Prior to beginning the trenching operation in paved areas such as roads, drives, sidewalks, and parking lots, all paving shall be saw cut through. All paving materials shall be removed and disposed of prior to the

trenching operation.

2. Prior to beginning the saw cutting, all traffic control devices, barricades, cones and permits required shall be obtained and in place.

C. Verification of Existing Utilities:

1. Prior to the excavation but after the saw cutting in paved areas, the Contractor shall unearth all known utilities and confirm the location and depth of such utility sufficiently far enough in advance to adjust the vertical or horizontal alignment of the pipeline if necessary.

3.4 TRENCH CONSTRUCTION

A. General:

- 1. Trenching or excavation for pipe lines shall consist of the excavation necessary for the installation of sanitary or storm sewers, water lines, gas lines, and other utilities and all appurtenant facilities, including manholes, junction boxes, inlets, outlets, thrust blocks, and pipe protection as called for on the Drawings.
- Trench excavation shall be made in an open cut unless tunneling or other construction methods are specifically authorized, and shall be true to the lines and grades shown on the plans or established by the Engineer.
- 3. When vertical banks for trench excavation are not practical to construct or create dangerous conditions to workmen, the banks may be sloped provided that such excavation does not damage adjacent structures. However, when trench banks are sloped, such banks shall be cut to vertical planes as specified above for that part of the ditch below the level of one (1) foot above the top of the pipeline.
- 4. All streets, sidewalks, crossings, fire hydrants, water valves, fire alarm boxes and other similar public utilities are to be kept open or accessible for their intended use.
- 5. Every drain, gutter, culvert, or sewer for surface drainage encountered is to be kept open for both temporary and permanent flow, or if necessarily closed, other adequate provision for drainage is to be made.
- 6. In all cases where materials are deposited along open trenches, they shall be placed so that in the event of rain, no damage will result to the work and/or to adjacent property.
- 7. Pipe trenches shall not be excavated more than 300 feet in advance of pipe laying and temporary bridges or cross walks shall be constructed where required to maintain vehicular or pedestrian traffic.
- 8. Trench widths shall be confined to dedicated rights-of-way or construction easements, unless special written agreements have been made with the affected property owner. Place all excavated materials within easements or rights-of-way, and do not obstruct any public or private roadways or streets.
- 9. Where select backfill is specified or required, all excavated materials shall be promptly removed and disposed of by the Contractor.

B. Rock Excavation:

- 1. Rock encountered in trench excavation for pipe lines shall be removed for the over-all width of trench and to a depth of 6-inches below the bottom of the barrel of pipe 24-inches in diameter and smaller, and 8-inches below the bottom of pipe 24 to 36 inches in diameter, and 12-inches below pipe larger than 36-inches in diameter, if rock extends to such depths.
- 2. Where pipelines are constructed on concrete cradles, rock shall be excavated to the bottom of the cradle as shown on the plans. When necessary to provide sufficient working space, rock shall be excavated to additional depth for bell holes.
- 3. After the Engineer has inspected the completed excavation, the space below the ultimate pipe or structure grade shall be filled with an approved foundation material and compacted to the proper grade.
- 4. <u>Drilling and blasting methods used in rock excavation shall be optional with the Contractor but shall be conducted with due regard to the safety of persons and property in the vicinity of the work and in strict conformity with all laws, ordinances, or regulations governing blasting and the use of explosives. The Contractor shall be licensed for this type of blasting and shall follow the insurance requirements of the general conditions. The Contractor shall also notify the fire department at least 48 hours in advance of any blasting. (Blasting not allowed)</u>
- 5. Rock excavation near existing structures of all types shall be conducted with the utmost care, and every precaution shall be taken to prevent damage to such structures. Any damage or injury of whatever nature to persons or property caused directly or indirectly by blasting operations shall be promptly repaired, replaced, or compensated for by the Contractor at his own expense and to the satisfaction of the persons injured or the owners of the property damaged.

C. Sheeting, Shoring and Bracing:

- 1. The sides of all trenching excavations shall be sufficiently sheeted, shored, and braced whenever necessary to prevent slides, cave-ins, settlements or movement of the banks and to maintain the excavation clear of obstructions that will, in any way, hinder or delay the progress of the work.
- 2. Wood or steel sheet piling of ample design and type shall be used when necessary.
- 3. All sheeting, shoring, and bracing shall have sufficient strength and rigidity to withstand the pressures exerted and to maintain the walls of the excavation properly in place and protect all persons and property from injury or damage.
- 4. Where excavations are made adjacent to existing buildings or other structures, or in paved streets or alleys, the Contractor shall take particular care to sheet, shore and brace the sides of the excavation adequately so as to prevent any undermining of or settlement beneath such structures or pavement. Underpinning of adjacent structures shall be done when necessary. The Contractor will be liable for any damage to any structure that results from his operations.
- 5. Sheeting, shoring or bracing materials shall not be left in place unless so shown by the plans or ordered by the Engineer. Such materials shall be removed in such manner as will not endanger or damage the new structure or any existing structures or property, either public or private, in the vicinity, and so as to avoid cave-ins or slides. No trench sheeting and bracing shall be removed until the trench has been backfilled one foot above the top of the pipe.

D. Trenching Through Dikes or Fill Sections:

- 1. Trenching through existing dikes or fill sections shall be accomplished in accordance with general trenching requirements as specified elsewhere.
- 2. Trenching for pipe lines or other utilities through dikes or fill sections under construction shall not begin until the new dike or fill section has been constructed, enlarged, or otherwise improved to an elevation 3 feet above the top of the pipe or other utility being installed.
- 3. Where existing dikes or fill sections are being used for the storage of liquids such as a lagoon, reservoir, pond, lake, canal, or other structure, the Contractor shall take whatever means necessary to preserve the integrity of the structure. No leakage of the stored liquid out of the structure will be allowed without the written approval of the owners of said structure.

E. Minimum Trench Widths:

1. All excavations shall be made to the lines and grades as established by the drawings, and shall be open cut through whatever material encountered. The Engineer may, if requested, make changes in the trench alignment to avoid major obstructions, if such changes can be made within the easement right-of-way without adversely affecting the intended function of the facility. In areas where soil conditions permit normal excavation of the trench, the sides shall be cut as nearly vertical as possible from the bottom of the trench to a point at least 12 inches above the top of the pipe. The trench width shall conform to Table 2 of the AWWA C600 Specification.

3.5 DEWATERING

- A. The Contractor shall at all times provide and maintain the necessary equipment and means for removal of all water from excavated areas. All excavated areas shall be kept free of water while any work is in progress. Particular precautions shall be taken to prevent the displacement of structures or pipelines as a result of accumulated water.
- B. Bedding material or pipe shall not be placed in wet or unstable trenches. Soil that cannot be properly dewatered shall be excavated and dry material tamped in place to such a depth as may be required to provide a firm trench bottom.
- C. All water removed or diverted from excavations shall be disposed of in a manner that will prevent damage to adjacent property or any flooding of streets or property. Disposal of trench water through the pipeline under construction shall not be allowed.
- D. Water shall be removed and disposed of so as to not damage adjacent property or existing drainage ways.

3.6 TRENCH FOUNDATION MATERIAL

- A. Where unsuitable materials for supporting pipe cushion are encountered, these materials shall be removed and replaced with trench foundation material, as directed by the Engineer.
- B. Trench foundation material shall be placed at the specified trench width from the bottom of the excess excavation to the bottom grade line of the pipe cushion.

- C. Trench foundation material so placed shall be as shown on the trench detail drawings or specified herein. If not shown on the drawings, trench foundation material shall consist of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Section 801, No. 57 crushed limestone.
- D. Payment for trench foundation material will be limited to situations approved in advance by the Engineer.

3.7 BEDDING AND BACKFILL

A. General:

- 1. All areas where bedding is not specifically called for or required by the Engineer, the pipe shall be bedded in native soils. Bell holes shall be excavated so that the entire pipe length rests on firm soil. (See Construction Plans Trench Details)
- 2. Areas undercut by the Contractor through negligence, or his convenience, shall be backfilled and tamped with approved materials at the expense of the Contractor. In paved areas, the backfill material shall be as per the trench details as found in the Construction Plans.
- 3. Bedding shall meet the requirements of Paragraph 2.01 of these specifications.
- 4. Backfilling shall not begin before the Owner's Representative has inspected the grade and alignment of the pipe.
- 5. If select backfill is not specified, backfilling to a point 12-inches above the top of the pipe, defined as the pipe zone, shall be done with good earth, sand or gravel and shall be free from large rocks or hard lumpy materials. Large rocks shall be defined as any larger than 2-inches in diameter. No materials of perishable, spongy or otherwise unsuitable nature shall be used in backfilling. It is essential that the completed backfill be done in such a manner as to minimize voids in the backfill. (All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details)
- 6. Place trench backfill material at approximately the same rate along both sides of the pipe and compact by tamping in layers not to exceed 8 inches of loose fill up to the horizontal centerline of the pipe. The intent is to cradle the pipe so that the full length is uniformly supported on firm bedding and the weight of the pipe and backfill is borne uniformly by the lower half of the pipe barrel. Special attention should be given to the backfilling and tamping procedures to ensure that no voids or un-compacted areas occur beneath the pipe. The use of granular material for backfill in the pipe zone shall constitute a pay item only when so directed by the Engineer. After this, fill and compact the trench as specified below, depending upon the location of the work and danger from subsequent settlement. (All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details)
- 7. All backfilling shall be done in such a manner that will not disturb or injure the pipe or structure over or against which it is being placed. Any pipe or structure injured, damaged, or moved from its proper line or grade during backfilling operations, shall be replaced or repaired and then re-backfilled as herein specified, at the expense of the Contractor.

B. Trench Backfill and Pipe Bedding:

- 1. Pipe bedding and trench backfill shall be constructed as shown on the drawings for trench details. If no trench details are shown on the drawings, then the Contractor shall install the utilities as described in Paragraphs 3.07 B.3 and 3.07 B.4.
- 2. Where pipes are installed in unpaved areas, unless specifically shown on the drawings or called out in the Bid Schedule to be unimproved, the areas shall be considered to be <u>Improved</u> areas and shall be constructed accordingly.
- 3. Pipe Bedding and Trench Backfill Gravity Pipe:
 - a. Under Pavement (Asphalt or Concrete and/or Gravel Drives):

Pipe Material - Ductile Iron

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

Pipe Material - PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

b. Improved Areas:

Pipe Material - Ductile Iron and Concrete

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

Pipe Material – PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

c. Unimproved Areas:

Pipe Material - Ductile Iron and Concrete

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

Pipe Material – PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

- 4. Pipe Bedding and Trench Backfill Pressure Pipe:
 - a. Under Pavement-Asphalt or Concrete and/or Gravel Drives:

Pipe Material - Ductile Iron

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

Pipe Material - PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

b. Improved Areas:

Pipe Material - Ductile Iron and/or PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

c. Unimproved Areas:

Pipe Material- - Ductile Iron and/or PVC

(All utility trenches shall be backfilled as per the construction plans trench details) (see construction plans for backfill)

* Where trench bottom is rock, provide 6" layer of #57 crushed stone trench foundation material

3.8 CLEANING

- A. The Contractor shall thoroughly clean all areas damaged during construction of excess fill, construction debris, etc.
- B. All gutters and adjacent curbing shall be swept clean of debris and materials that may hinder storm water flow.

3.9 PROTECTION

A. The Contractor shall protect the newly constructed pipeline from damage until final acceptance of the work.

SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes soil treatment with termiticide.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
 - 1. Date and time of application.
 - 2. Moisture content of soil before application.
 - 3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
 - 4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
 - 5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
 - 6. Areas of application.
 - 7. Water source for application.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Soil Treatment:

- 1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.7 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTATION

- A. Keep a Log Book at the job site to include the following information:
 - 1. Project name.
 - 2. Company providing treatment.
 - 3. Applicator's name.
 - 4. Time of arrival and departure.
 - 5. Product name.
 - 6. Record date of all applications.
 - 7. Rate of application to all required areas of the designated site.
 - 8. All areas to be treated.
 - 9. The soil treatment trade name.
 - 10. Quantity of concentrate delivered to the site.
 - 11. Quantity used for the designated treated areas.
 - 12. The percentage of active ingredient in diluted form.
 - 13. Finished gallons of soil treatment for each application.
 - 14. Linear and square footage amount to determine total finished soil treatment used.
- B. Architect or the Owner's representative will observe both the amount of concentrate delivered to the site and the empty units that total the amount used to the treated areas. The Architect or the Owner's representative shall sign the log book as noted.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Bayer Environmental Science; Premise 75.

- b. Master Builders Solutions; Termidor.
- c. Syngenta; Demon Max.
- 2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment.
- B. Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- C. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated.
 - 1. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings.
 - 2. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
 - 3. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.
 - 1. Slabs-on-Grade: Underground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
 - 2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit

- penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
- 3. Masonry: Treat voids.
- 4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.
- B. Rodding alone is not permitted as the primary technique of treating the soil adjacent to the foundation walls. Trenching or trenching combined with rodding is acceptable.
- C. Provide a compatible dye in the termiticide to show visible evidence of the treatment.
- D. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- E. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.
- F. Post warning signs in areas of application.
- G. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.
- H. Conduct a quality control inspection after treatment and submit a written report to the Architect.

3.4 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of termite-control-treatment Installer. Include quarterly maintenance as required for proper performance according to the product's EPA-Registered Label and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 313116

SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
- 2. Joint-sealant backer materials.
- 3. Primers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM D 5893, Type SL.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.
 - c. The Dow Chemical Company; Dow Corning® 890-SL Silicone Joint Sealant.
- B. Multicomponent, Pourable, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-200.

2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

A. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.4 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer.
- D. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- E. Install joint-sealant backings to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- F. Install joint sealants immediately following backing installation, using proven techniques that comply with the following:
 - 1. Place joint sealants so they fully contact joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- G. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
 - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- H. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

I. Clean off excess joint sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.2 PAVING-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within concrete paving.
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Expansion and isolation joints in concrete paving.
 - b. Contraction joints in concrete paving.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Single-component, self-leveling, silicone joint sealant or multicomponent, pourable, urethane, elastomeric joint sealant.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.

May 6, 2024 BWA Project No. 24001

SECTION 322290 - SLOPE PROTECTION AND EROSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This section of specifications covers the requirements of the contractor to protect the project site and adjoining properties from soil erosion and runoff. Section reviews methods of construction, erosion control measures, maintenance of erosion control features, and construction runoff permitting.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 312250 - Trenching, Backfill, and Compaction

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 TEMPORARY BERMS

A. A temporary berm is constructed of compacted soil or riprap, with or without a shallow ditch, at the top of fill slopes or transverse to the centerline of fills. These berms are used temporarily at the top of newly constructed slopes to prevent excessive erosion until permanent controls are installed or slopes stabilized.

2.2 TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS

A. A temporary slope drain is a facility consisting of temporary earthen swale, stone gutters, fiber mats, plastic sheets, concrete or asphalt gutters, half-round pipe, metal pipe, plastic pipe, sod or other material acceptable to the Engineer that may be used to carry water down slopes to reduce erosion. These items shall be required at no additional compensation to manage the stormwater runoff during construction.

2.3 SEDIMENT STRUCTURES

A. Sediment basins, ponds, and traps are prepared storage areas constructed to trap and store sediment from erodible areas in order to protect properties and stream channels below the construction areas from excessive siltation.

2.4 CHECK DAMS

A. Check dams are barriers composed of logs and poles, large stones, or other materials placed across a natural or constructed drainway.

2.5 TEMPORARY SEEDING AND MULCHING

A. Temporary seeding and mulching are measures consisting of seeding, mulching, fertilizing, and matting utilized to reduce erosion. All cut and fill slopes, including waste sites and borrow pits, shall be seeded when and where necessary to control erosion.

2.6 BRUSH BARRIERS

- A. Brush barriers shall consist of brush, tree trimmings, shrubs, plants, and other approved refuse from the clearing and grubbing operation.
- B. Brush barriers are placed on natural ground at the bottom of fill slopes, where the most likely erodible areas are located, to restrain sedimentation particles.

2.7 STRAW CHECKS

- A. Straw erosion checks are temporary measures to control erosion and prevent siltation.
- B. Straw checks shall be used where the existing ground slopes toward or away from the embankment along the toe of slopes, in ditches, or other areas where siltation erosion or water runoff is a problem.

2.8 TEMPORARY SILT FENCES

A. Silt fences are temporary measures utilizing woven wire or other approved material attached to posts with filter cloth composed of burlap, plastic filter fabric, etc., attached to the upstream side of the fence to retain the suspended silt particles in the run-off water.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining a NPDES permit in accordance with requirements of this section and notes on the plans notes sheet and in compliance with regulations established by the EPA and the ADEM. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing the Qualified Credentialed Professional (QCP) and/or Qualified Credentialed Inspector (QCI) to perform inspections as required by the permits. The costs of inspections and associated documentation shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The QCP/QCI shall inspect all BMP's daily and keep daily inspection reports in a log book that shall be submitted for review by the Owner's Representative prior to approval of the monthly pay request.
- B. The Contractor shall exercise planning and forethought in coordinating the work of protecting the project and adjoining properties from soil erosion by effective and continuous erosion control methods of either a temporary or a permanent nature.
- C. The Contractor shall plan his clearing work and his entire construction operations in such a manner as to effectively control soil erosion and prevent pollution of streams, ponds, and/or drains as would result from silt or soil runoff or as would result from any materials used in the construction operations such as oil, grease, paints, chemicals, or any construction debris.
- D. The Contractor shall intercept and block drainage from the construction site by means of silt fences, silt barriers, sedimentation pools or other measures as required.
- E. The erosion control work shall cover all disturbed areas within the project and/or easement along which the project has been installed. Erosion control work shall not be limited to the easement but shall include all disturbed areas as necessary.

3.2 METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Contractor shall use any of the acceptable methods necessary to control soil erosion and prevent the flow of sediment to the maximum extent possible. These methods shall include, but not be limited to, the use of water diversion structures, diversion ditches, and settling basins.
- B. Construction operations shall be restricted to the areas of work indicated on the Plans and to the area which must be entered for the construction of temporary or permanent facilities. The Engineer has the authority to limit the surface area of erodible earth material exposed by clearing and grubbing, excavation, borrow, and fill operations and to direct the Contractor to provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures to prevent contamination of the adjacent watercourses. Such work may involve the construction of temporary berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins, slope drains, and use of temporary mulches, mats, or other control devices or methods as necessary to control erosion.
- C. Excavated soil material shall not be placed adjacent to watercourses in a manner that will cause it to be washed away by high water or runoff. Earth berms or diversions shall be constructed to intercept and divert runoff water away from critical areas. Diversion outlets shall be stable or shall be stabilized by means acceptable to the Engineer. If, for any reason, construction materials are washed away during the course of construction, the Contractor shall remove those materials from the fouled areas as directed by the Engineer at no cost to the Owner.
- D. The Contractor shall not pump silt-laden water from trenches or other excavations into adjacent watercourses. Instead, silt-laden water from excavations shall be discharged into sediment traps to ensure that only sediment-free water is returned to the watercourses. Damage to vegetation by excessive watering or silt accumulation in the discharge area shall be avoided.
- E. Prohibited construction procedures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Dumping of spoil material into any streams, wetlands, surface waters, or unspecified locations.

- 2. Indiscriminate, arbitrary, or capricious operation of equipment in wetlands or surface water areas.
- 3. Pumping of silt-laden water from trenches or excavations into surface waters or wetlands.
- 4. Damaging vegetation adjacent to or outside of the construction area limits.
- Disposal of trees, brush, debris, paints, chemicals, asphalt products, concrete curing compounds, fuels, lubricants, insecticides, washwater from concrete trucks or hydroseeders, or any other pollutant in wetlands, surface waters, or unspecified locations.
- 6. Permanent or unauthorized alteration of the flow line of any stream.

3.3 EROSION CHECKS

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install straw erosion checks in all locations indicated on the Plans, surrounding the base of all deposits of stored excavated materials outside of the disturbed area, and where indicated by the Engineer. Checks, where indicated on the Plans, shall be installed immediately after the site is cleared and before excavation has begun at the locations indicated. Checks located around stored material shall be located approximately 6-feet from that material. Each check shall be butted tightly against the adjoining check to preclude short-circuiting of the erosion check.

3.4 MAINTENANCE OF EROSION CONTROL FEATURES

- A. The temporary erosion control features installed by the Contractor shall be acceptably maintained by the Contractor until no longer needed or permanent erosion control methods are installed. Any materials removed shall become the property of the Contractor.
- B. Silt fences shall have sediment deposits removed if it reaches a depth of fifteen inches (15") or ½ the height of the fence. Sediment removed from the silt fence shall be removed from the site.
- C. In the event that temporary erosion and pollution control measures are required due to the Contractor's negligence, carelessness, or failure to install permanent controls as a part of work as scheduled, and are ordered by the Engineer, such work shall be performed by the Contractor at his own expense.

3.5 CONSTRUCTION RUNOFF PERMITTING

A. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to obtain a State NPDES General Permit ALG610000 for construction site runoff as part of this project. Application for coverage is made by submittal of a Notice of Intent (NOI) and a permit fee to:

ADEM – Water Division Post Office Box 301463 Montgomery, AL 36130-1463 Telephone (334) 271-7700

B. The construction general permit requires the Contractor to use Best Management Practices (BMPs) to control storm water runoff. The general permit requires inspections on monthly basis to ensure compliance with State water quality standards. Onsite precipitation must also be recorded.

SECTION 322500 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section of Specifications covers the material and installation requirements for asphalt patching over excavated trenches in roads, parking lots and driveways.
- B. This Section of Specifications covers material and installation requirements for asphalt overlay, asphalt full build-up in roads, parking lots, and driveways.

1.2 GENERAL INFORMATION

- A. Measurement for asphalt patching shall be the trench width as specified by Table 2 of AWWA C600 plus 2 feet. The trench width for utilities and utility services less than 4 inches shall be 2-feet. For valves and other fittings including the connecting piping for ties to other water mains or fire hydrants, the measurement shall allow 2-feet on all sides of the actual dimension of the fitting itself. (N/A Lump Sum Contract)
- B. The average weight per square yard of plant mix to be placed is shown in the drawings. The Architect may direct in writing that the designated weight be increased or decreased in certain areas. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to place and spread the material uniformly to such thickness as will produce the specified average weight per square yard, separately for each layer of base, binder, and surface, and to maintain a continuing check on tonnage and yardage throughout the day's operation to insure uniform specified weight.

If the average weight per square yard of any unit is found deficient by more than 10 percent of the specified average weight per square yard, the Architect will determine (1) whether the Contractor shall remove and replace the deficient unit without payment for the removal or the material removed, or (2) whether the Contractor may leave the deficient unit in place and cover it with a layer of the same mix of adjusted maximum size aggregate, of not less than 80 pounds per square yard average. In case (2), the surface layer shall not be featheredged at the end of the overlay layer, but a sufficient amount of the surface beyond the ends of the deficient unit shall be removed, to a neat line across the pavement, to allow placing the full 80 pounds per square yard and make a joint that will meet the surface requirements. The Contractor will be paid for the deficient layer plus as much of the 80-pound overlay as is needed to bring the total up to the designated average weight per square yard for that unit.

If the average weight per square yard placed for any unit is more than ten (10) percent in excess of the weight specified by the Architect, the amount over 110% shall not be paid for.

Measurement shall be taken from the actual width of paving in feet times the length of paving in feet divided by 9 to obtain square yardage. (N/A - Lump Sum Contract)

Measurement for asphalt leveling shall be taken from the actual truck weights with the weight tickets being furnished at the job site with each truck. Only tickets received on the day the asphalt is installed shall be accepted. (N/A - Lump Sum Contract)

1.3 REFERENCES

A. State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The work of asphalt paving shall be accomplished by skilled workmen experienced in the laying of asphalt.
- B. All equipment shall be of a design and size to successfully accomplish the work.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. The Contractor shall comply with all environmental laws and requirements pertaining to the work.

- B. The Contractor shall take adequate measures to control dust in the work area.
- C. The Contractor shall thoroughly inspect the backfilled trench and assure himself that proper laying conditions exist
- D. The Contractor shall provide and maintain adequate and safe traffic control.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A.Prime Coat:

- Prime Coat shall be emulsified asphalt, Type AE-P, tar types RT2 or RT3, or cutback asphalts MC 250, RC70 or RC250 as defined in Section 804 of the Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
- 2. Prime Coat shall be applied at the rate of 0.22 to 0.25 gallons per square yard over the entire area to be treated with asphalt.

B. Tack Coat:

- Tack coat shall be emulsified asphalt type SS-1, SS-1h, or RS-2 or Asphalt Cement Grade AC-10 or AC-20 as defined in Section 804 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
- 2. Tack Coat shall be applied at a rate not to exceed 0.10 gallons per square yard.

C. Asphalt Patch:

- 1. Asphalt paving used in patching shall be Improved Bituminous Concrete Binder as defined in Section 424 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
- 2. Materials shall meet the requirements of Article 424.02 of the above-mentioned specifications.
- 3. The Contractor shall refer to the drawings for the quantity of material to be applied per square yard.

D. Asphalt Paving:

- Asphalt paving used in paving shall be Improved Bituminous Concrete Plant Mix, meeting the specification outlined in Section 424 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Specifications.
- 2. Asphalt final layer placed for paving and/or overlay in streets, parking lots, drives, and patches shall be Improved Bituminous Concrete Wearing Surface, Mix "A" and all materials used shall conform to Article 424 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Specifications.
- 3. The Contractor shall refer to the drawings for the quantity of material to be applied per square yard.
- E. Traffic striping and control markings shall conform to Sections 701 and 703 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction. All striping, delineations, markers, etc., damaged or destroyed during the construction shall be replaced by the Contractor at his expense.
- F. Before overlaying the street, the Contractor shall raise or lower all valve boxes, manholes and other embedded items, including items that have previously been paved over. No extra payment will be made for these adjustments.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. Equipment used in asphalt patching and/or asphalt paving shall meet the requirements of Article 410.03a of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Specifications.
- B. Equipment used in the application of Prime Coat and Tack Coat shall comply with Article 401.03a of the above-mentioned Specifications.

2.3 TEMPERATURE AND WEATHER REQUIREMENTS

A. Prime and Tack Coat:

- Bituminous materials shall not be placed on wet surfaces or when the air temperature is below 60degrees F.
- Bituminous materials shall not be placed when the temperature is expected to fall below freezing during the night regardless of the daytime temperature.

B. Asphalt Patching and Overlay:

- 1. The asphalt mixture shall be placed only upon an approved underlying course that is dry.
- 2. Asphalt layers of 200-pounds per square yard or less shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 40-degrees F. The air temperature must be 40-degrees F. and rising before the spreading operation is started and the spreading operation shall be stopped when the air temperature is 45-degrees F. and falling.
- For asphalt layers over 200-pounds per square yard, the above temperatures shall be lowered by 5degrees.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION

- A. Prime and Tack Coat:
 - All loose material, dust and foreign material shall be removed from the surface. Cleaning shall be continued until all caked and loose dirt and dust are removed.
- B. Asphalt Patching:
 - All designated areas to be patched shall be trimmed to neat vertical lines to the depth of patch specified.
 All loose material shall be removed. A prime or tack coat shall be applied as specified above. The asphalt shall be placed and compacted to a degree that further consolidation of the patch is not anticipated.
 - 2. Any patched areas that do consolidate shall be replaced or additional material brought in to bring the patch up to the surrounding level.
 - 3. All asphalt or concrete streets, parking areas and drives shall be patched the same day they are cut. Temporary or cold patch material may be used until the permanent patch can be placed; however, no extra payment will be made for temporary patching.
 - 4. The Contractor shall delineate with construction warning signs (lighted at night) any "bump" and/or rough patch areas that will greatly impact the public until the patch is complete and smoothly graded with no settlement.

3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Prime and Tack Coat:
 - 1. Prime and Tack Coat shall be uniformly applied at the rate specified by pressurized distributors.
 - 2. All areas to be treated with an asphalt surface treatment shall be primed and/or tacked.
- B. Asphalt Patch and Overlay:
 - 1. Asphalt patching may be applied with spreaders, by hand, or with motor graders. All areas inaccessible to large equipment shall be spread by hand.
 - 2. Asphalt patching shall be thoroughly compacted through the use of steel wheeled rollers and/or rubber-tired rollers. Density shall be as specified in the drawings or in the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
 - 3. Asphalt paving overlay shall be applied with spreaders; except in inaccessible areas spreading may be done by hand, uniformly placing the desired rate per square yard over the underlying surface.
 - 4. As soon as the mixture has set sufficiently to prevent cracking, the mixture shall be rolled with steel wheel and rubber-tired rollers to compact the mixture. Density shall be as specified in the drawings.

3.3 TESTING AND SURFACE REQUIREMENTS

A. Testing of the asphalt mixtures shall be performed at the discretion of the Architect. Testing shall include but not be limited to density tests and extraction tests.

May 6, 2024 BWA Project No. 24001

B. The finished surface of asphalt overlays shall be checked with string, level and/or straightedge. The finished surface shall not vary more than 1/4" from the required sections as measured at right angles to the roadway centerline. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8" in any 25-foot section measured parallel to the centerline at the following locations: one foot inside of the edges of pavement, at the centerline and at other points as designated.

3.4 MAINTENANCE

A. The contractor shall maintain and protect the newly laid asphalt until final acceptance of the work.

END OF SECTION 322500

SECTION 322528 - CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Concrete curb and gutters, valley gutters and other curbing, shall be constructed to the shape and cross-sections as shown on the detail drawing.
- B. Curb and gutters, valley gutters, etc., shall be placed on material meeting or exceeding the requirements of the processed roadbed or base material underlying adjacent paving.
- C. Concrete for all curbing shall be a minimum of 3000 psi and meet the requirements of the concrete specifications.
- D. All curb, curb and gutter, valley gutter, etc., shall have hand-tooled joints during the initial pour, and after setup the joints shall be saw-cut to provide the necessary depth joint (1/4 thickness of concrete)

1.2 FORMS

- A. Contractor shall use standard type metal forms for all curbing except where noted.
- B. Forms shall be straight and free from warps and adequately braced to insure no moving during concrete placement.
- C. Where short radii occur forms may be constructed of wood and bent to form the proper curvature, if approved by the Architect. All wood forms so used shall provide the required shape and cross-section as the standard metal forms.
- D. Hand forming and pouring of curbing shall be of the highest quality. This pertains to areas where the Contractor makes tie-ins or pours curbing, valley gutter, etc., in decorative locations where machine curb is not possible. High quality will be considered consistent, straight pours, with almost no waving, depressions, or deviations in the general shape of the curb, gutter, etc., required as shown on the Standard Details in the drawings. Low quality, non-aesthetically pleasing concrete work shall be removed and reinstalled at the Contractor's expense.

1.3 MACHINE CURBS

- A. Machine curbs are acceptable where approved in writing by the Owner's Representative.
- B. Approval by the Owner's Representative will require a field demonstration of the acceptability of the machine to be used.

1.4 PROTECTION OF CURBS

- A. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the protection of all curb and gutter sections until final acceptance of the work.
- B. Any damaged, misaligned, or otherwise unacceptable section of curb and/or curb and gutter combination shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Chain-link fences.
 - 2. Swing gates.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
 - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
 - c. Gates and hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Sample warranty.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer to design chain-link fence and gate frameworks.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate frameworks shall withstand the design wind loads and stresses for fence height(s) and under exposure conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design Wind Load: As indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F1043 for post spacing not to exceed 10 feet for Material Group IA, ASTM F1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 - b. Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified.

2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist according to "CLFMI Product Manual" and requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Steel Wire for Fabric: Wire diameter of 0.148 inch.
 - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
 - b. Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 2b over zinc-coated steel wire.
 - Color: Black, according to ASTM F 934.
 - 3. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages.
 - a. Do not extend fabric above top rail.

2.3 FENCE FRAMEWORK

- A. Posts and Rails: ASTM F 1043 for framework, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 or ASTM F 1083 based on the following:
 - 1. Fence Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Heavy-Industrial-Strength Material: Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40.
 - a. Line Post: 2.375 inches in diameter.
 - a. End, Corner, and Pull Posts: 2.375 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Horizontal Framework Members: Intermediate top and bottom rails according to ASTM F 1043.
 - a. Top Rail: 1.66 inches in diameter.

- 4. Brace Rails: ASTM F 1043.
- 5. Metallic Coating for Steel Framework:
 - a. Type A zinc coating.
- 6. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
 - a. Color: Match chain-link fabric, according to ASTM F 934.

2.4 TENSION WIRE

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- diameter, marcelled tension wire complying with ASTM A 817 and ASTM A 824, with the following metallic coating:
 - 1. Type II: Zinc coated (galvanized) with minimum coating weight matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
- B. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- diameter, tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 2b over zinc-coated steel wire.
 - 1. Color: Black, according to ASTM F 934.

2.5 SWING GATES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for gate posts and double swing gate types.
 - 1. Gate Leaf Width: As indicated.
 - 2. Framework Member Sizes and Strength: Based on gate fabric height as indicated.
- B. Pipe and Tubing:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Comply with ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective coating and finish to match fence framework.
 - 2. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel.
 - 3. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel.
- C. Hardware:
 - 1. Hinges: 180-degree outward swing.
 - 2. Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate.

2.6 FITTINGS

- A. Provide fittings according to ASTM F 626.
- B. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
 - 1. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
- C. Finish:

- 1. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz./sq. ft. of zinc.
 - a. Polymer coating over metallic coating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain-link fencing according to ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements specified.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Corner Post Setting: Set corner or turn posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
- D. Intermediate Post Setting: Set intermediate posts by mechanically driving into soil at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Mechanically Driven Posts: Drive into soil to depth of 30 inches. Protect post top to prevent distortion.
- E. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
 - 1. As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 10 feet o.c.
- G. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside of enclosing framework. Leave 2-inch bottom clearance between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.

3.3 GATE INSTALLATION

A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant

March 31,2025 BWA Project No. 24001 BID SET

or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

May 6, 2024 BWA Project No. 24001

SECTION 332433 - STORM SEWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. This section shall cover the work of furnishing and constructing storm sewers of the kind, strength, and size pipe provided in the drawings in accordance with the requirements of these specifications and installing such sewers at the location shown on the drawings or designated and in conformity with established lines and grades. These items shall also include the furnishing and construction of such joints necessary, cutting and connections to other pipe, catch basins, in-walls, etc., and may be required to complete the work shown on the drawings or as directed.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials:

- Concrete Pipe: All pipe material shall be reinforced concrete pipe, Class III, Class IV, and Class V, conforming to ASTM C-76 Specifications, minimum. Pipe extensions shall be of the type and class of piping being extended.
- Plastic Pipe: All plastic pipe shall be as shown in the plans, PVC or HDPE (High Density Polyethylene) storm sewer pipe, double walled, smooth inner wall, bell and spigot joints, and rubber O-rings, conforming to ASTM F-477.
- Pipe Extensions: Pipe extensions shall be of the type and class of piping extended.

1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Trenches: The trench shall be excavated beginning at the outlet end and proceed upgrade true to the established line and grade. Trenches shall be properly sheeted and braced wherever needed and conform to Section 312250 of these Specifications and trench standard details in the drawings.
- B. Pipe Laying: The laying of pipes and finished trenches shall be started at the outlet end and proceed upgrade so that the spigot or groove ends point in the direction of the flow. All pipe shall be laid with ends abutting and with not more than one inch variation from established alignment at the vertical center line or from grade at the flow line. The bottom of the trench shall be shaped accurately to the outside surface of the pipe for a depth of at least 1/10 of the outside diameter. The pipe shall be fitted and matched so that when laid in the work, they will form a sewer with a smooth uniform invert. Hubs or bells shall be carefully cleaned before pipes are lowered into the trenches. Pipes shall be so lowered as to avoid damage and unnecessary handling in the trench.
- C. Sealing Joints: Joints shall be sealed with mortar, bituminous plastic cement, rubber type gaskets or other type sealers that may be approved. Joints shall be thoroughly cleaned before being sealed and shall be sealed for the full circumference of the joint unless otherwise directed.
- D. Backfilling: All trenches and excavation shall be bedded and backfilled as shown on the drawings. Backfilling shall not begin until mortar joints have cured or until backfilling is authorized by the Architect.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION STAKING

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all construction staking.

END OF SECTION 332433

STORM SEWERS 332433 - 1

SECTION 332607 - PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES AND COVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. This section of specifications covers the material and installation requirements for precast concrete manhole sections with tongue-and-groove joints, masonry transition to manhole frame, covers, anchorage and accessories.
- B. The testing requirements for materials, in-place, specified under this section shall conform to Section 332722 Sanitary Sewer System.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

- A. Section 312250 Trenching, Backfill and Compaction
- B. Section 332722 Sanitary Sewer System

1.3 REFERENCES:

- A. ASTM A48 Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.
- ASTM C443 Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets.
- C. ASTM C478 Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections.
- D. ASTM C923 Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures and Pipes.
- E. International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council (IMIAC): Recommended Practices and Guide Specification for Cold Weather Masonry Construction.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS:

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum of five years documented experience.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS:

A. Masonry construction shall not be performed when ambient temperatures are 40-degrees F. and falling unless provisions for heating and protecting the work are approved. Protect new masonry from freezing for 48-hours after completion of the masonry work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Precast Manhole Base and Sections:
 - All precast manholes shall be new, unused manholes delivered directly from the manufacturer to the job site. The date of manufacture and the name or trademark of the manufacturer shall be clearly marked on the outside of the barrel.
 - 2. Precast concrete manholes shall be of reinforced concrete manhole sections conforming to the requirements of ASTM C478. The concrete when tested in compression shall not be less than 4000 psi and absorption shall not exceed 9%.
 - 3. Precast manhole base and sections shall be a minimum of 48-inches inside diameter. Precast manhole base shall have a minimum wall thickness of 5 inches and minimum bottom thickness of 6 inches. Minimum wall thickness of the manhole riser sections shall be 5 inches for 48" I.D. sections, 6 inches for 60" I.D. sections, and 7 inches for 72" I.D. sections.
 - 4. Manhole base riser, riser, transition, and cone sections shall have offset tongue and groove joints and shall be made watertight with prelubricated rubber gaskets conforming to ASTM C443 and butyl sealant waterstops. Pre-lubricated gaskets shall be Tylox Superseal as

- manufactured by Hamilton-Kent; butyl sealant waterstop shall be Conseal CS-231, in widths as recommended by the manufacturer.
- 5. Manholes shall be assembled with the fewest number of sections to makeup the required height, thereby reducing the number of joints. The use of more than one riser section of 16 inches or less shall be prohibited. The Engineer may require that any manhole not composed of the minimum number of sections be replaced.
- 6. Precast eccentric cone shall be provided at top section of manhole. Eccentric cone shall have the same reinforcing as manhole base and sections. Cone sections shall be made with a minimum 5-inch wall thickness at the bottom and 8-inch wall thickness at the top. Where watertight manhole frame and covers are indicated on the drawings, cone sections shall be supplied with four (4) stainless steel anchor bolts.
- 7. Two lift holes shall be cast into each cone or riser section for purposes of handling and placement.
- 8. Openings for inlet and discharge sewer pipes shall be provided in the manhole base section and in the riser section for drop manholes. Openings shall be at positions and elevations as indicated on the plans, and may be cast into the manhole wall or mechanically cored at the manufacturing facility. Openings shall be sized to accommodate the flexible manhole sleeve.

B. Precast Concrete Adjusting Rings:

- 1. Provide precast concrete adjusting rings, as required, between top of eccentric cone and finished grade.
- 2. Precast concrete adjusting rings shall be of same materials of construction as manhole bases and sections, grooved top and bottom.
- 3. Adjusting rings shall be 3 or 4 inches high by 5 inches thick. Maximum combined height of adjustment rings shall be limited to 8 inches.

C. Flexible Manhole Sleeves:

Flexible manhole sleeves suitable for use in precast or cored openings utilizing premolded shapes
positioned with expansion rings shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C923 and shall be
manufactured by Kor-N-Seal or approved equal. Flexible connectors shall be installed as
recommended by the manufacturer.

D. Manhole Steps:

- 1. Manhole steps shall be Copolymer Polypropylene Plastic Coating over 1/2-inch minimum Grade 60 steel reinforcing, 12-inches wide, with slip resistant surface.
- Manhole steps shall conform to ASTM C478 as manufactured by M.A. Industries, Model PSI-PF, or equal. Steps shall be centered under the manhole cover opening and be vertically aligned on 16-inch centers.

E. Manhole Frames and Covers:

- Manhole frames and covers shall be close-grained, cast-iron, smooth, clean, free of blisters, blowholes and other defects and conform to ASTM A48, Class 30B. Plane or grind bearing surfaces to ensure a flat, fine surface. Castings judged to be defective by the Owner or Engineer will be rejected and shall be replaced by the Contractor.
- 2. Covers and frames shall be "Heavy-Duty" type, rated for a minimum of H-20 loading. Covers and frames shall be made in the United States.
- 3. Manhole covers shall be cast with two non-penetrating type pick holes. Covers shall not have vent holes.
- 4. Manhole frames and covers shall be of either Standard Type (non-bolted) or Watertight Type (bolt-down), as indicated on the drawings. If not indicated, manhole covers shall be standard type. In locations where the manhole rim elevation is below the 100-year flood elevation, manhole frame and covers shall be Watertight Type.
- 5. Manhole frames and covers shall conform to the manufacturer dimensions required by the City of Tuscaloosa and shown on the Drawings.
- 6. When watertight frames are required, manhole joints shall be supplied with 3" \times 16" \times 1/2" bitumastic-coated steel strap anchors and bolts as shown on the Drawings.

F. Non-Shrink Grout

- Non-shrink grout shall be used to seal openings in the manhole base and riser sections such as lift holes and around flexible sleeve connections as shown on the standard details. Nonshrink grout shall be MasterSeal 590 or approved equal.
- Surface preparation, mixing and application shall strictly adhere to manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL:

- A. Perform excavation to lines and grades established by the Drawings. Construct excavation a minimum of two (2) feet in diameter larger than the outside dimensions of the manhole base and sections.
- B. If material in bottom of excavation is unsuitable for supporting manhole, excavate unsuitable material to a depth specified by the Engineer and backfill resulting void with Alabama Department of Transportation No. 57 crushed limestone.
- C. Backfill around manholes constructed in paved areas or areas to be paved with Alabama Department of Transportation 825, Type "A". Compact backfill in 8-inch loose lifts to minimum density of 95% Standard Proctor Density with vibratory compaction equipment.
- D. Backfill around manholes in unimproved areas and lawns with native materials, compacted in 8-inch loose lifts to minimum density of 95% Standard Proctor Density.

3.2 GRANULAR BASE:

- A. Remove standing water from excavation. Place 12-inches minimum of Alabama Department of Transportation #57 stone and compact with vibratory compaction equipment.
- B. Excavations deeper than 12-inches below required grade of manhole base, not approved by the Engineer, shall be filled with Alabama Department of Transportation No. 57 crushed limestone and compacted by vibratory compaction equipment at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.3 PLACING MANHOLE BASE AND SECTIONS:

- A. Manholes shall be constructed to the sizes, shapes, dimensions, and at the locations shown on the plans.
- Precast manhole bases shall be set plumb and true to the lines and grades specified by the plans.
 Manholes out of plumb in excess of 1/4-inch in eight (8) feet shall be reset.
- C. Clean ends of manhole sections of foreign materials and inspect ends for damage.
- D. Place prelubricated gasket into recess. Place butyl sealant waterstop. Follow gasket and waterstop manufacturers' installation instructions. Set manhole section.
- E. When new openings are required in existing manholes, openings shall be core drilled.
- F. Install flexible manhole sleeves on pipes at the precast or core drilled openings according to manufacturer's recommendations. Grout around flexible sleeve as shown on the Drawings.
- G. Seal lifting holes and flexible manhole sleeves in manhole on the interior and exterior with non-shrink grout to divert infiltration.

3.4 MANHOLE INVERT:

- A. Manhole inverts shall be constructed of cement mortar and shall have the same cross-section as the invert of the sewers which they connect. The manhole invert shall be carefully formed to the required size and grade by gradual and even changes in sections. Changes in direction of flow through the sewer shall be made to a true curve with as large a radius as the size of the manhole will permit.
- B. For pipe diameters less than 48 inches, a bench shall be constructed on each side of the flow channel.

The bench shall slope one (1) inch per foot. Bench shall be made of non-shrink grout.

- C. Where the difference in the invert elevation of two or more sewers 18-inches in diameter or smaller intersecting in one manhole is 2-feet or more, a drop manhole shall be constructed in the manner shown on the Drawings. They shall be similar in construction to the standard manhole except that a drop connection of pipe and fittings of the proper size and material shall be constructed outside the manhole and supported by 3,000 psi concrete. The manhole and drop connection shall be placed on a 12-inch reinforced concrete foundation base. The drop connection piping assembly shall be bolted to the barrel of the manhole riser. Drop connection piping shall be ductile iron.
- D. When manholes are constructed over existing sewers and a full section of pipe is through manhole, break out top section of pipe and cover exposed edges of pipe with grout.

3.5 MANHOLE FRAMES AND COVERS:

- A. Install manhole frames and covers with top surface adjoining surrounding grade in improved areas, or 18 inches above grade in unimproved areas. Where manholes are constructed in paved areas, the top surface of the frame and cover shall be tilted so as to conform to the exact slope, crown and grade of the existing pavement adjacent thereto. Set manhole frames at the required elevation in a full bed of grout for provide proper bonding to cone section and/or concrete adjusting rings.
- B. Where manhole frame elevation requires adjustment, precast concrete adjusting rings shall be used. A minimum 1/4-inch bed of non-shrinking grout shall be placed between the manhole cone section and the adjusting ring. Same grout thickness shall be provided in between adjusting rings when multiple rings are necessary. Butyl sealant waterstop shall be placed beneath the frame and in between each concrete adjusting ring as shown on the drawings. Butyl sealant shall be Conseal CS-231.
- C. Manhole frame shall be positioned concentrically above the precast cone section or adjusting rings and set in a full bed of non-shrink grout. A thick ring of non-shrink grout extending to the outer edge of the precast cone section or adjusting ring shall be placed all around and on top of the manhole frame. The non-shrink grout shall be smoothly finished and have a slight slope to shed water away from the frame and cover.
- D. Check manhole cover for fit in frame. If a manhole cover is either excessively loose or tight in the frame, or rocks, wobbles, or moves in the frame, the frame and cover shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor.

3.7 MANHOLE HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT:

- A. Adjust height of existing manholes at locations shown on the Drawings. Height adjustment may include lowering or raising the existing manhole.
- B. For manholes located in the roadway or sidewalk, height shall be adjusted such that the rim and cover are flush with the proposed pavement or concrete. For manholes located in non-paved areas, height shall be adjusted such that the rim and cover are 6" above the proposed grade.

3.8 PROTECTIVE COATINGS:

- A. Where shown on the drawings or directed by the Engineer, manholes shall be protected from corrosion by the use of factory applied ceramic epoxy linings.
- B. Epoxy coating shall be an amide cured ceramic epoxy, Permite PCS-9043 Type II or approved equal. The epoxy shall be applied to a 40 mils dry film thickness on the inside of the structure per the manufacturer's recommendations.

SECTION 332614 - HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE & FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. High Density Polyethylene Pipe (HDPE) shall conform to and be tested under all of the requirements of ASTM Designation: F405 and F667 and AASHTO Designations: M252 and M294.

1.2 INSTALLATION

- A. All installation of HDPE pipe shall conform to ASTM D-2321 Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity Flow Applications unless otherwise amended in these specifications.
- B. All HDPE pipe shall be installed on a crushed stone cushion placed the entire trench width.
- C. Where high water tables, flowing water or unstable soil conditions are encountered, crushed stone cushion shall be placed to the top of the pipe.
- D. The inside of all bells and outside of all spigots shall be wiped to remove all dirt, water, or other foreign matter so that their surfaces are clean and dry when the pipes are joined.
- E. Pipe manufacture's guidelines for pipe installation should be adhered to.
- F. Trenching, backfill, and compaction shall conform to Section 312250 of these Specifications.

1.3 PAYMENT

A. Payment for HDPE Gravity Sewer shall be per linear foot of pipe installed. All materials, equipment and labor required to lay the pipe will be considered incidental.

SECTION 332660 - WATER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. This section of specifications shall cover the testing, disinfection and general installation requirements for a potable water system and/or line.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Section 312250 - Trenching, Backfill and Compaction

1.3 REFERENCES:

- A. AWWA C300 AWWA Standard for Hypochlorites
- B. AWWA C301 AWWA Standard for Liquid Chlorine
- C. AWWA C600 AWWA Standard for the Installation of Ductile Iron Water Mains and their Appurtenances.
- D. AWWA C651 AWWA Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains
- E. AWWA C900 AWWA Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4-inch through 12-inch, for Water.

1.4 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS:

- A. The Contractor shall furnish a complete and operable water system, installed according to the standards and accepted practices for waterline construction. These specifications and references specifically called for in these specifications shall be considered minimum, other incidental items may be necessary to construct a complete and operable water system.
- B. The water system shall be free of leakage as defined in Section 332660, Part 3.2, Paragraph B.6 and ready for use by the Owner upon final acceptance.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:

- A. The Contractor shall familiarize himself with the regulatory requirements of the following governing agencies. Any deviations specified in these specifications from these agency requirements shall be promptly brought to the attention of the Architect.
 - 1. Alabama Department of Environmental Management
 - 2. City of Lincoln
 - 3. Local Water Works Department
 - 4. American Water Works Association

1.6 SITE CONDITIONS:

- A. The Contractor shall familiarize himself with the existing conditions and special site requirements of the job.
- B. Any street cuts or crossings shall be coordinated with the Owner and/or Owner's Representative. Any and all traffic control measures specified shall be incorporated by the Contractor.
- C. Street cuts or crossings along or across State of Alabama Department of Transportation Right-of-Way shall follow the guidelines and requirements of the Alabama Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.
- D. The Contractor shall contact the City of Lincoln Water Works Department concerning the use of water to be used in the flushing, pressure testing, and disinfection if project is associated with the City of Lincoln Water System.

- E. The Contractor shall take appropriate measures to control the disposal of water used in the testing, flushing and disinfection of water lines. The Contractor shall adequately protect streets and adjacent property from the discharge of this water. Any damages shall be borne by the Contractor. Water used for disinfection may contain high concentrations of chlorine. Any environmental damage to lakes or streams shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.
- F. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Architect and water works officials on the timing of all tests, flushing and disinfection of all water lines.
- G. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Architect and water works officials on all tie-ins to existing system lines and valves.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. All manufacturers of equipment used in the water line and/or system shall be experienced in the manufacture of such equipment for the water industry.
- B. Equipment of like nature shall be of the same manufacturer as to maintain standardization of operation, maintenance, spare parts and manufacturer's service.

2.2 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS:

- All equipment used in the water system shall be new and unused, first quality and from established manufacturers.
- Equipment shall meet the requirements of the related sections of these specifications and associated governing agency.

2.3 TESTING EQUIPMENT:

A. The Contractor shall have on hand proper testing apparatus and associated accessories prior to beginning any tests. All fittings, piping, pressure gauges and pumps shall be in proper working order.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 THRUST BLOCKING:

- A. All pressure pipes 2-inches in diameter and over shall be provided with thrust restraints. Thrust restraints shall consist of concrete thrust blocks and/or mechanical restraining rods and attachments shall be furnished at all hydrants, valves, fittings, plugs, and pipe bends.
- B. The bearing area for concrete thrust blocking shall conform to the tables shown on the standard details. Special blocking detailed in the drawings shall supercede these requirements.
- C. Concrete used in thrust blocking shall have a minimum compressive strength of 2000 psi in 28-days.
- D. The concrete blocking shall be placed in such a way to contain the thrust force and still maintain accessibility of the pipe and fittings for repair. Nuts, bolts, glands, etc. shall be free of concrete. No separate payment shall be made for concrete blocking or thrust restraint.
- E. Fire hydrants shall be restrained as detailed on the drawings.
- F. All restraining rods, clamps, and accessories shall be coated with a bitumastic coating before and after installation. The surface shall be cleaned thoroughly and the bitumastic coating applied as per manufacturer's recommendations.

3.2 TESTING:

- A. Flushing:
 - 1. Prior to beginning the pressure test, the water line shall be flushed to remove any dirt and debris

- trapped in the line. All valves shall be partially opened and closed during the flushing process.
- All mains shall be flushed with a velocity of at least 2.5 feet per second as specified by the Alabama Department of Environmental Management.

B. Hydrostatic Pressure Test:

- The Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner and slowly fill the section of line to be tested with water. The line shall then be pressurized to 1.5 times the working pressure of the line, but in no case less than 150 psi. The working pressure shall be as defined by the Owner.
- Trapped air shall be expelled at all valves and hydrants. High points in the line without access to a valve or hydrant shall be tapped and a corporation stop installed. Upon completion of the test, the corporation stop shall be left in place. A copper line shall be installed from the corporation stop to a curb stop and a meter box installed.
- 3. Upon complete removal of all air entrapped in the line, the line shall be again filled with water and pressurized and testing begun. Duration of the test shall be (2) two hours for uncovered pipe and (6) six hours for covered pipe. The test pressure shall not vary by + or 5 psi during the duration of the test.
- A recording pressure gauge shall be installed and pressure fluctuations recorded for the duration of the test. Test charts and records shall be available to the Engineer at the end of each test.
- 5. All visible leaks encountered during testing shall be repaired.
- 6. Leakage shall not be greater than determined by the following formula:

$$L = (S)(D)(P^{1/2})$$
148,000

- L = Leakage in gallons per hour
- S = Length of tested pipe (ft.)
- D = Diameter of pipe (in.)
- P = Average test pressure during the duration of the test (P.S.I.)
- A meter shall be used during the duration of the test to determine if the volume of water required to maintain test pressure exceeds the total allowable leakage.
- 8. Leakage in excess of that determined by the above formula shall be repaired at the expense of the Contractor. The leakage test shall then be repeated until the project complies with the allowable leakage.

C. Disinfection:

- After a successful pressure test has been achieved, the waterline shall be chlorinated for the purpose of disinfection.
- The Contractor shall use the hypochlorite continuous feed method for chlorine application as specified in AWWA Standard C651.
- Chlorine solution shall be introduced to achieve a concentration of at least 50 mg/l in all parts of the line.
- 4. The chlorine solution shall be allowed to remain in the pipe for a period of not less than 24-hours at which time the chlorine concentration shall be not less than 25 mg/l.
- All pipe and appurtenances shall be flushed with clean water until the chlorine residual is reduced to 1 mg/l or less until compatible with the existing system. The Contractor shall not flush any lines unless the local Water Department is present.
- 6. Bacteriological samples shall be collected in sterile jars by the Contractor.
- 7. The Contractor shall perform the water analysis and provide results and\or reports to the Owner and Owner's Representative for review and final approval by the City of Lincoln. All costs associated with the disinfection shall be borne by the Contractor, except sample collection and analysis for one set of sampling which shall be paid for by the Owner.
- The water line and appurtenances shall not be placed in service until an acceptable laboratory analysis has been completed.
- If the initial disinfection fails to produce satisfactory samples, disinfection as required above shall be repeated by the Contractor at his expense until satisfactory samples have been obtained.

3.3 EXISTING UTILITY CROSSINGS:

A. Water mains paralleling existing sanitary sewers shall be positioned a minimum of 5-feet horizontally from the sewer.

May 6, 2024 BWA Project No. 24001

B. If insufficient space is available to maintain the 5-foot separation, the bottom of the waterline shall be placed a minimum of 18-inches above the top of the sewer.

3.4 PROTECTION:

A. The Contractor shall maintain and protect the completed water line until final acceptance by the owner. Any damages to the line shall be repaired by the Contractor prior to acceptance.

END OF SECTION 332660

SECTION 332722 - SANITARY SEWER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. This section of specifications covers installation requirements of gravity sewer pipe and pressure sewer pipe. Testing requirements for gravity sewers, manholes, and force mains are also provided in this section.
- B. All materials used in the construction of sewers shall be new and unused when delivered to the job site and shall be suitable for installation and operation under the conditions for which they are to be used.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Section 312250 - Trenching, Backfill and Compaction

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL:

A. The Contractor shall provide all materials, equipment, and labor necessary to accomplish the work as shown or specified herein.

2.2 MATERIALS:

- A. All materials used in the construction of sewers shall be new and unused when delivered to the work and shall be suitable for installation and operation under the conditions for which they are to be used.
- B. All sewer pipe and materials used in its manufacture shall be tested and inspected by an approved commercial testing laboratory prior to delivery to the site and all materials which fail to conform to these specifications shall be rejected.
- C. After delivery to the site, any materials which have been damaged in transit or are otherwise unsuitable for use in the work shall be rejected and immediately removed from the site. Certified copies in duplicate of the inspection and acceptance reports of the testing laboratory shall be supplied to the Engineer prior to use of these materials.
- D. Each joint of pipe delivered to the work shall be stamped or marked to indicate the testing laboratory's acceptance or approval. The cost of inspecting and testing materials shall be borne by the Contractor, and the Engineer shall approve the Laboratory. The Engineer may require laboratory tests of other materials should be consider this necessary to get such materials to comply with the specifications.
- E. Certified mill test certificates will be accepted for PVC and DI pipe fittings.

PART 3 - INSTALLATION

3.1 GRAVITY SEWER PIPE LAYING - GENERAL:

- A. Before sewer pipe is placed in position in the trench, the bottom and sides of the trench shall be carefully prepared and the necessary bracing and sheeting installed.
- B. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, all gravity sewer lines shall be installed with a minimum thirty-six (36) inches of cover.
- C. A properly designed and operated laser beam device may be used to align and grade the pipe. Laser beam devices used shall be carefully calibrated at intervals not to exceed 30 calendar days.
- D. Air blowers must be used in conjunction with laser beam devices and must be sufficient to provide an air flow through the pipe of 4 to 6 mph.
- E. If approved by the Engineer, the batter board method may be used. A mason's line shall then be tightly

stretched above ground level, parallel to and directly above the axis of the pipe to be installed; this line to be supported at intervals not exceeding 50 feet. The exact line and grade for each section of pipe shall be determined by measuring down from this line to the invert of the pipe in place. Each pipe shall be accurately placed to the exact line and grade called for on the plans. The Contractor shall furnish all labor and materials necessary for erecting batter boards.

- F. Water shall not be allowed to run or stand in the trench while pipe laying is in progress or before the joints are completed or before the trench has been backfilled. The Contractor shall not open up at any time more trench than his available pumping facilities are able to dewater.
- G. Each piece of pipe and special fitting shall be carefully inspected before it is placed and no defective pipe shall be laid in the trench. Pipe laying shall proceed up-grade, starting at the lower end of the grade and with the bells uphill.
- H. After pipe laying has begun, it shall continue progressively up-grade. No section of pipe installation will be skipped without a written request for such procedures from the Contractor and approved by the Engineer.
- I. Bell holes shall be of sufficient size to allow ample room for properly making the pipe joints. Bell holes shall be cut not more than five joints ahead of pipe laying. The bottom of the trench and the crushed stone cushion between bell holes shall be carefully graded so that the pipe barrel will rest on a solid foundation for its entire length. Each joint shall be laid so that it will form a close concentric joint with adjoining pipe and so as to avoid sudden offsets and inequalities in the flow line.
- J. Backfilling of trenches shall be started immediately after the pipe is in place and the joints completed and inspected by the Engineer.
- K. A metallic tape or wire shall be installed in the same trench with all non-metallic pipe (HDPE) in order that the pipe may be located with electronic metal detection equipment. Wire shall be T.W. 12-gauge solid copper conforming to specifications for annealed copper, ASTM B-3 and Underwriters Laboratories Thermoplastic Insulated Wire Standard No. 83, latest revision. Wire shall be Simplex BW3001, or equal. Pipe detector tape shall be two (2) inch wide minimum metalized tape. Tape shall be Griffolyn Company, Inc., Terratape 2" D., or equal. Wire and/or Tape shall be secured to pipe at intervals of 20 feet.
- L. Manholes shall be installed according to Section 332607 Precast Concrete Manholes and Covers.

3.2 TESTING OF GRAVITY SEWERS AND MANHOLES:

A. General:

- Shall be per the City of Lincoln Water and Sewer specifications. The approval and acceptance of gravity sewer lines and manholes shall be based on final testing. The Contractor must provide a 72-hour notice prior to final testing to the City Engineer. A representative from the Engineer and/or Owner must be present to witness final testing procedures. Tests performed in the absence of the Engineer's and/or Owner's representatives shall be considered invalid and shall be repeated by the Contractor.
- Final testing of gravity lines shall only be performed after all work adjacent to and over the
 pipeline has been completed. Trench backfilling, grading, roadway sub-grade, concrete work,
 other utility installation, and any other superimposed loads shall be completed and in place prior
 to final testing.
- 3. Prior to any testing and final inspection, all gravity lines shall be cleaned of debris and flushed clean with water as necessary by the Contractor. Debris and flush water shall be contained at a lower manhole and removed from the line. Debris and flush water shall not be allowed to enter live existing sanitary sewers. Contractor shall be responsible for collection and proper disposal of debris and flush water.
- 4. All apparatus and equipment required for testing shall be furnished by the Contractor.
- Contractor shall provide the Engineer and Owner with copies of all field notes and documentation obtained during final testing.

B. Scope:

 All gravity sewers shall be tested by one or more of the following methods as directed by the City Engineer:

- a. Direct Visual Inspection by the Engineer
- b. Exfiltration of water
- c. Infiltration of water
- d. Exfiltration of air under pressure (Low Pressure Air Testing)
- e. Video Inspection.
- In addition to the above testing requirements, all PVC gravity sewers shall pass mandrel testing to verify roundness and proper installation.
- 3. All manholes shall be vacuum tested.

C. Direct Visual Inspection by the Engineer

- 1. The Engineer and/or his Representative shall visually inspect all gravity sewer pipe installed to verify alignment and ensure the pipe is free from obstructions and debris. Each segment of sewer shall be "flashed" using sunlight and mirrors. When the full diameter of the pipe is visible between adjacent manholes, the segment of pipe is deemed properly aligned and free of sags and debris.
- If segment of pipe fails visual inspection, the pipe shall be cleaned and/or replaced and re-tested by the Contractor.

D. Exfiltration of Water

- The section of sewer to be tested shall be sealed by inserting inflatable rubber bags or plugs in the pipes or by other means approved by the Engineer. Water shall then be introduced into a manhole until the pipeline section is completely filled. The Contractor shall fill the pipe to the required test level prior to the time of exfiltration testing to permit normal absorption into the pipe walls if concrete or concrete lined ductile iron pipe is being tested. Throughout the test period of two (2) hours minimum, the water level in the upper manhole shall be maintained at least 18-inches above the crown of the upper end of the pipe or at least 18-inches above the groundwater table, whichever is greater. The length of pipe tested shall be limited such that the pressure on the centerline of the lower pipe end tested does not exceed six (6) feet water column.
- Exfiltration of water shall not exceed 100-gallons per mile of sewer per inch of inside diameter per 24-hours in any section of the completed work. In no case shall the exfiltration of water exceed 2500 gallons per mile per 24 hours. All observed leaks shall be corrected by the Contractor even though exfiltration is within the allowable limits.
- 3. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to test selected sections of the sewer in the following manner: after the selected sections of the sewer are laid in the trench and the joints completed but before any backfill is placed, the Contractor shall install suitable bulkheads or stoppers in each end of the sewer and fill the sewer with water. The sewer shall be filled through one length of sewer pipe installed vertically at a wye or at the end of the pipe being tested. Water shall be maintained in the line approximately to the top of the fill pipe until the Engineer can inspect the section of sewer being tested. Any leaks in the sewer system being tested shall be repaired by the Contractor. The total amount of sewer thus tested shall not exceed five percent (5%) of the total length of sewer constructed. Should the results of any of these tests indicate leakage, the Engineer may direct the Contractor to change the methods of construction to reduce the leakage on the remaining part of the work.

E. Infiltration of Water:

- The section of sewer to be tested shall have been trench backfilled and the test conducted by inducing infiltration conditions by jetting the sewer trench for a sufficient length of time to ensure that the water level in the trench is a minimum of eighteen (18) inches over the crown of the sewer pipe. The test must be performed before existing sewers are connected and before sewage load is allowed in the sewers.
- 2. Infiltration of ground water or other leakage into the sewer (including manholes) shall not exceed 100 gallons per mile of sewer per inch of inside diameter of the sewer per 24 hours in any section of the completed work, and in no case shall it exceed 2500 gallons per mile per 24 hours.
- 3. Infiltration flow shall be measured in wet weather by a 90-degree "V-notch" weir with free discharge or other means acceptable to the Engineer. These weirs shall be furnished, installed, and removed by the Contractor.
- 4. Any leaks into the sewer that can be located shall be repaired or corrected by the Contractor as directed by the Engineer regardless of infiltration test results.

F. Exfiltration of Air Under Pressure (Low Pressure Air Testing):

Scope

- a. This recommended practice defines the proper procedures for acceptance testing of installed gravity sewer pipe, using low-pressure air, to provide assurance that the pipe, as installed, is free from significant leaks. Included are requirements for equipment accuracy, safety precautions, line preparation, test method, and minimum holding times. This recommended practice does not cover the testing of manholes. All new pipe shall be low-pressure air tested to ensure the integrity of the pipe and joints
- b. Only lines tested after backfilling to final grade will be considered for acceptability. However, this test may also be used by the installer as a presumptive test to determine the condition of the line prior to backfilling. At no time will more than four manhole to manhole reaches of pipe be installed before air testing is performed.
- Low Pressure Air Testing shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM C828, C924, F1417 and UBPPA UNI-B-6.

2. Responsibilities:

- a. Responsibility of the Contractor: Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall furnish all the necessary equipment and be responsible for conducting all low-pressure air tests. In addition, the Contractor is responsible for any necessary repair work on sections that do not pass the test. No sealant shall be used in any newly installed sewer without the prior approval of the Engineer. Proper structural repair work will be required by the Engineer or the Owner.
- b. Responsibility of the Engineer: The Engineer and/or a qualified inspector shall witness all low-pressure air tests and verify the accuracy and acceptability of the equipment utilized. The engineer should inform the Contractor regarding acceptable methods of repair in the event one or more sections fail to pass the low-pressure air test. The Engineer should also report to the Owner regarding the acceptability of the Contractor's work.
- c. Responsibility of the Owner: The Owner shall make a final decision as to the acceptability of the Contractor's work based upon the Engineer's recommendation.
- d. Regulatory Agencies: Regulatory Agencies in the State, Federal, and/or local level may be legally entitled to witness any air testing and/or review the results. The Owner or his Engineer should check to see that the low-pressure air test specified for his installation is at least as stringent as those which may be required by such regulatory bodies.

3. Equipment

- Air testing shall be performed by the Contractor using equipment manufactured by Cherne Industries, Inc., or approved equal. Equipment used shall meet the following minimum requirements.
- b. Pneumatic plugs shall resist internal testing pressures without requiring external bracing or blocking. However, the Contractor should internally restrain or externally brace the plugs to the manhole wall as an added safety precaution throughout the test. No one shall be allowed in the manhole adjoining a line being tested so long as pressure is maintained in the line.
- c. Pneumatic plugs shall have a sealing length equal to or greater than the diameter of the pipe to be inspected.
- d. To facilitate test verification by inspecting Engineer, all air used shall pass through a single, aboveground control panel.
- e. The aboveground air control equipment shall include a shut-off valve, pressure regulating valve, pressure relief valve, input pressure gauge, and a continuous monitoring pressure gauge having a pressure range from 0 to at least 10 psi.
- f. Three individual hoses shall be used for the following connections:
 - 1. from control panel to pneumatic plugs for inflation.
 - 2. from control panel to sealed line for introducing the low-pressure air.
 - 3. from sealed line to control panel for continually monitoring the air pressure rise in the sealed line.

4. Line Preparation

a. During sewer construction, all service laterals, stubs, and fittings into the sewer test

- section shall be properly capped or plugged so as not to allow for air loss that could cause an erroneous air test result.
- b. A wetted interior pipe surface is desirable and will produce more consistent test results. Where practical, clean the line with cleaning balls, manufactured by Cherne Industries Incorporated or equal, prior to testing, to wet the pipe surface and eliminate debris.

5. Test Procedure

- a. All pneumatic plugs shall be seal tested before being used in the actual test installation. One length of pipe shall be laid on the ground and sealed at both ends with the pneumatic plugs to be checked. Air shall be introduced into the plugs to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure. The sealed pipe shall be pressurized to 9 PSIG. The plugs shall hold against this pressure without bracing and without movement of the plugs out of the pipe.
- b. After a manhole to manhole reach of the pipe has been backfilled and cleaned, and the pneumatic plugs are checked by the above procedure, the plugs shall be placed in the line at each manhole and inflated to manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure. When plugs are being placed, the pipe adjacent to the manhole shall be visually inspected to detect any evidence of shear in the pipe due to differential settlement between the pipe and the manhole.
- c. Low pressure air shall be slowly introduced into this sealed line until the internal air pressure reaches 4.0 PSIG greater than the average back pressure of any groundwater above the pipe, but not greater then 9.0 PSIG. If groundwater is present, refer to the following Paragraph 6. Determination of Groundwater Elevation and Air Pressure Adjustment, of Section 3.5.F in this Specification.
- d. After a constant pressure of 4.0 PSIG (greater than the average groundwater back pressure) is reached, the air supply shall be throttled to maintain the internal pressure for at least 2 minutes.
- e. When the pressure has stabilized at 4.0 PSIG, the air hose from the control panel to air supply shall be shut off or disconnected. The continuous monitoring pressure gauge shall then be observed while the pressure is decreased to no less than 3.5 PSIG. At a reading of 3.5 PSIG, or any convenient observed pressure reading between 3.5 PSIG and 4.0 PSIG, timing for the test may begin.
- f. The portion of line being tested shall be termed "Acceptable" if the allocated line pressure decreases less than one PSI in the time shown for the given diameters and lengths in the following table. Consult the City Engineer for test lengths greater than those provided.

MINIMUM SPECIFIED TIME REQUIRED FOR A 1.0 PSIG PRESSURE DROP

PIPE DIA	SPECIFICATION TIME FOR LENGTH SHOWN (MIN:SEC)							
(INCHES)	100 FT	150 FT	200 FT	250 FT	300 FT	350 FT	400 FT	450 FT
8	7:34	7:34	7:34	7:34	7:36	8:52	10:08	11:24
10	9:26	9:26	9:26	9:53	11:52	13:51	15:49	17:48
12	11:20	11:20	11:24	14:15	17:05	19:56	22:47	25:38
15	14:10	14:10	17:48	22:15	26:42	31:09	35:36	40:04
18	17:00	19:13	25:38	32:03	38:27	44:52	51:16	57:41
21	19:50	26:10	34:54	43:37	52:21	61:00	69:48	78:31
24	22:47	34:11	45:34	56:58	68:22	79:46	91:10	102:33

- g. If there has been no leakage (0 PSIG drop) after one hour of testing, the test section shall be accepted and the test complete. If there is any pressure drop, the complete test shall be run to determine whether or not the test section is acceptable.
- h. If the pressure drops 1.0 PSIG before the appropriate time shown in the table has elapsed, the air loss rate shall be considered excessive and the section of pipe has failed the test.
- i. If the section fails to meet these requirements, the Contractor shall determine the source(s) of leakage, and he shall repair or replace all defective materials and/or workmanship to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The extent and type of repair which may be allowed, as well as results, shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer. The completed pipe installation shall then be retested and required to meet the requirements of this test.
- 6. Determination of Groundwater Elevation and Air Pressure Adjustment

- a. In areas where ground water is known to exist, the Contractor shall install a ½-inch diameter capped pipe nipple, approximately 10 inches long, through the manhole wall directly on top of one of the sewer lines entering the manhole. A permanent, watertight seal shall be provided around the pipe nipple at the manhole wall. This shall be done at the time the sewer line is installed.
- b. Immediately prior to the performance of the air testing, the ground water shall be determined by removing the pipe cap, blowing air through the pipe nipple into the ground so as to clear it, and then connecting a clear plastic tube to the nipple. The plastic tube shall be held vertically and a measurement of the height in feet of water over the invert of the pipe shall be taken after the water has stopped rising in this plastic tube. The height in feet shall be divided by 2.31 to establish the pounds of pressure that will be added to all readings. (For example, if the height of water is 11-1/2 feet, then the added pressure will be 5 psig. This will increase the 3.5 psig (mentioned in item e above) to 8.5 psig, and the 2.5 psig to 7.5 psig.)
- c. The allowable pressure drop of 1.0 PSIG and the timing in the previous table are not affected and shall remain the same.
- d. In no case shall the starting test pressure exceed 9.0 PSIG. If the average vertical height of groundwater above the pipe invert is more than 12.7 feet, the section so submerged may be tested using 9.0 PSIG as the starting test pressure.
- e. After determining the air pressure adjustment, the test shall resume according to Item 5 Test Procedures stated above.
- f. After determining groundwater height, each pipe nipple shall be recapped and sealed to prevent future infiltration.

G. Video Inspection:

 Prior to final acceptance, the sewer installation shall be video inspected by the Contractor's forces. Said inspection shall verify locations of service connections, and locations of possible defects/infiltration. Any defects found shall be repaired by the Contractor in a manner acceptable to the Owner.

H. Mandrel Testing:

- 1. Mandrel test (deflection test) shall be performed by the Contractor in order to verify the roundness and proper installation of the PVC gravity sewer line.
- Equipment systems used to perform mandrel tests shall be specifically designed for the pipe material being tested. Mandrels that do not specifically state the size and type of piping for which it is applicable shall not be allowed.
- 3. Deflection Test:
 - a. The deflection test shall consist of testing PVC gravity sewer pipe for proper installation by the method outlined (see ASTM D3034). The testing shall be accomplished prior to final acceptance, but at least 30 days after the pipe has been backfilled completely to permit stabilization of the soil-pipe envelope.
 - b. After the pipeline has been installed and backfill materials have been compacted to their required standard densities, the mandrel shall be pulled by hand through the pipeline with a suitable rope or cable that is connected to an eyebolt at one end of the gauge. A similar rope or cable shall be attached to the eyebolt at the opposite end of the mandrel and tension shall be applied to it. This will ensure that the mandrel maintains its correct position during testing and also to remove the mandrel if it should become lodged in an excessively deflected pipeline. Winching or other mechanical means of forcing the mandrel through the pipeline is unacceptable. Pipeline deflection testing shall have a deflection not exceeding 5% of the base inside pipe diameter as established by ASTM Standards D3034 and F679.
 - c. Permanent record of all testing with locations where excessive pipeline deflections occur shall be kept by the Contractor and forwarded to the Engineer after completion of testing on each line.
 - d. The Contractor shall immediately correct or replace all sections of pipe which deflect more than 5%.
 - e. All material and labor required for testing and/or replacement of pipelines shall be furnished by the Contractor.
 - f. Pipelines requiring correction and/or replacement shall be retested after an additional 30 day backfill stabilization period.

I. Manhole Vacuum Testing:

1. Vacuum tests shall be conducted on newly constructed manholes. Preliminary manhole testing shall take place following construction after all connections are made, and before backfilling. Test results derived from this test will allow time for necessary repairs to be completed before further construction proceeds and hinders such repairs. Final tests must be performed after the manhole has been backfilled.

2. Equipment:

- Manhole vacuum tester assembly and vacuum pumps shall be manufactured by Cherne Industries, Inc., or approved equal.
- b. Pneumatic plugs shall be manufactured by Cherne Industries, Inc. or approved equal. These plugs shall have a sealing length equal to or greater than the diameter of the connecting pipe to be sealed.

Procedures:

Plug all manhole entrances and exits other than the manhole top access using suitably sized pneumatic or mechanical pipeline plugs and follow all manufacturer's recommendations and warnings for proper and safe installation of such plugs. Plugs should be inserted a minimum of 6" beyond manhole wall. Make sure such plugs are properly rated for the pressures required for the test. The standard test of 10" Hg. (mercury) is equivalent to approximately 5 PSIG (0.3 bar) backpressure. Unless such plugs are mechanically restrained, it is recommended that the plugs are used with a minimum of two times (2x) safety factor or a minimum of 10 PSIG (0.7 bar) backpressure usage rating.

CAUTION: BRACE INVERTS IF LINES ENTERING THE MANHOLE HAVE NOT BEEN BACKFILLED TO PREVENT PIPE FROM BEING DISLODGED AND PULLED INTO THE MANHOLE.

- b. Any other openings such as lifting holes shall be sealed with an approved non-shrink grout.
- c. Install the vacuum tester head assembly at the top of the manhole. Adjust the cross brace to ensure that the inflatable sealing element inflates and seals against the straight top section of the manhole or the ring assembly, if possible. (If using a "plate" style manhole tester, position the plate on the manhole ring assembly).
- d. Attach the vacuum pump assembly to the proper connection on the test head assembly. Make sure the vacuum inlet/outlet valve is in the closed position.
- Following safety precautions and manufacturer's instructions, inflate sealing element to the recommended maximum inflation pressure.
 CAUTION: DO NOT OVER INFLATE.
- f. Start the vacuum pump and allow pre-set RPM to stabilize.
- g. Open the inlet/outlet ball valve and evacuate the manhole to 10" Hg. (approximately negative 5 PSIG, 0.3 bar).

CAUTION: DO NOT PRESSURIZE MANHOLE! THIS MAY RESULT IN MANHOLE DAMAGE AND/OR RESULT IN MANHOLE TEST HEAD DISLODGING FROM MANHOLE INLET!

h. Close vacuum inlet/outlet ball valve and monitor vacuum for specified test period (see table). If vacuum does not drop in excess of 1" Hg., manhole is considered acceptable and the manhole passes the test. If manhole fails the test, Contractor shall complete necessary repairs and repeat test procedures until satisfactory results are obtained.

Minimum Test Times for Various Manhole Diameters

depth – feet	Manhole diameter – inches					
	48	60	72	96		
8	20 sec	26 sec	33 sec	38		
10	25 sec	33 sec	41 sec	48		
12	30 sec	39 sec	49 sec	57		
14	35 sec	46 sec	57 sec	67		
16	40 sec	52 sec	67 sec	76		

18	45 sec	59 sec	73 sec	86
20	50 sec	65 sec	81 sec	95
+ 2 ft incr.	+5 sec	+6.5 sec	+8.0 sec	+9.5 sec

(The values listed above are based upon ASTM Specification C1244 "Standard Test Method for Concrete Sewer Manholes by the Negative Air Pressure (Vacuum) Test".)

- 4. Repeat the above test procedure after backfilling manhole for final acceptance test.
- 5. All manholes that fail the test or have visible leaks, even if they pass the test, shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor until the manholes pass the test, to the complete satisfaction of the City Engineer. Manholes that have any visible leaks will not be accepted.

3.3 CLEAN-UP AND GRASSING:

- A. After the ditch lines have been sufficiently compacted, all excess material shall be removed from the job site by the Contractor.
- B. Any trees or undergrowth shall also be removed by the Contractor.
- C. All disturbed areas shall have topsoil replaced equal to that before construction began. If necessary, the Contractor shall provide topsoil.